



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





HARVARD UNIVERSITY

---

LIBRARY OF THE

Department of Education

---

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS

Contributed by the Publishers

TRANSFERRED

TO

HARVARD COLLEGE

LIBRARY



3 2044 097 074 819

1896

# FIRST LATIN READER

INCLUDING

Principles of Syntax

AND

Exercises for Translation

BY

JARED W. SCUDDER, A.M.

LATIN MASTER IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY

---

Boston

ALLYN AND BACON

1896

Educat 918.96.776

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
HAS TRANSFERRED FROM THE  
TRANSFER LIBRARY OF THE  
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
GRADUATE SCHOOL OF EDUCATION

Mar. 2, 1926

~~Harvard University,  
Dept. of Education Library~~

COPYRIGHT, 1895,  
BY JARED W. SCUDDER.

ELECTROTYPING BY C. J. PETERS & SON.  
PRESSWORK BY BEBWICK & SMITH.

## PREFACE.

---

THE first distinctive feature of this book is, as its name suggests, that the lessons contain *connected Latin passages* for the pupil to read. As soon as practicable, the special grammatical points to be learned in each lesson are illustrated, not in disconnected sentences, but in a continuous Latin story. The stories are drawn chiefly from Roman mythology and traditional Roman history, interspersed with an occasional passage on the life of the Romans. This plan has the following advantages: —

1. *It acts as a powerful incentive to work.*
2. *It adds directly to the pupil's knowledge of Roman mythology, traditions, and customs.*
3. *It emphasizes at the outset the fact that grammar is merely a means to the enjoyment of literature.*

The second feature of the book is that all the exercises for translating English into Latin are based on the Latin text immediately preceding them.

A third point of special importance is that, beginning with Lesson XV, a passage to be *translated at sight* is included in every lesson. In the report of the Latin Conference to the Committee on Secondary School Studies this point is particularly emphasized. After stating the views of those who shrink from adopting



translation at sight as the sole test of the pupil's attainments, the following significant sentence is added: "Yet the importance of devoting a good deal of attention to translation at sight is now universally acknowledged among the best teachers in school and college; and the recommendation that translation at sight form a constant and increasing part of the examination for admission and of the work of preparation, is therefore regarded by the Conference as of especial moment."

Lastly, questions in Latin, referring to the text, are included in the lessons, in the hope that teachers will avail themselves of this simple but effective mode of familiarizing their scholars with the Latin itself. Nothing gives the pupil a firmer grasp on phrases, nothing fits him more quickly to understand Latin without translating it, than this very method of asking and answering questions in Latin.

In addition to these more important features of the book, attention is directed to the following points:—

1. The systematic and thorough drill on pronunciation in the first two lessons.

2. The incorporation of all necessary principles of English grammar in the body of the book.

3. The omission of the Vocative case in the paradigms, sufficient emphasis being laid upon it in the rules.

4. The use of **-is** instead of **-es** in the Accusative Plural of **-i** stems of the Third Declension. This has not only become necessary on account of its use in many of the latest school texts, but it is desirable as a means of distinguishing between the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

5. The comparative view of the declensions of nouns and adjectives in the tables on pages 204 and 211.

6. The comparative view of the four regular conjugations in the body of the book, supplemented on pages 221-231 by the presentation of the Active and Passive voices of each conjugation, side by side.

7. The questions for the pupils at the end of the lessons. These are not intended to take the place of questions by the teacher, but are merely to enable the pupil to ascertain whether he has thoroughly mastered his lesson.

The lessons appear to be much longer than they really are. It must be remembered that the labors of the pupil practically end with the translation of the English sentences into Latin, the rest of the lesson being reserved for the class-room.

The author is indebted to many friends for helpful suggestions, but particularly to Professor F. J. BARTLETT of the Albany Normal College, and to Professor C. B. GOULD of the Albany Academy.

It is hoped that the use of this book will not only add to the beginner's enjoyment of Latin, but that it will insure rapid progress and unusual facility in reading and understanding the language.

JARED W. SCUDDER.

ALBANY, N.Y., December, 1894.



# CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
I. Alphabet. — Sounds of the Letters. — Quantity of Vowels . . . . .	1
II. Syllables. — Quantity of Syllables. — Accent. . . . .	4
III. Noun. — Verb. — Subject and Object . . . . .	6
IV. Singular and Plural . . . . .	8
V. Rules. — Cases. — Inflection. — First Declension . . .	10
VI. Gender. — Genitive of Possession. — Pronouns. — Adverbs . . . . .	12
VII. Dative of the Indirect Object. — Questions . . . . .	15
VIII. Ablative of Separation. — Conjunctions. — <b>Rēgina Belgārum</b> . . . . .	17
IX. Second Declension: Nouns in <b>-us</b> . — Vocative Case. — <b>Conloquium</b> . . . . .	19
X. Second Declension: Nouns in <b>-um</b> . — Predicate Nominative. — Prepositions. — <b>Fundus</b> . . . . .	21
XI. Adjectives in <b>-us, -a, -um</b> . — Ablative of Means. — <b>Cygnus</b> . . . . .	24
XII. Nouns and Adjectives in <b>-er</b> and <b>-ir</b> . — Apposition. — Preposition <b>in</b> . — <b>Pueri Rōmāni</b> . . . . .	26
XIII. Tense. — Person. — Number. — Verb <b>Sum</b> : Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative. — Dative of Possessor. — <b>Conloquium</b> . . . . .	30
XIV. Mood. — Principal Parts. — First Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative. — <b>Perfida Tarpēia</b> . . . . .	34
XV. Second Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative. — <b>Mettius Curtius</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Mettius Curtius</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	37

LESSON	PAGE
XVI. Third Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative. — Ablative of Manner. — <b>Meleager</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Meleager</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	40
XVII. Fourth Conjugation: Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative. — Ablative of Cause. — <b>Perseus et Andromeda</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Perseus et Andromeda</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	43
XVIII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — <b>Forum Rōmānum</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Forum Rōmānum</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	46
XIX. Third Declension: Mute Stems. — <b>Gabii</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Gabii</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	50
XX. Third Declension: <b>-i</b> Stems. — <b>Brūtus et Filii Tarquini</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Brūtus et Filii Tarquini</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	53
XXI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems. — Gender Rules. Ablative of Accompaniment. — <b>Horātius Coclēs</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Horātius Coclēs</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	57
XXII. Verb <b>Sum</b> : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Imperative. — <b>Atalanta</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Atalanta</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	61
XXIII. Third Declension Adjectives: <b>-i</b> Stems. — First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Imperative. — <b>Deucaliōn et Pyrrha</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Deucaliōn et Pyrrha</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	65
XXIV. Third Declension Adjectives: Consonant Stems. — Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Imperative. — <b>C. Mūcius Scaevola</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>C. Mūcius Scaevola</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	69
XXV. Fourth Declension. — Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Imperative. — <b>Duo Equitēs</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Duo Equitēs</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	72

LESSON	PAGE
XXVI. Fifth Declension. — Fourth Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Imperative. — Accusative of Time. — <b>Prōserpina</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Prōserpina</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	76
XXVII. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. — Double Accusative. — <b>Perseus et Medūsa</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Perseus et Medūsa</b> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	80
XXVIII. Voice. — First Conjugation: Indicative and Imperative Passive. — Ablative of Agent. — <b>Perseus et Medūsa</b> ( <i>continued</i> ). — Sight Translation: <b>Perseus et Medūsa</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	83
XXIX. Demonstrative Pronouns: <b>Hic, Ille, Iste</b> . — Second Conjugation: Indicative and Imperative Passive. — <b>Ariōn et Delphinus</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Ariōn et Delphinus</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	88
XXX. Demonstrative Pronouns: <b>Is, Idem, Ipse</b> . — Third Conjugation: Indicative and Imperative Passive. — <b>Domus Rōmāna</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Domus Rōmāna</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	92
XXXI. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns. — Fourth Conjugation: Indicative and Imperative Passive. <b>Obsidiō Vēiōrum</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Obsidiō Vēiōrum</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	96
XXXII. Regular Comparison. — Declension of Comparatives. — Ablative with Comparatives. — <b>Thēseus</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Thēseus</b> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	101
XXXIII. Irregular Comparison. — Ablative of Degree of Difference. — <b>Thēseus et Latrōnēs</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Thēseus et Latrōnēs</b> ( <i>cont.</i> ) . . . . .	106
XXXIV. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs. — Genitive and Ablative of Characteristic. — <b>Thēseus et Latrōnēs</b> ( <i>continued</i> ). — Sight Translation: <b>Thēseus et Latrōnēs</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	110

XXXV. Numerals. — Partitive Genitive. — Nine Irregular Adjectives. — <b>Supellex Domūs Rōmānae</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Supellex Domūs Rōmānae</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	114
XXXVI. Active Infinitives. — Complementary Infinitive. — Expressions of Place. — <b>Thēseus et Aegeus</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Thēseus et Aegeus</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	119
XXXVII. Passive Infinitives. — Infinitive as a Noun. — Simple Indirect Discourse. — Dative with Special Verbs. — Ablative of Specification. — <b>Daedalus</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Daedalus</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	123
XXXVIII. Participles. — Ablative Absolute. — <b>Thēseus et Minōtaurus</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Thēseus et Minōtaurus</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	129
XXXIX. Gerund. — Gerundive. — Supine. — Ablative of Time. — <b>Thēseus et Ariadnē</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Thēseus et Ariadnē</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	135
XL. Derivation and Composition of Words. — <b>Nūptiae Rōmānae</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Nūptiae Rōmānae</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	139
XLI. Subjunctive of <b>Sum</b> . — Hortatory Subjunctive. — Subjunctive of Wish. — <b>Midās</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Midās</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	146
XLII. Active Subjunctive. — Indirect Question. — Genitive and Dative with Adjectives — <b>Iāsōn et Centaurus</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Iāsōn et Anus</b> . . . . .	150
XLIII. Passive Subjunctive. — Subjunctive of Purpose. — Dative of Service. — <b>Iāsōn et Dea</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Iāsōn et Peliās</b> . . . . .	155
XLIV. Verbs in <b>-iō</b> . — Subjunctive of Result. — <b>Velus Aureum</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Iāsōnis Socii</b> . . . . .	160

LESSON	PAGE
XLV. Deponent Verbs. — Verbs of Fearing. — <b>Quin</b> Clauses. — <b>Argonautae</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Argonautae et Cyzicus</b> . . . . .	165
XLVI. Ablative with Deponents. — Accusative of Extent. — Simple Conditions. — <b>Lūdi Circēnsēs</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Lūdi Circēnsēs</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	170
XLVII. Compounds of <b>Sum</b> . — Conditionals. — <b>Herculēs et Hylās</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Phineus et Harpŷiae</b> . . . . .	176
XLVIII. Active and Passive Periphrastic Conjugations. — Dative of Agent. — Objective Genitive. — <b>Symplēgades</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Symplēgades</b> ( <i>concluded</i> ) . . . . .	180
XLIX. Irregular Verb <b>Eō</b> . — <b>Cum</b> Temporal, Causal, and Concessive. — <b>Iāsōn et Mēdēa</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Perfidus Rēx</b> . . . . .	184
L. Irregular Verb <b>Ferō</b> . — <b>Dum, Dōnec, and Quoad</b> . — <b>Antequam</b> and <b>Priusquam</b> . — <b>Potentissimum Unguentum</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Flammiferi Tauri</b> . . . . .	189
LI. Irregular Verbs <b>Volō, Nōlō, Mālō</b> . — Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. — <b>Mēdēae Fuga</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Mēdēa et Dracō</b> . . . . .	194
LII. Irregular Verb <b>Fiō</b> . — <b>Vellus Aureum</b> . — Sight Translation: <b>Reditus Argonautarum</b> . . . . .	201
Tables of Declension and Conjugation . . . . .	204
Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . .	241





# FIRST LATIN READER.

---

## LESSON I.

### Alphabet ; Pronunciation.

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*.

2. The letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

#### VOWELS.

3. The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y* ; they are either long or short.

*a.* A long vowel is marked with a dash, thus: *ā*.

*b.* A short vowel is not marked.

4. The vowels are sounded as follows :

*ā* as in *far*.

*a* as in *a-rise*.

*ē* as in *they*.

*e* as in *men*.

*ī* as in *ma-rine*.

*i* as in *pin*.

*ō* as in *bone*.

*o* as in *o-bey*.

*ū* as *oo* in *cool*.

*u* as in *full*.

5. Pronounce the following words :

*ā* : *nā, quā, stā*.

*ī* : *dī, mī, nī*.

*ē* : *mē, nē, tē*.

*ō* : *dō, prō, stō*.

*ū* : *nū, sū, tū*.

- a.* ā and a : sā-ga, sa-ga ; mā-lō, ma-lō ; fā-vī, fa-vī.  
 ē and e : ē-mī, e-mī ; ē-dī, e-dī ; sē-rō, se-rō.  
 ī and i : dī-cō, di-cō ; sī-nī, si-nī ; lī-nō, li-nō.  
 ō and o : nō-ta, no-tā ; sō-lō, so-lō ; lō-ra, lo-rā.  
 ū and u : lū-tō, lu-tō ; fū-gī, fu-gī ; sū-dī, su-dī.

## DIPHTHONGS.

6. The diphthongs are sounded as follows :

**ae** as *ai* in *aisle*.

**au** as *ow* in *cow*.

**oe** as *oy* in *boy*.

**eu** as *eu* in *feud*.

7. Pronounce the following words :

**ae** : aē-tās, ae-ger, lae-sum, pae-ne, sae-pe.

**au** : au-lā, au-rī, fau-tor, lau-de, pau-lō.

**oe** : coe-pī, foe-dē, poe-nā, Oe-ta, oe-strus.

**eu** : heu, seu, neu-ter, Eu-rus, Leu-cī.

## GENERAL RULES FOR QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

8. Diphthongs are long, as : **haec, poenae.**

*a.* A vowel followed by **nf, ns, gm, gn, or i** (*consonant*) is long, as : **Infra, mēnsa, āgmen, Ignis, cūius.**

*b.* A vowel followed by another vowel, or by **a** diphthong, or by **h** is short, as : **via, tuae, vehit.**

*c.* A vowel followed by **nt** or **nd** is short, as : **sunt, amandus.**

## CONSONANTS.

9. The consonants may be classified as follows :

*a.* Mutes  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Labials: } \mathbf{p, b.} \\ \text{Linguals: } \mathbf{t, d.} \\ \text{Palatals: } \mathbf{c, k, q, g.} \end{array} \right.$

*b.* Liquids : **l, m, n, r.**

*c.* Spirants : **f, s.**

*d.* Semi-vowels : **v, i** (*consonant*).

e. Double consonants : **x** = **cs** or **gs**, **z** = **ds**.

f. **h** is only a breathing.

**10.** The consonants are sounded as follows :

**c** as in *cap* (not as in *cent*).

**g** as in *get* (not as in *gem*).

**i** (*consonant*) as *y* in *yet*.

**s** as in *sin* (not as in *mi-ser*).

**t** as in *ten* (not as in *na-tion*).

**v** as *w* in *wet*.

**z** as *dz* in *adze*.

**ch** as in *chorus*.

The other consonants are sounded as in English.

**11.** Pronounce the following words :

**c** : ca-dus, cae-cus, Cae-sar, co-mes, cū-rā.

**g** : gau-di-um, ge-nus, glō-ri-a, gra-dus, gu-la.

**i** : iam, Iū-nō, iūs, iū-dex, Io-vis.

**s** : sa-tis, sce-lus, sē-dēs, so-ror, sta-tus.

**t** : ta-men, i-ni-ti-ō, ō-rā-ti-ō, nūn-ti-ō, sta-ti-ō.

**v** : vī-cus, a-vis, va-dum, ser-vus, vol-nus.

**z** : Za-ma, ga-zam, Tra-pē-zūs.

**ch** : cho-rus, cha-os, char-tae, Bac-chus, Ar-chi-ās.

**QUESTIONS.**

**12.** How does the Latin alphabet differ from the English? Name the vowels. What is the quantity of a diphthong? When is a vowel long? When is a vowel short? How may the mutes be classified? Name the liquids. Give the equivalents of the double consonants. What is the value of **h**?

## LESSON II.

## Syllables ; Accent.

13. A word is divided into as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

Exc. After *q*, *g*, and generally *s*, (also in *cui* and *huic*), the vowel *u*, when followed by a vowel, does not form a separate syllable, as : *an-guis*, *quo-que*, *suā-det*.

*a*. A consonant between two vowels is joined to the second vowel, as : *a-vi*, *ō-ra*.

*b*. When there are two or more consonants, as many of them as can begin a word should be joined to the second vowel, as : *ge-stum*, *ī-gni*, *pi-scēs*, *ter-ra*, *ven-tus*.

Exc. The words forming a compound should be separated, as : *ad-est*.

14. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

15. Divide into syllables :

*animal*, *colōnus*, *dirimō*, *grātus*, *libērtās*, *prīnceps*,  
*respōnsum*, *subter*, *tranquillitās*;  
*vīctus*, *prīscus*, *occurrō*, *incendium*, *quīnque*, *comitia*,  
*dēcertātiō*, *cōgnōscō*, *contrōversia*, *languidus*;  
*litterātē*, *īnsistō*, *prōsternō*, *elephantus*, *adloquor*,  
*tulistī*, *condemnō*, *intrātus*, *māgnanimus*.

## QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

16. A syllable is long :

*a*. When it contains a long vowel, or a diphthong, as :  
*lāc*, *mēns*, *haec*, *ae-tās*;

*b.* When it contains a short vowel followed either by *two* consonants, or by *x*, or *z*, as: **a-sper, sal-tant, sa-xa, ga-za.**

**17.** What is the quantity of the syllables in the following words?

Rōmānī, tempestātis, epulae, aurum, ārae, tabellārius,  
flexūs, prōverbiō, posterō, aequus;  
mātūrōrum, gentis, quisquam, stellae, suāvitās, ser-  
mōnibus, captīvōs, sanguine.

## ACCENT.

**18.** Words of two syllables are accented on the penult, as: **a'-per, tū'-tus.**

*a.* Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, *if it is long*; otherwise, on the antepenult, as: **de-cō'-rum, de'-co-rum.**

*b.* A few short words called enclitics are used only as they are added to other words. The accent falls on the syllable before the enclitic, as: **sua'que, estis'ne.**

**19.** Accent and pronounce the following:

lābēs, gīgnis, putās, mare, nūllus, puer, lupus;  
laudāre, puellīs, tellūris, scrībere, monēre;  
tergorum, tergōrum, columba, tegimus;  
vestra-que, obsidibus, multitūdō, facillimus;  
profundus, mūnitiō, habet-ne, opportunē;  
vincīmus, vincimus, perfugit, perfūgit.

## QUESTIONS.

**20.** Into how many syllables is a word divided? How are the consonants placed? Name the last three syllables of a word. Rule for accent. What effect has an enclitic upon accent? When is a syllable long?

## LESSON III.

## Noun, Verb, Subject, Object.

21. A Noun is the name of any person, place, or thing, as: *John, Boston, table.*

22. A Verb expresses action or being, as: *run, is.* Every sentence must contain a verb.

23. The Subject in a sentence is that which *does* the action, and is said to be in the Nominative case, as: *The dog bites.*

24. The Object is that which *receives* the action, and is said to be in the Accusative case, as: *The dog bit the boy.*

25. In English, the subject is usually put *before* the verb; the object *after* it. In the two sentences which follow, note the difference in meaning, caused by changing the position of the word **boy**.

*The boy killed the wolf.*

*The wolf killed the boy.*

a. In Latin, this difference is expressed — not by changing the order of the nouns — but by their *endings*.

26. Note carefully the **endings** of the words in the following Latin sentences:

**Vitat.**

(*He, she, or it*) *avoids.*

**Nauta vitat.**

*The sailor avoids.*

**Nauta advenam vitat.**

*The sailor avoids the stranger.*

**Nautam advena vitat.**

*The stranger avoids the sailor.*

a. Observe that the verb **vitat** ends in **-t**. The verb-stem **vitā-** means *avoid*. As in English, when the sub-

ject is *he, she, or it*, we add *-s* to the verb (e.g., *he avoid-s*), so the Latin adds *-t*.

*b. Notice :*

That *nauta* and *advena*, when used as *subjects*, end in *-a*;

That *nauta* and *advena*, when used as *objects*, end in *-am*.

## 27.

## VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
<i>nauta,</i>	<i>nautam,</i>	sailor.	<i>nautical.</i>
<i>advena,</i>	<i>advenam,</i>	stranger.	<i>adventure.</i>
<i>porta,</i>	<i>portam,</i>	gate.	<i>portal.</i>
<i>silva,</i>	<i>silvam,</i>	wood, forest.	<i>silvan.</i>
<i>puella,</i>	<i>puellam,</i>	girl.	
<i>casa,</i>	<i>casam,</i>	cottage, hut.	

## VERBS.

<i>vītat,</i>	(he, she, it) avoids.	
<i>īnatrat,</i>	(he, she, it) enters.	<i>entrance.</i>
<i>īnatvītat,</i>	(he, she, it) invites.	<i>invite.</i>

28. As the Latin has no word for *the, an, or a*, the pupil may use whichever is best suited to the noun he is translating.

29. *Translate into English :*

1. *Nauta puellam vītat.*    2. *Advenam puella vītat.*    3. *Advena silvam īnatrat.*    4. *Nautam advena īnatvītat.*    5. *Puella advenam īnatvītat.*    6. *Nauta portam īnatrat.*    7. *Puella nautam vītat.*    8. *Casam advena īnatrat.*    9. *Puella silvam vītat.*    10. *Portam advena īnatrat.*



30. *Translate into Latin:*

1. The girl enters the wood. 2. The sailor avoids the cottage. 3. The girl invites a sailor. 4. A stranger avoids the hut. 5. A sailor invites the stranger. 6. The stranger invites the girl. 7. The sailor enters a cottage. 8. The stranger avoids the gate. 9. A girl enters the gate. 10. The sailor avoids the wood.

## QUESTIONS.

31. Define noun, verb, subject, object. In what case must the subject be? In what case must the object be? Divide into syllables and accent: *torpēscerent, impēnsūrus, amātus*.

## LESSON IV.

## Singular, Plural.

32. There are two numbers, the Singular and the Plural.

a. The Singular number denotes *one*, as: *girl, sailor*.

b. The Plural number denotes *more than one*, as: *girls, sailors*.

33. *Vitānt.*

(*They*) *avoid*.

*Nautae vitānt.*

*The sailors avoid.*

*Nautae advenās vitānt.*

*The sailors avoid the strangers.*

*Advenae nautās vitānt.*

*The strangers avoid the sailors.*

Observe:

a. That the verb *vitānt* ends in *-nt*, which is equivalent to *they*;

b. That *nauta* and *advena*, when used as *subjects* in the *Plural number* end in *-ae*;

c. That *nauta* and *advena*, when used as *objects* in the *Plural number* end in *-ās*.

## 34.

## VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
<i>nautae,</i>	<i>nautās,</i>	sailors.	<i>nautical.</i>
<i>advenae,</i>	<i>advenās,</i>	strangers.	<i>adventure.</i>
<i>portae,</i>	<i>portās,</i>	gates.	<i>portal.</i>
<i>silvae,</i>	<i>silvās,</i>	woods, forests.	<i>silvan.</i>
<i>puellae,</i>	<i>puellās,</i>	girls.	
<i>casae,</i>	<i>casās,</i>	cottages, huts.	

## VERBS.

<i>vītant,</i>	( <i>they</i> ) avoid.	
<i>intrans,</i>	( <i>they</i> ) enter.	<i>entrance.</i>
<i>invitant,</i>	( <i>they</i> ) invite.	<i>invite.</i>

## 35.

1. *Puellae nautās invitant.* . 2. *Nautae puellās invitant.* 3. *Advenae casās vītant.* 4. *Puellae nautam vītant.* 5. *Casam advenae intrans.* 6. *Nauta advenās vītāt.* 7. *Portās advenae intrans.* 8. *Casās puella vītāt.* 9. *Portam nauta intrat.* 10. *Puellae casās intrans.*

## 36.

1. The strangers enter the cottages. 2. Sailors invite the strangers. 3. The sailors avoid the girl. 4. The girls invite strangers. 5. Strangers avoid the gates. 6. The girl enters the woods. 7. The

strangers avoid the sailor. 8. A girl avoids the sailors. 9. The sailors enter the gate. 10. The strangers invite the girls.

### QUESTIONS.

**37.** Define and illustrate Singular number; Plural number. What is the Nominative case used for? The Accusative case? Divide into syllables and accent: *hospitālītās*, *cōgnitiō*, *virum-que*, *requisītus*.

---

## LESSON V.

### Rules ; Cases ; Inflection ; First Declension.

From the preceding lessons we deduce the following Rules:

**38. Rule I.** The Subject of a verb is in the Nominative.

**39. Rule II.** The Object of a verb is in the Accusative.

### CASES.

**40.** Study carefully the following cases with their endings in both Singular and Plural, and what they denote:

NAMES.	SINGULAR.	DENOTING.	PLURAL.
Nominative,	-a,	Subject of verb,	-ae.
Genitive,	-ae,	of, or 's,	-ārum.
Dative,	-ae,	to, or for,	-is.
Accusative,	-am,	Object of verb,	-as.
Ablative,	-ā,	from, with, by,	-is.

## INFLECTION.

41. Changing the form of a word to show its relation to other words is called Inflection.

a. The Inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called Declension.

b. The Inflection of verbs is called Conjugation.

42. The Stem of a word is that common part from which the changes of inflection are formed. In the First Declension, the stem ends in -a, as: **poēta**.

43. The Base of a word is that part which is not changed in inflection, as: **poēt-**.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

44. **porta, gate.**

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N. **porta, a gate.**

**portae, gates.**

G. **portae, of a gate, or, a gate's.**

**portārum, of gates, or, gates'.**

D. **portae, to or for a gate.**

**portīs, to or for gates.**

Ac. **portam, a gate.**

**portās, gates.**

Ab. **portā, from, with, or by a gate.**

**portīs, from, with, or by gates.**

Like **porta**, decline **nauta, advena, silva, puella, casa.**

## QUESTIONS.

45. Define Inflection, Declension, Conjugation. What is the Stem of a word? The Base? Give the names, endings, and meanings, of all the cases, Singular and Plural, of the First Declension. What is the use of changing the endings of nouns?

## LESSON VI.

Gender ; Genitive of Possession ; Pronouns,  
Adverbs.

46. In English, there are three genders, viz., Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

a. The Masculine gender denotes males, as : *man, boy*.

b. The Feminine gender denotes females, as : *woman, girl*.

c. The Neuter gender denotes neither male nor female, as : *book, table*.

47. In Latin, also, there are these three genders ; and males are always in the Masculine, and females in the Feminine gender. But there is this important difference — that many nouns which are Neuter in English are either Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter in Latin ; their gender being determined by their *ending* rather than by their meaning ; e.g., *liber, book* is Masculine ; *mēnsa, table* is Feminine.

48. **Gender Rule.** Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine.

Exc. Nouns denoting males are Masculine, as : *nauta, sailor*.

## GENITIVE OF POSSESSION.

49. *Puella advenae casam vītat.*

The girl	{	<i>is avoiding</i>	{	<i>the cottage of the stranger.</i>
		<i>avoids</i>		or
		<i>does avoid</i>		<i>the stranger's cottage.</i>

a. Notice that *vītat* may be translated *avoids, is avoiding, or does avoid*.

b. Observe that *advenae* is in the Genitive, and denotes that the stranger *owned* or *possessed* the cottage. Hence it is called the **Genitive of Possession**.

**50. Rule III.** The Genitive is used to denote Possession.

PRONOUNS.

**51.** A Pronoun is a word used instead of a noun; thus, in the sentence: *John says that he will come*, the pronoun *he* is used instead of repeating the noun *John*.

a. An Interrogative pronoun is one that may be used in asking questions, as: *who? which?*

ADVERBS.

**52.** An Adverb is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, as: *he fights bravely*.

**53.**

VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
<i>filia,</i>	<i>filiae, f.,</i>	daughter.	<i>filial.</i>
<i>agricola,</i>	<i>agricolae, m.,</i>	farmer.	<i>agriculture.</i>
<i>conviva,</i>	<i>convivae, m., or f.,</i>	guest.	<i>convivial.</i>
<i>fābula,</i>	<i>fābulae, f.,</i>	story.	<i>fable.</i>
<i>rosa,</i>	<i>rosae, f.,</i>	rose.	<i>rose.</i>
<i>Iūlia,</i>	<i>Iūliae, f.,</i>	Julia.	<i>Julia.</i>

VERBS.

*laudat,* (he, she, it) praises, is praising, or, does praise. *laud.*  
*laudent,* (they) praise, are praising, or, do praise.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

<i>quis?</i>	who?
<i>quid?</i>	what?

ADVERBS.

<i>nōn,</i>	not.	<i>not.</i>
-------------	------	-------------

54. 1. Quis agricolae filiā laudat? 2. Advena agricolae filiā laudat. 3. Agricola convīvae fābulās laudat. 4. Nautae advenārum casās nōn vītāt. 5. Agricolārum rosās puellae laudant. 6. Quis agricolae filiās nōn invītāt? 7. Iūlia agricolae filiās nōn invītāt. 8. Puella advenae filiās vītāt. 9. Quid agricolae laudant? 10. Agricolae puellārum rosās laudant.

55. 1. Julia is praising the girl's roses. 2. What do the strangers avoid? 3. The strangers avoid the sailor's hut. 4. The girls are praising the roses of the guests. 5. Farmers do not invite the daughters of strangers. 6. The guests of the farmer are praising the roses. 7. Guests are entering the stranger's cottage. 8. Who does not praise the stranger's daughter? 9. The sailor does not praise the stranger's daughter. 10. Julia avoids the daughters of farmers.

#### QUESTIONS.

56. Define and illustrate Masculine gender; Feminine; Neuter. How does the Latin differ from the English in gender? Give the gender rule for the First Declension. What is the exception to this rule? What is meant by Genitive of Possession? In what three ways may *vītāt* be translated? Define and illustrate Pronouns, Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs. Decline: *agricola*, *rosa*, *fābula*.

## LESSON VII.

## Dative of the Indirect Object; Questions.

57. *Agricola puellae rosam dat.*

*The farmer* { *gives a rose to the girl.*  
                   { *gives the girl a rose.*

*a.* Observe that *puellae* is in the Dative, and denotes the object *indirectly* receiving the action of the verb. Hence it is called the **Dative of the Indirect Object**.

*b.* Care must be taken to distinguish the *Indirect* from the *Direct* object, as the preposition *to* is often omitted in English.

58. **RULE IV.** The Indirect Object of a verb is put in the Dative.

## QUESTIONS.

59. *Nōn-ne puellae advenās vitant?* *Do not girls avoid strangers?* (*Yes.*) *Num nautae aquam vitant?* *Do sailors avoid the water?* (*No.*) *Intrat-ne Iūlia casam?* *Is Julia entering the cottage?*

Observe:

*a.* That when the speaker expects the answer "Yes," the word *nōn-ne* introduces the question.

*b.* That when he expects the answer "No," the Interrogative Particle *num* is used

*c.* That when he asks a question simply for information, the enclitic *-ne* is affixed to the most emphatic word in the sentence.

60. **NOTE.** The words *my, his, her, its, our, your, their,* are often omitted in Latin.



## 61.

## VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
<b>via,</b>	<b>viae, f.,</b>	way, road.	<i>way.</i>
<b>corōna,</b>	<b>corōnae, f.,</b>	crown, wreath, garland.	<i>crown.</i>
<b>rēgīna,</b>	<b>rēgīnae, f.,</b>	queen.	
<b>Flōra,</b>	<b>Flōrae, f.,</b>	Flora.	<i>Flora.</i>

## VERBS.

<b>dat,</b>	(he, she, it) gives, is giving, <i>or</i> , does give.	
<b>dant,</b>	(they) give, are giving, <i>or</i> , do give.	
<b>mōnstrat,</b>	(he, she, it) shows, is showing, <i>or</i> , does show.	<i>de-monstrate.</i>
<b>mōnstrant,</b>	(they) show, are showing, <i>or</i> , do show.	
<b>nārrat,</b>	(he, she, it) tells, is telling, <i>or</i> , does tell. <i>narrate.</i>	
<b>nārrant,</b>	(they) tell, are telling, <i>or</i> , do tell.	

62. 1. Puellae advenae viam mōnstrant. 2. Nōn-ne nautae advenīs fābulās nārrant? 3. Nautae advenīs fābulās nārrant. 4. Quid filiae agricolārum rēgīnae dant? 5. Filiae agricolārum corōnam rēgīnae dant. 6. Mōnstrat-ne Flōra advenīs viam? 7. Flōra advenīs viam nōn mōnstrat. 8. Num agricolae advenīs fābulās nārrant? 9. Agricolaē advenīs fābulās nōn nārrant. 10. Agricolaē filia rēgīnae viam mōnstrat.

63. 1. Is the girl giving a rose to a stranger? 2. The girl is not giving a rose to a stranger. 3. Who is showing the way to the queen's daughter? 4. The sailor is showing the way to the daughter of the queen. 5. Do not queens avoid the cottages of strangers? 6. Queens do avoid strangers' cottages. 7. What is the sailor telling the farmer? 8. The sailor is telling stories to the farmer.

QUESTIONS.

64. Mention three ways of asking Questions in Latin. Accent *nārrat-ne*. Illustrate the Dative of the Indirect Object. Why is it called the Indirect Object? What words must often be supplied in translating Latin into English? Decline *rēgina*, *via*, *corōna*.

LESSON VIII.

Ablative of Separation; Conjunctions.

65. *Advena puellam culpā liberat.*

*The stranger frees the girl from blame.*

In the above sentence, *culpā* is in the Ablative, and denotes that the blame is *taken away* from the girl. Hence it is called the **Ablative of Separation**.

66. **Rule V.** The Ablative is used to denote Separation.

CONJUNCTIONS.

67. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, and clauses, as: *John and James are good scholars, and often win prizes in school.*

68.

VOCABULARY.

NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
<i>culpa</i> ,	<i>culpae, f.</i> ,	blame, fault.	<i>culpable.</i>
<i>Belga</i> ,	<i>Belgae, m.</i> ,	a Belgian.	<i>Belgian.</i>
<i>vigilia</i> ,	<i>vigiliae, f.</i> ,	sentinel, watch.	<i>vigilant.</i>
<i>catēna</i> ,	<i>catēnae, f.</i> ,	chain.	
<i>diligentia</i> ,	<i>diligentiae, f.</i> ,	diligence.	<i>diligence.</i>

## VERBS.

<b>habēbat,</b> <sup>1</sup>	(he, she, it) had, owned, possessed.	<i>have.</i>
<b>errat,</b>	(he, she, it) strays, wanders.	<i>err.</i>
<b>videt,</b>	(he, she, it) sees.	<i>vision.</i>
<b>capiunt,</b>	(they) seize, take prisoner.	<i>captive.</i>
<b>liberat,</b>	(he, she, it) frees, releases.	<i>liberate.</i>
<b>honōrat,</b>	(he, she, it) honors, respects.	<i>honorable.</i>

## ADVERBS.

<b>ōlim,</b>	once upon a time, formerly.	
<b>noctū,</b>	at night.	<i>nocturnal.</i>
<b>māne,</b>	early in the morning.	
<b>meritō,</b>	deservedly, justly.	<i>merit.</i>

## CONJUNCTIONS.

<b>et,</b> and.	<b>atque,</b> and too, and even.	<b>sed,</b> but.
-----------------	----------------------------------	------------------

NOTE. For the sake of greater vividness, the verb in Latin, as in English, often represents something as taking place *now*, although in reality the time is *past*, as, **Mox videt advenam.** Soon he **saw** (lit. *sees*) a stranger.

## RĒGĪNA BELGĀRUM.

69. Rēgīna Belgārum silvam habēbat. Ōlim convīva rēgīnae viā errat, et noctū silvam intrat. Vigiliae advenam vident et capiunt. Māne rēgīna convīvam catēnīs liberat. Sed vigiliās meritō culpā liberat, atque dīligentiam laudat.

70. 1. The guests free the sentinel from blame. 2. The queens are wandering from the road. 3. Does the stranger see the sentinel? 4. Does not the queen free the Belgians from blame?

## QUESTIONS.

71. Illustrate the Ablative of Separation by an example of your own. What is a conjunction? Decline **culpa**, **Belga**, **vigilia**, **catēna**.

<sup>1</sup> The Plural of these verbs is formed, as in previous lessons, by adding **-nt** to the stem, as: **habēbant** (*they*) *had, owned, possessed*.

LESSON IX.

Second Declension—Nouns in -us; Vocative Case.

72. In the Second Declension, the stem ends in -o, as :  
servo.

73. **Gender Rule.** Nouns of the Second Declension whose Nominative Singular ends in -us, -er, or -ir, are Masculine; those ending in -um are Neuter.

74. NOUNS IN -US.

**servus, m., slave.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	CASE ENDINGS.	
N. <sup>1</sup>	servus	servī	-us	-ī
G.	servī	servōrum	-ī	-ōrum
D.	servō	servīs	-ō	-īs
Ac.	servum	servōs	-um	-ōs
Ab.	servō	servīs	-ō	-īs

VOCATIVE CASE.

75. **Nōnne, nauta, rēginam corōna dēlectat?** *Does not the crown delight the queen, O sailor?* **Quid, serve, puella advenae mōnstrat?** *What, slave, is the girl showing the stranger?*

a. Observe that, in these sentences, the sailor and the slave are *addressed*. They are said to be in the **Vocative Case**.

b. Notice also that while *nauta* has the same ending as in its Nominative Singular, *serve* has an entirely distinct case ending in -e. See the following Rule:

76. **Rule VI.** The Vocative is used as the Case of

<sup>1</sup> The cases express the same relations in *all* Declensions.

Address; it is always like the Nominative, except in the *Singular* of nouns ending in *-us* of the Second Declension, where it ends in *-e*.

## 77.

## VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVE.
<b>servus,</b>	<b>servī, m.,</b>	slave, servant.	<b>servant.</b>
<b>equus,</b>	<b>equī, m.,</b>	horse.	<b>equine.</b>
<b>cibus,</b>	<b>cibī, m.,</b>	food.	
<b>amicus,</b>	<b>amicī, m.,</b>	friend.	<b>amicable.</b>
<b>Carolus,</b>	<b>Carolī, m.,</b>	Charles.	<b>Charles.</b>
<b>Albertus,</b>	<b>Albertī, m.,</b>	Albert.	<b>Albert.</b>

## VERBS.

<b>verberat,</b>	(he, she, it) whips, beats.	<b>re-verberate.</b>
<b>dēlectat,</b>	(he, she, it) delights, pleases.	<b>delight.</b>
<b>amat,</b>	(he, she, it) loves, likes.	<b>amiable.</b>
<b>cūrat,</b>	(he, she, it) cares for, takes care of.	<b>care.</b>

## ADVERBS.

<b>minimē,</b>	no, no indeed, by no means.	<b>minimum.</b>
<b>nam,</b>	for.	
<b>saepe,</b>	often, frequently.	
<b>semper,</b>	always, ever.	<b>sempiternal.</b>
<b>certē,</b>	certainly.	<b>certainly.</b>
<b>diligenter,</b>	diligently, carefully.	<b>diligently.</b>

## 78.

## CONLOQUIUM.

IŪLIA. Quis, Albēte, servum verberat?

ALBERTUS. Agricola servum verberat, et meritō.  
Nam servus equōs nōn diligenter cūrat.

I. Nōne servus equōs amat?

A. Minimē. Servus equōs saepe verberat.

I. Amat-ne Carolus equōs agricolae?

A. Certē. Carolus equīs cibum saepe dat.

I. Nōne agricola amīcīs equōs mōnstrat?

A. Amīcīs agricola equōs saepe mōnstrat.

I. Num Carolus agricolae servum vītāt?

A. Minimē. Fābulae servī Carolum dēlectant.  
Saepe servum culpā liberat.

79. Answer the following questions in Latin :

1. Quis servum verberat? 2. Nōne servus equōs verberat? 3. Quis equōs amat? 4. Num servus equīs cibum dat? 5. Nōne Carolus equōs amīcīs mōnstrat? 6. Quis servum culpā liberat?

#### QUESTIONS.

80. In what does the stem of the Second Declension end? Give the Gender Rule for Second Declension nouns. Give the endings of all the cases (Singular and Plural) of nouns in -us. Explain the use of the Vocative. Decline *equus, cibus, amicus*.

### LESSON X.

Second Declension — Nouns in -um; Predicate Nominative; Prepositions.

81. *servus, m., slave. templum, n., temple.*

#### SINGULAR.

#### CASE ENDINGS.

	M.	N.
N. <i>servus</i>	<i>templum</i>	-us -um
G. <i>servī</i>	<i>templī</i>	-ī
D. <i>servō</i>	<i>templō</i>	-ō
Ac. <i>servum</i>	<i>templum</i>	-um
Ab. <i>servō</i>	<i>templō</i>	-ō

## PLURAL.

			M. N.
N.	servi	templa	-ī -a
G.	servōrum	templōrum	-ōrum
D.	servis	templis	-is
Ac.	servōs	templa	-ōs -a
Ab.	servis	templis	-is

82. Observe that the declension of nouns in *-um* differs from that of nouns in *-us* only in the Nominative Singular and in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

83. Nouns ending in *-ius* and *-ium* contract *-iī* of the Genitive Singular into a single *-i*, without changing the accent, as: *fīlī* for *fīlīi*, *ingē'nī* for *ingē'nīi*; so also the Vocative of names ending in *-ius*, and of *filius* and *genius*, as: *Vergīlī* for *Vergīlīe*; *mī fili* = *my son*.

## PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

84. The Predicate in a sentence is what is said of the subject.

SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.
a. Carolus agricolam vitat.		Charles	avoids the farmer.
b. Carolus est nauta.		Charles	is a sailor.

Observe:

c. That, in the Predicate of example (a), *vitat* — a verb of *action* — takes an object in the Accusative case, according to Rule II.

d. That, in the Predicate of example (b), *est* — a verb of *being* — cannot take an object; and that *nauta*, since it describes the subject, is put in the same case as the subject.

85. Rule VII. A Predicate noun, describing the subject, is put in the Nominative.

## PREPOSITIONS.

86. A Preposition shows the relation between words. Thus, in the sentence: *The book is lying on the table*, *on* is a preposition, showing the relation between *is lying* and *table*. In Latin, prepositions are followed by the Accusative or Ablative.

87. The following prepositions are followed by the Ablative:

**Ā**, ab, absque, cōram, dē,  
 Palam, clam, cum, ex and ē,  
 Prō, prae, tenus and sine;  
*Sometimes in, sub, super, subter.*

All other prepositions are followed by the Accusative.

NOTE. The teacher should now explain the use of the Vocabulary.

## FUNDUS.

88. Nōn procul ab oppidō est fundus. Agricolae villā est prope fluvium. Carolus est agricolae fīlius. Vicīnī fīlius est Flōrus. Carolus et Flōrus sunt amīcī. Interdum in fluviō natant. Saepe trāns fluvium prāta pererrant, et agricolārum equōs et vaccās spectant. In horreō post villam est cōpia frūmentī et pābulī. Iūlia est fīlia agricolae. Equīs faenum saepe dat.

89. 1. Farmers' houses are sometimes near rivers.  
 2. Charles and Albert are sons of the farmer.  
 3. The farmer is looking at the horses in the barn.  
 4. Albert is wandering through the meadow. 5.  
 (There) is an abundance of hay in farmers' barns.



6. Julia is the slave's friend. 7. The slave is giving hay to the farmer's horse.

### QUESTIONS.

90. How do Neuters of the Second Declension differ from Masculines? Accent the Vocative Singular of **Pompēius**, **Lūcius**, **filius**. Accent the Genitive Singular of **hospitium**. What is a Predicate noun? Define Preposition. What prepositions are followed by the Ablative? Decline **oppidum**, **villa**, **fluvius**, **faenum**, **vicinus**.

---

## LESSON XI.

Adjectives in -us, -a, -um; Ablative of Means.

91. An Adjective describes a noun, as: *a bad boy*.

**Bonus servus.**

*A good slave.*

**Bonarum puellarum.**

*Of good girls.*

**Bonō pōmō.**

*With a good apple.*

*a.* Observe that, while in English the adjective does not change, in Latin its ending varies according to the *gender, number, and case* of the noun it describes. With adjectives in -us, -a, -um, if the noun is Masculine, the adjective has the endings of a Second Declension noun in -us. If the noun is Feminine, the adjective has the First Declension endings. If the noun is Neuter, the adjective has the endings of a Second Declension noun in -um.

92. **Rule VIII.** An Adjective agrees with the noun it describes in gender, number, and case.

## 93. bonus, bona, bonum, good.

SINGULAR.		
MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. bonus	bona	bonum
G. bonī	bonae	bonī
D. bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac. bonum	bonam	bonum
Ab. bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL.		
N. bonī	bonae	bona
G. bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D. bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac. bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab. bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

94. The Vocative of adjectives, like that of nouns, is always like the Nominative, except in the Singular of adjectives of the Second Declension in -us, where it ends in -e, as :

**Bonae rēginae.** *O good queens.* **Bone vicine.** *O good neighbor.*

95. Decline together: **parvus nīdus,** *a small nest*; **saeva aquila,** *a fierce eagle*; **longum collum,** *a long neck*; **malus agricola,** *a bad farmer.*

## ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

96. **Gladiō nautam neocat.** *He slays the sailor with a sword.*

Observe that **gladiō** is in the Ablative, and is the *means* by which the sailor was slain. Hence it is called the **Ablative of Means.**

97. **Rule IX.** The Ablative *without a preposition* is used to denote the means by which an action is done.

## CYGNUS.

98. Americānī cŷgnī sunt albī. Cŷgnī collum est longum; rōstrum est fīrmum; ālae sunt praevalidae; oculī sunt parvī. Cŷgnōrum cibus est herba. Interdum parvās rānās et īnsecta dēvorant. Nīdī sunt in iuncīs iūxtā aquam. Ferus cŷgnus est valdē saevus. Et rōstrō et ālīs ācriter pūgnat, sī quid ad nīdum appropīquat. Etiam aquilam fugat.

99. The American swan is white. 2. Swans' necks are long. 3. The eye of the swan is small. 4. (Its) wing is long and powerful. 5. Wild swans are savage. 6. They fight with both wings and beaks. 7. The swan's nest is near the water. 8. Swans put even eagles to flight.

## QUESTIONS.

100. Define Adjective. Does an adjective precede or follow its noun in English? What is its position in Latin? Why? Rule for the agreement of adjectives. Decline *altus* in all genders. Give an example of your own of the Ablative of Means.

## LESSON XII.

Nouns and Adjectives in -er and -ir; Apposition;  
Preposition in.

101.	<i>servus. m.</i>	<i>puer. m.</i>	<i>ager. m.</i>	<i>vir. m.</i>	<i>templum. n.</i>
	<i>slave</i>	<i>boy</i>	<i>field</i>	<i>man</i>	<i>temple</i>

## SINGULAR.

N.	<i>servus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>templum</i>
G.	<i>servī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>templī</i>
D.	<i>servō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>templō</i>
Ac.	<i>servum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>templum</i>
Ab.	<i>servō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>templō</i>

# NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -ER AND -IR. 27

## PLURAL.

N.	servī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
G.	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
D.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
Ac.	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Ab.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

a. Notice that **puer** retains -e throughout, while **ager** has -e only in the Nominative Singular.

b. Notice also that the endings of nouns in -er and -ir differ from those of nouns in -us only in the Nominative Singular.

**102.** Like **puer**, decline **gener**, *son-in-law*, **socer**, *father-in-law*, and **vesper**, *evening*.

Most other nouns drop the -e, like **ager**.

Decline **culter**, *knife*, **liber**, *book*, **magister**, *master*.

**103.** ADJECTIVES in -ER, -A, -UM.

**miser**, **miserā**, **miserum**, *wretched*.  
**pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**, *beautiful*.

## SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	miser	miserā	miserum
G.	miserī	miserāe	miserī
D.	miserō	miserāe	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō

## PLURAL.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	miserī	miserāe	miserā
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	miserā
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

## SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchri
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

## PLURAL.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

a. Observe that **miser**, like **puer**, retains -e, while **pulcher**, like **ager**, loses it.

b. Notice that the endings of adjectives in -er, -a, -um, differ from those in -us, -a, -um only in the Masculine Nominative Singular.

**104.** Like **miser**, decline **asper**, *rough*, **liber**, *free*, **prōsper**, *prosperous*, and **tener**, *tender*.

a. Most other adjectives drop the -e, like **pulcher**.

b. Like **pulcher**, decline **piger**, *lazy*, and **ruber**, *red*.

**105.**

## APPOSITION.

(1). **Carolus, filius Titī, nāvigat.** *Charles, the son of Titus, is sailing.*

(2). **Agricola Flōrum, servum, laudat.** *The farmer praises Florus, the slave.*

Note:

a. That, in example (1), **filius** describes **Carolus**, and is in the same case.

b. That, in example (2), *servum* describes *Flōrum*, and is in the same case.

c. That, in both examples, the descriptive noun is *placed near* the noun it describes. It is therefore called a **Noun in Apposition**. (**Ad — position**, i. e., *position near*.)

**106. Rule X.** A Noun in Apposition is in the same case as the noun it describes.

**107.**

## THE PREPOSITION IN.

*Puer in hortō est. The boy is in the garden.*

*Servus mēsam in hortum portat. The slave is carrying a table into the garden.*

Observe that the preposition *in* governs the Ablative when it means *in*, but the Accusative when it means *into*.

**PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ**

**108.** Gāius et Mārcus, fīlī medicī Rŏmānī, erant impigrī puerī. Māne in lūdum ībant. Magister, Orbilius, erat valdē sevērus, atque virgīs puerōs saepe verberābat. Post prandium, interdum Gāius et Mārcus in Campō Mārtiō equitābant; interdum per silvās errābant; in fluviīs nāvigābant; in stāgnīs natābant; in armīs exercitātī erant. Sic plērumque Rŏmānī puerōs ad militiam parābant.

**109.** 1. Gaius, the son of a Roman teacher, was an active boy. 2. Orbilius whipped Marcus, the doctor's son, severely. 3. The teachers were going into the Campus Martius. 4. The boys used to swim in a pond.

## QUESTIONS.

110. How do nouns in *-er* and *-ir* differ from nouns in *-us*? What is the difference in Declension between *puer* and *ager*? Which of the following nouns retain *-e*: *cultor*, *gener*, *vesper*, *liber*, *magister*, *socer*? How do adjectives in *-er* differ from those in *-us*? What is the difference between *miser* and *pulcher*? Which of the following adjectives retain *-e*: *prōsper*, *asper*, *piger*, *liber*, *ruber*, *tener*? Distinguish between a Noun in Apposition and a Predicate Noun. What cases does it govern? How must it be translated with each case?

## LESSON XIII.

Tense, Person, Number; Verb Sum; Dative of Possessor.

111.	TIME.	VERB OF ACTION.	VERB OF BEING.
	Present,	<i>I love.</i>	<i>we are.</i>
	Past,	<i>thou didst love.</i>	<i>you were.</i>
	Future,	<i>he, she, or it will love.</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

a. Notice that, in English, the *time* of the action or being may be *present*, *past*, or *future*; and that this is expressed either by some Auxiliary or Helping verb, as *didst*, or *will*, or by a change in the *form* of the verb, as *are*, *were*. The *time* of the verb is called its Tense.

b. The Present tense denotes *present* time.

c. The Imperfect tense denotes *continued* time in the *past*.

d. The Future tense denotes *future* time.

## PERSON.

112. Observe further that various Persons may be the subject of the action or being; thus: *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they.*

a. The First person is the person *speaking*, as: *I* or *we*.

b. The Second person is the person *spoken to*, as: *thou* or *you*.

c. The Third person is the person *spoken of*, as: *he, she, it, or they.*

113. The persons may be in the Singular or Plural number.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First person,	<i>I.</i>	<i>we.</i>
Second person,	<i>thou, you.</i>	<i>you.</i>
Third person,	<i>he, she, it.</i>	<i>they.</i>

114. NOTE. *Thou* is rarely used now, except in addressing the Deity, and in poetry, *you* being preferred for both Singular and Plural.

## 115. TENSE AND PERSONAL ENDINGS.

## VERB OF ACTION.

## TENSE. SINGULAR.

Present, am-ō, *I love.*

Imperfect, amā-bā-s, *you were loving.*

Future, amā-bi-t, *he, she, it will love.*

## VERB OF BEING.

## PLURAL.

su-mus, *we are.*

er-ā-tis, *you were.*

er-u-nt, *they will be.*

a. Notice that, in Latin, the *tenses* are shown by certain letters added to the verb stem; thus, -ba = Imperfect tense in amā-bā-s.

b. Notice that the *persons* are denoted by other letters added to the tense stem, as -tis = *you* in er-ā-tis.



116. Following are the equivalents for the persons :

## SINGULAR.

-m, -ō, or -ī, *I*.-s, *you*.-t, *he, she, it*.

## PLURAL.

-mus, *we*.-tis, *you*.-nt, *they*.

117. **Rule XI.** A verb must agree with its subject in person and number.

118.

## VERB SUM.

*Stem es- or er-.*

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

su-m, *I am*.e-s, *you are*.es-t, *he, (she, it) is*.

## PLURAL.

su-mus, *we are*.es-tis, *you are*.su-nt, *they are*.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

er-a-m, *I was*.er-ā-s, *you were*.er-a-t, *he, (she, it) was*.er-ā-mus, *we were*.er-ā-tis, *you were*.er-a-nt, *they were*.

## FUTURE TENSE.

er-ō, *I shall be*.er-i-s, *you will be*.er-i-t, *he will be*.er-i-mus, *we shall be*.er-i-tis, *you will be*.er-u-nt, *they will be*.

119.

## DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.

*Puerō liber est.* (lit. *there is a book to the boy*). **The boy has a book.**

Observe that *puerō* is in the Dative, and denotes the *possessor* of the book. Hence it is called the **Dative of Possessor**.

120. **Rule XII.** The Dative is used with the verb *sum* to denote the Possessor.

121. ALBERTUS ET MĀRCUS, CONDISCIPULĪ

ALBERTUS. Ubi es, Mārce?

MĀRCUS. Hīc ad-sum ; in hortō.

A. Erās-ne herī in lūdō?

M. Nōn eram. Ego et Iūlius in fundō avī meī erāmus.

A. Est-ne māgnus fundus avō tuō?

M. Avī meī fundus nōn māgnus est. Sed avunculō Iūli est māximus fundus.

A. Sunt-ne māla et pira mātūra in pōmāriō avī tuī?

M. Nōndum. Sed mox mātūra erunt.

A. Nōnne crās in lūdō eritis?

M. Iūlius nōn erit ; nam aeger est. Sed ego certē in lūdō erō.

A. Valē.

122. 1. Has your uncle a large garden? 2. My uncle has a very large garden. 3. Julius, has your grandfather ripe pears in his orchard? 4. They were not ripe yesterday. 5. But they will be ripe to-morrow. 6. Were you sick yesterday? 7. Not at all ; I was in school yesterday.

QUESTIONS.

123. Define Tense, Present tense, Imperfect, Future. Give the endings for the persons. Rule for the agreement of verbs. Give three tenses of the verb *to be*, Latin and English. Give an example of your own of the Dative of Possessor, Genitive of Possession, and Dative of Indirect Object. Decline *māgnus* in all genders.

## LESSON XIV.

## Mood ; First Conjugation ; Principal Parts.

124. Mood is the *mode* or *manner* in which the action or being is expressed.

125. The Indicative mood is used to express a *fact*, as :  
**I have studied my lesson.**

126. The Imperative mood is used to express a *command*, as : **Study your lesson.**

## THE CONJUGATIONS.

127. Regular verbs are divided into four conjugations. Each of these has a *characteristic vowel* in the stem, as follows :

- a. I. Conjugation, -ā : as, **amā-**, *love*.
- b. II. Conjugation, -ē : as, **monē-**, *warn*.
- c. III. Conjugation, -e : as, **rege-**, *rule*.
- d. IV. Conjugation, -i : as, **audi-**, *hear*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

128. The stems from which the various tenses are formed are found in the Principal Parts of every verb. These parts are :

- a. The First person Singular of the Present Indicative, as : **amō**.
- b. The Present Infinitive, as : **amāre**.
- c. The First person Singular of the Perfect Indicative, as : **amāvī**.
- d. The Perfect Passive Participle, as : **amātus**.

Thus the Principal Parts of **amō** are :

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.**

**129.** The Present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the Present Infinitive, thus : **amā-**.

*a.* The Perfect stem is found by dropping **-i** from the Perfect Indicative, as : **amāv-**.

*b.* The Participial stem is found by dropping **-us** from the Perfect Passive Participle, as : **amāt-**.

**130. FIRST CONJUGATION.** *Present stem, amā, love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.

**am-ō, I love.**

**amā-s, you love.**

**ama-t, he loves.**

PLURAL.

**amā-mus, we love.**

**amā-tis, you love.**

**ama-nt, they love.**

IMPERFECT TENSE.

**amā-ba-m, I was loving.**

**amā-bā-s, you were loving.**

**amā-ba-t, he was loving.**

**amā-bā-mus, we were loving.**

**amā-bā-tis, you were loving.**

**amā-ba-nt, they were loving.**

FUTURE TENSE.

**amā-b-ō, I shall love.**

**amā-bi-s, you will love.**

**amā-bi-t, he will love.**

**amā-bi-mus, we shall love.**

**amā-bi-tis, you will love.**

**amā-bu-nt, they will love.**

Observe :

*a.* That the Present tense consists of Present stem + Personal endings.

*b.* That the Imperfect tense consists of Present stem + **-ba** + Personal endings.

*c.* That the Future tense consists of Present stem + **-bi** + Personal endings.

131. EXC. The verb *dō*, *give*, is irregular in having *da-* (not *dā-*) for its Present stem, as: *da-ba-t*, *da-bi-tis*.

132. NOTE. Remember that the Present tense may be translated: *I love*, or, *I am loving*, or, *I do love*, etc. So, also, the Imperfect tense may be translated: *I was loving*, or, *I did love*, or, *I used to love*, or, *I loved*, etc.

#### PERFIDA TARPEIA.

133. Sabīnī ōlim Rōmānōrum agrōs vāstābant. Iam ad oppidum appropinquābant. Sī Capitōlium expugnābunt, Rōmānōs omnīnō superābunt. Mox Capitōlium oppugnant, sed frūstrā. Dēnique aurō Tarpēiam, filiā praefectī Rōmānī, temptant. Sed puella postulat ōrnāmenta quae in laevīs bracchiis sunt. Sabīnī nōn recūsant. Mox intrā portam stant. Tum sine morā in Tarpēiam scūta iactant. Nam Sabīnōrum scūta erant in laevīs bracchiis. Sic perfidam Tarpēiam necant, atque Capitōlium occupant.

134. 1. The commander of the Sabines will attack the Capitol. 2. The Romans are ravaging the fields of the Sabines. 3. The commander was already approaching (to) the Capitol. 4. The treacherous girl will demand the ornament on the commander's left arm. 5. We shall soon stand within the gates of Rome. 6. Is not the commander's shield on his left arm?

*Answer the following questions in Latin :*

135. 1. Quī ōlim Rōmānōrum agrōs vāstābant? 2. Num primō Sabīnī Capitōlium expugnant? 3. Quae

erat Tarpēia? 4. Quō modo Sabīnī Tarpēiam temptant? 5. Quid Tarpēia postulat? 6. Num Sabīnī recūsant? 7. Ubi intrā portam stant, quid faciunt Sabīnī? 8. Quō modo Sabīnī prōmissum servābant?

## QUESTIONS.

**136.** Define Mood. What is the Indicative used to express? How many conjugations are there? What is the characteristic vowel of each? What are the Principal Parts of a verb? How is the Present stem found? The Perfect? The Participial? Of what does the Present tense consist? The Imperfect? The Future? Like **amō**, conjugate **portō**, **vāstō**. Give the English for: **postulābātis**, **postulat**, **postulābimus**, **postulant**, **postulābam**, **postulās**, **postulābunt**, **postulābō**. Give the Latin for: *They will demand*, *you (plural) are demanding*, *he was demanding*, *they do demand*, *we used to demand*.

## LESSON XV.

## Second Conjugation.

## 137.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Present stem, amā-, love.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Present stem, monē-, warn.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<b>am-ō</b>	<b>mone-ō</b> , <i>I warn.</i>
<b>amā-s</b>	<b>monē-s</b> , <i>you warn.</i>
<b>ama-t</b>	<b>mone-t</b> , <i>he warns.</i>
<b>amā-mus</b>	<b>monē-mus</b> , <i>we warn.</i>
<b>amā-tis</b>	<b>monē-tis</b> , <i>you warn.</i>
<b>ama-nt</b>	<b>mone-nt</b> , <i>they warn.</i>

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-ba-m	monē-ba-m, <i>I was warning.</i>
amā-bā-s	monē-bā-s, <i>you were warning.</i>
amā-ba-t	monē-ba-t, <i>he was warning.</i>
amā-bā-mus	monē-bā-mus, <i>we were warning.</i>
amā-bā-tis	monē-bā-tis, <i>you were warning.</i>
amā-ba-nt	monē-ba-nt, <i>they were warning.</i>

## FUTURE TENSE.

amā-b-ō	monē-b-ō, <i>I shall warn.</i>
amā-bi-s	monē-bi-s, <i>you will warn.</i>
amā-bi-t	monē-bi-t, <i>he will warn.</i>
amā-bi-mus	monē-bi-mus, <i>we shall warn.</i>
amā-bi-tis	monē-bi-tis, <i>you will warn.</i>
amā-bu-nt	monē-bu-nt, <i>they will warn.</i>

a. Observe that, while the stems differ in their characteristic vowels, these tenses of the First and Second Conjugation are formed in other respects precisely alike, with the exception of the Present First Singular.

## METTIUS CURTIUS.

138. Māgna rīma ōlim in Forō Rōmānō subitō appāret. Prīmō Rōmānī saxa terramque in locum iactābant, sed frūstrā. Rīma lāta atque profunda manēbat. Inde Rōmānī multīs lacrimīs ā deō auxilium ōrābant. Deus tandem ita respondet: “Sī māximum Rōmānum bonum locō dicābitis, tum rīmam explēbō.” Diū in dubiō erant animī Rōmānōrum.

139. 1. Great cracks are appearing in the Roman Forum. 2. We shall cast stones into the crack. 3. Were you (plural) beseeching help from the god?

4. Fathomless cracks will remain for a long time in the Forum. 5. Were not the Romans filling up the crack with earth and stones? 6. Will you (singular) not consecrate your greatest treasure to the place?

*Sight Translation.* METTIUS CURTIUS. — *Concluded.*

140. Dēnique Mettius Curtius, vir bellō ēgregius, “Animus intrepidus,” inquit, “māximum Rōmānum bonum est.” Statim equum suum māgnificē exōrnat, et mox armātus in Forum equitat. Inde, dum turba Rōmānōrum stupet, in rīmam equum incitat. Sine morā deus rīmam explet, atque Rōmānōs māgnā cūrā liberat. Mettium Curtium autem Rōmānī semper laudābant, et pulchrum factum memoriā tenēbant.

141. 1. Quid ōlim in Forō Rōmānō appāret? 2. Quid Rōmānī in rīmam iactābant? 3. Manēbatne rīma? 4. Nōne deus Rōmānīs auxilium dat? 5. Quid respondet deus? 6. Quid dēnique dīcit Mettius Curtius? 7. Quid facit Curtius? 8. Expletne deus rīmam statim?

**ē-gregius**, *illustrious.*

**animus**, *courage.*

**in-trepidus**, *undaunted.*

**inquit**, *said he.*

**statim**, *immediately.*

**suus**, *his.*

**māgnificē**, *MAGNIFICENTLY.*

**ex-ōrnō**, *ad-ORN.*

**armātus**, *ARMED.*

**dum**, *while.*

**turba**, *crowd.*

**stupeō**, *be STUPE-fied.*

**in-citō**, *urge on.*

**cūrā**, *CARE, anxiety.*

**autem**, *however.*

**factum**, *deed.*



## QUESTIONS.

142. What differences do you find between the First and Second Conjugations? Conjugate in three tenses **maneō** and **orō**. Give the Latin for: *they will reply, you (singular) are replying, we did reply, he was replying, you (plural) will reply, I reply*. Give the English for: **respondēmus, respondēbis, respondēbant, respondēbō, respondētis, respondēbās.**

## LESSON XVI.

## Third Conjugation; Ablative of Manner.

143.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.
amā-.	monē-.	rege-, rule.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō	mone-ō	reg-ō, <i>I rule.</i>
amā-s	monē-s	regi-s, <i>you rule.</i>
ama-t	mone-t	regi-t, <i>he rules.</i>
amā-mus	monē-mus	regi-mus, <i>we rule.</i>
amā-tis	monē-tis	regi-tis, <i>you rule.</i>
ama-nt	mone-nt	regu-nt, <i>they rule.</i>

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-ba-m	monē-ba-m	regē-ba-m, <i>I was ruling.</i>
amā-bā-s	monē-bā-s	regē-bā-s, <i>you were ruling.</i>
amā-ba-t	monē-ba-t	regē-ba-t, <i>he was ruling.</i>
amā-bā-mus	monē-bā-mus	regē-bā-mus, <i>we were ruling.</i>
amā-bā-tis	monē-bā-tis	regē-bā-tis, <i>you were ruling.</i>
amā-ba-nt	monē-ba-nt	regē-ba-nt, <i>they were ruling.</i>

## FUTURE TENSE.

amā-b-ō	monē-b-ō	reg-a-m, <i>I shall rule.</i>
amā-bi-s	monē-bi-s	reg-ē-s, <i>you will rule.</i>

amā-bi-t	monē-bi-t	reg-e-t, <i>he will rule.</i>
amā-bi-mus	monē-bi-mus	reg-ē-mus, <i>we shall rule.</i>
amā-bi-tis	monē-bi-tis	reg-ē-tis, <i>you will rule.</i>
amā-bu-nt	monē-bu-nt	reg-e-nt, <i>they will rule.</i>

*a.* Notice that, in the verb stem of the Third Conjugation, final *-e* changes as follows:

*b.* In the Present tense, it becomes *-i*.

*c.* In the Imperfect, it is lengthened to *-ē*.

*d.* In the Future, it is dropped altogether.

**144.** Observing these changes, the Present tense consists of Present stem + Personal endings.

*a.* The Imperfect consists of Present stem + *-ba* + Personal endings.

*b.* The FUTURE consists of Present stem + *-e* (in the First Singular *-a*) + Personal endings.

**145.**

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER.

Puer dōnum servābat { *cum cūrā.*  
*māximā cum cūrā.*  
*māximā cūrā.*

*The boy preserved the gift* { *with care.*  
*with the greatest care.*  
*with the greatest care.*

Observe that *cūrā* is in the Ablative, and that it denotes the *manner* in which the boy preserved the gift. *Cum* is generally used with this Ablative, but it may be omitted when there is a *limiting adjective*.

**146. Rule XIII.** The Ablative with *cum* is used to express Manner. *Cum* may be omitted when there is a *limiting adjective*.

**MELEAGER.**

147. Meleager, filius Althaeae, clārissimus Calydoniōrum erat. Fōrte, ubi parvolus erat, līgnum in focō ardēbat; subitō Parcae appārent atque Althaeam ita monent: “Filius tuus vīvet, quam diū flammæ līgnum nōn cōsument.” Statim Althaea flammās restinguit, atque līgnum māgnā cum cūrā servābat.

Saevus aper quondam Calydoniōs diū terrēbat.

148. 1. Were you living when Meleager was very small? 2. The sticks of wood in the fireplace will not burn. 3. Althea is guarding her son with great care. 4. The flames were consuming the wood. 5. Are your sons living, Althea? 6. Fierce boars do not terrify Meleager. 7. Were you not extinguishing the flames? 8. The Fates used to appear suddenly to distinguished men.

*Sight Translation.* MELEAGER. — *Concluded.*

149. Meleager tandem multōs clārōs virōs condūcit. Pulchra Atalanta quoque adest. Mox saevum aprum in dēnsā silvā petunt. Atalanta prīma mōnstrum volnerat. Meleager autem aprum caedit, atque tergum Atalantæ dat. At avunculī Meleagrī Ata-

con-dūcō, *lead together, assemble.*

quoque, *also.*

dēnsus, *DENSE.*

petō, *seek.*

mōnstrum, *MONSTER.*

volnerō, *wound. (Vulnerable.)*

caedō, *kill.*

tergum, *back, skin.*

privō, *de-PRIVE.*

plēnus, *full.*

ira, *anger, IRE.*

irātus, *angered.*

accendō, *light.*

quod, *which.*

vita, *life. (Vital.)*

excēdō, *depart.*

lantam tergō prīvant. Statim Meleager plēnus īrae avunculōs suōs caedit. Inde Althaea īrāta līgnum accendit, quod mox flammae cōsūmunt. Brevī postea Meleager ē vitā excēdit.

150. 1. Ubi vīvēbat Meleager? 2. Quae Althaeae appārent, ubi Meleager parvolus erat? 3. Quid dīcunt Parcae? 4. Quid facit Althaea? 5. Cūr Meleager multōs clārōs Calydōniōs condūcit? 6. Quae prīma aprum volnerat? 7. Quis aprum caedit? 8. Cuī dat Meleager tergum aprī? 9. Quid faciunt avunculī Meleagrī? 10. Cūr Althaea līgnum accendit?

## QUESTIONS.

151. Give an example of your own of the Ablative of Manner, Ablative of Means, Ablative of Separation. How does the stem of Third Conjugation verbs vary? Of what does each tense consist? Give three tenses of **petō** and **vivō**. Translate: **restinguētis, restinguit, restinguēbant, restinguunt, restinguet, appārēbit, servābit**. Give the Latin for: *I was extinguishing, they will extinguish, you (plural) are extinguishing, he appears, they will preserve.*

## LESSON XVII.

## Fourth Conjugation; Ablative of Cause.

## 152.

CONJ. I.  
amā-

CONJ. II.  
monē-

CONJ. III.  
rege-

CONJ. IV.  
audī-, hear.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō.	mone-ō.	reg-ō.	<i>I hear.</i> audi-ō.
amā-s.	monē-s.	regi-s.	audi-s.
ama-t.	mone-t.	regi-t.	audi-t.
amā-mus.	monē-mus.	regi-mus.	audi-mus.
amā-tis.	monē-tis.	regi-tis.	audi-tis.
ama-nt.	mone-nt.	regu-nt.	audiu-nt.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-ba-m.	monē-ba-m.	regē-ba-m.	<i>I was hearing.</i> audiē-ba-m.
amā-bā-s.	monē-bā-s.	regē-bā-s.	audiē-bā-s.
amā-ba-t.	monē-ba-t.	regē-ba-t.	audiē-ba-t.
amā-bā-mus.	monē-bā-mus.	regē-bā-mus.	audiē-bā-mus.
amā-bā-tis.	monē-bā-tis.	regē-bā-tis.	audiē-bā-tis.
amā-ba-nt.	monē-ba-nt.	regē-ba-nt.	audiē-ba-nt.

## FUTURE TENSE.

amā-b-ō.	monē-b-ō.	reg-a-m.	<i>I shall hear.</i> audi-a-m.
amā-bi-s.	monē-bi-s.	reg-ē-s.	audi-ē-s.
amā-bi-t.	monē-bi-t.	reg-e-t.	audi-e-t.
amā-bi-mus.	monē-bi-mus.	reg-ē-mus.	audi-ē-mus.
amā-bi-tis.	monē-bi-tis.	reg-ē-tis.	audi-ē-tis.
amā-bu-nt.	monē-bu-nt.	reg-e-nt.	audi-e-nt.

a. Observe that, in the Fourth Conjugation, the Present tense consists of Present stem + Personal endings.

b. The Imperfect tense consists of Present stem (with -ē added to it) + -ba + Personal endings.

c. The Future tense consists of Present stem + -e (in the First Singular -a) + Personal endings. Compare the Future of the Third Conjugation.

## 153.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.

*Odiō virum accūsātis. You accuse the man from hatred.*

In this sentence, *odiō* is in the Ablative, and denotes the *cause* of the accusation.

**154. Rule XIV.** The Ablative is used to express Cause.

## PERSEUS ET ANDROMEDA.

**155.** In Aethiopiā ōlim bēlua fera agrōs vāstābat, atque multōs virōs dēvorābat. Cēpheus, igitur, cūrīs sollicitus, ōrāculum cōnsulit. Quod autem ita respondet: “Deus irātus propter superbiam rēgīnæ patriam tuam sīc pūnit. Sī autem bēluæ Andromedam dabis, tum deus poenam finiet.” Inde Cēpheus maestus Andromedam ad dūra saxa revincit. Mox bēluam exaudiunt.

**156.** 1. Many men are troubled with their cares. 2. The gods will punish the queen. 3. Men formerly consulted oracles. 4. The queens end the punishment of the men. 5. Because of the oracle, they are binding Andromeda to the rocks. 6. You will soon hear the monster from afar.

*Sight Translation.* PERSEUS ET ANDROMEDA. — *Concluded.*

**157.** Tum fōrte Perseus super Aethiopiam volābat. Subitō Andromedam cernit. Sine morā appropīnquat, et lacrimārum causam quaerit. Andromeda bēluam mōnstrat. Statim Perseus in aurās ascendit.

Mox falcātō tēlō tergum mōnstrī ferit. Diū atque ācriter pūgnant. Dēnique Perseus bēluam superat. Inde Andromedam catēnīs liberat. Brevī Cēpheus filiā Perseō in mātirimōnium dat.

158. 1. Cūr ōlim Cēpheus ōrāculum cōnsulit? 2. Quid respondet ōrāculum? 3. Quae erat Andromeda? 4. Quis Andromedam bēluā liberat? 5. Quāle tēlum erat Perseō? 6. Quid erat praemium Perseō?

#### QUESTIONS.

159. What uses of the Ablative are contained in the two following sentences: *They slew Clodius with their swords. They slew Clodius from envy.* What is the characteristic vowel of the stem of the Fourth Conjugation? In what tense is -e added to the stem? Inflect three tenses of **pūniō** and **vinciō**. Give the English for **finīt**, **finiēmus**, **finimus**, **finiēbāmus**, **finient**, **finitis**. Give the Latin for: *they were ending, I end, you (plural) will end, you (singular) were ending, they are ending.* Decline **cārus**, -a, -um.

**super**, above, over.

**volō**, fly.

**cernō**, dis-CERN.

**causa**, CAUSE.

**quaerō**, in-QUIRE.

**aura**, air.

**ascendō**, ASCEND.

**falcātus**, curved.

**tēlum**, weapon, sword.

**feriō**, strike.

**pūgnō**, flight. (Pugnacious.)

**mātirimōnium**, marriage, MATRIMONY.

#### LESSON XVIII.

##### Third Declension—Liquid Stems.

160. In the Third Declension, the stem ends either in a consonant or in the vowel -i. Hence this Declension is divided into **consonant stems** and **-i stems**.

161. The Case endings for consonant stems are as follows :

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N.			-ēs	-a
G.	-is		-um	
D.	-ī		-ibus	
Ac.	-em	—	-ēs	-a
Ab.	-e		-ibus	

## LIQUID STEMS.

162.	<i>cōsul, m.</i>	<i>legiō, f.</i>	<i>virgō, f.</i>	<i>flūmen, n.</i>
	<i>consul.</i>	<i>legion.</i>	<i>virgin.</i>	<i>river.</i>
Stem	<i>cōsul-</i>	<i>legiōn-</i>	<i>virgin-</i>	<i>flūmin-</i>

## SINGULAR.

N.	<i>cōsul</i>	<i>legiō</i>	<i>virgō</i>	<i>flūmen</i>
G.	<i>cōsulis</i>	<i>legiōnis</i>	<i>virginis</i>	<i>flūminis</i>
D.	<i>cōsulī</i>	<i>legiōnī</i>	<i>virginī</i>	<i>flūminī</i>
Ac.	<i>cōsulem</i>	<i>legiōnem</i>	<i>virginem</i>	<i>flūmen</i>
Ab.	<i>cōsule</i>	<i>legiōne</i>	<i>virgine</i>	<i>flūmine</i>

## PLURAL.

N.	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>legiōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
G.	<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>legiōnum</i>	<i>virginum</i>	<i>flūminum</i>
D.	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>legiōnibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>
Ac.	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>legiōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
Ab.	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>legiōnibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>

163.	<i>labor, m.</i>	<i>pater, m.</i>	<i>corpus, n.</i>	<i>genus, n.</i>
	<i>labor.</i>	<i>father.</i>	<i>body.</i>	<i>race.</i>
Stem	<i>labōr-</i>	<i>patr-</i>	<i>corpor-</i>	<i>gener-</i>

## SINGULAR.

N.	<i>labor</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>genus</i>
G.	<i>labōris</i>	<i>patris</i>	<i>corporis</i>	<i>generis</i>
D.	<i>labōrī</i>	<i>patri</i>	<i>corporī</i>	<i>generī</i>
Ac.	<i>labōrem</i>	<i>patrem</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>genus</i>
Ab.	<i>labōre</i>	<i>patre</i>	<i>corpore</i>	<i>genere</i>



## PLURAL.

N. labōrēs	patrēs	corpora	genera
G. labōrum	patrum	corporum	generum
D. labōribus	patribus	corporibus	generibus
Ac. labōrēs	patrēs	corpora	genera
Ab. labōribus	patribus	corporibus	generibus

Observe:

a. That the stem differs from the Nominative in all these nouns, except in *cōnsul*.

b. That the Accusative Singular of Neuter nouns is like the Nominative.

c. That the Nominative and Accusative Plural of Neuter nouns ends in *-a*.

**164.** Decline the following nouns, *first noting their stem and gender* (the stem is found by dropping the ending *-is* from the Genitive): *Pāstor*, *pāstōris*, *m.*, *shepherd*, *sermō*, *sermōnis*, *m.*, *conversation*, *opus*, *operis*, *n.*, *work*, *grandō*, *grandinis*, *f.*, *hail*, *māter*, *mātris*, *f.*, *mother*, *carmen*, *carminis*, *n.*, *song*, *exsul*, *exsulis*, *m. and f.*, *exile*, *tempus*, *temporis*, *n.*, *time*.

## FORUM RŌMĀNUM.

**165.** Forum Rōmānum erat inter Capitōlium et Palātium. Prīmō undique erant parvae tabernae. Postea autem clārī cōsulēs imperātōrēsque basilicās et templa in Forō aedificābant. In basilicīs erant argentāriae; hīc etiam praetōrēs iūs reddēbant. In Cūriā Hostiliā et in Templō Concordiae senātōrēs conveniēbant. In rōstris Cicerō et aliī ōrātōrēs ad

populum ōrātiōnēs habēbant. Undique erant altae columnae et deōrum simulācra et clārōrum virōrum statuae.

166. 1. (There) were statues of famous consuls in the Forum. 2. The praetor will administer justice to the people. 3. (There) were images of the gods in Roman temples. 4. The emperor is building a lofty temple. 5. Cicero will deliver an oration to the senators in the Temple of Concord.

*Sight Translation.* FORUM RŌMĀNUM. — *Concluded.*

167. Togātī Rŏmānī in Forum saepe conveniēbant. Hic multa comitia habēbant. Hinc Viā Sacrā cōnsulēs legiōnēs Rŏmānās ad bellum ēdūcēbant. Viā Sacrā legiōnēs victōrēs praedā onustae in Forum incēdēbant māgnīs clāmōribus populī. Nunc autem Forum est dēsertus locus, et tantum-modo ruīnās ostendit. Nihil manet nisi pauca vestīgia antīquae glōriae Rŏmānae.

168. 1. Ubi erat Forum Rŏmānum? 2. Quae prīmō undique erant? 3. Quae posteā cōnsulēs im-

**togātus**, wearing the TOGA.

**comitia**, elections.

**hinc**, hence.

**sacer**, SACRED.

**ē-dūcō**, lead out.

**victor**, VICTOR.

**praeda**, booty. (**Prey**.)

**onustus**, laden.

**in-cēdō**, advance.

**clāmōr**, shout, CLAMOR.

**nunc**, now.

**dē-sertus**, DESERTED.

**tantum-modo**, only.

**ruīna**, RUIN.

**os-tendō**, show. (**Ostensible**.)

**nihil**, nothing. (**Nihilist**.)

**nisi**, unless, except.

**pauci**, few. (**Paucity**.)

**vestigium**, trace, VESTIGE.

**antiquus**, ancient. (**Antique**.)

**glōria**, GLORY.

perātōrēsque in Forō aedificābant? 4. Ubi senātōrēs conveniēbant? 5. Quī in rōstris ōrātiōnēs habēbant? 5. Quā viā cōsulēs ad bellum legiōnēs ēdūcēbant? 6. Quid nunc manet in Forō Rōmānō?

### QUESTIONS.

169. How is the Third Declension divided? Name the liquids (9, b). What is meant by *liquid stems*? Give the case endings for Masculine and Feminine nouns; for Neuters. What cases are alike in Neuter nouns? Decline: **virgō**, **pater**, **genus**, **pāstor**, **legiō**, **exsul**, **labor**, **carmen**, **corpus**. May an Adjective of the First or Second Declension agree with a noun of the Third Declension?

## LESSON XIX.

### Third Declension—Mute Stems.

170.

	<b>princeps, m.</b> <i>chief.</i>	<b>rēx, m.</b> <i>king.</i>	<b>iūdex, m.</b> <i>judge.</i>
<i>Stem</i>	princip-	rēg-	iūdic-

#### SINGULAR.

N.	princeps	rēx	iūdex
G.	principis	rēgis	iūdicis
D.	principi	rēgi	iūdicī
Ac.	principem	rēgem	iūdicem
Ab.	principe	rēge	iūdice

#### PLURAL.

N.	principēs	rēgēs	iūdicēs
G.	principum	rēgum	iūdicum
D.	principibus	rēgibus	iūdicibus
Ac.	principēs	rēgēs	iūdicēs
Ab.	principibus	rēgibus	iūdicibus

	<b>miles, m.</b>	<b>custōs, m.</b>	<b>caput, n.</b>
	<i>soldier.</i>	<i>guard.</i>	<i>head.</i>
<i>Stem</i>	milit-	custōd-	capit-

## SINGULAR.

N.	miles	custōs	caput
G.	militis	custōdis	capitis
D.	militi	custōdī	capitī
Ac.	militem	custōdem	caput
Ab.	milite	custōde	capite

## PLURAL.

N.	militēs	custōdēs	capita
G.	militem	custōdum	capitum
D.	militibus	custōdibus	capitibus
Ac.	militēs	custōdēs	capita
Ab.	militibus	custōdibus	capitibus

Observe :

*a.* That all Masculines and Feminines in Mute stems add **-s** to the stem to form the Nominative (**rēx** = **rēg-s** ; **iūdex** = **iūdic-s**).

*b.* That the Lingual stems drop final **-d** and **-t** in forming the Nominative.

*c.* That the last vowel in the stem is often changed in the Nominative.

**171.** Decline the following nouns : **vōx**, **vōcis**, *f.*, *voice*, **virtūs**, **virtūtis**, *f.*, *bravery*, **ops**, **opis**, *f.*, *help*, **obses**, **obsidis** *m.* and *f.*, *hostage*, **comes**, **comitis**, *m.* and *f.*, *companion*, **grex**, **regis**, *m.*, *herd*.

## GABIĪ.

**172.** Diū Tarquinius Superbus obsidēbat Gabiōs, sed frūstrā. Dēnique fraudem temptat. Obsidiōne dēsistit atque ad urbāna opera animadvertit. Brevī

postea Sextus, filius Tarquinī, ad Gabīnōs venit. "Nōne" inquit "filiū ā saevīs suppliciīs patris tegētis? Rēgis saevitia est intoleranda. Exsul Latium pererrō. Fōrsitan populum cupidum bellī adversus superbum rēgem inveniam." Statim Gabīnī prīncipem in oppidum libenter admittunt.

173. 1. The kings will besiege the towns of Latium in vain. 2. You are not turning your attention to the father's frauds. 3. I protected the king's sons from punishment. 4. Did the prince admit the Gabians into the town? 5. Will he protect the exiles from the people's cruelty?

*Sight Translation.* GABIY. — *Concluded.*

174. Brevī Sextus favōrem et plēbis et mīlitum conciliat. Inde nūntium ad patrem mittit. Rēx

**favor, FAVOR.**

**plēbs, common people, PLEBEIANS.**

**con-ciliō, win, CONCILIATE.**

**nūntius, messenger. (Announce.)**

**mittō, send. (Transmit.)**

**ibi, there.**

**summus, highest. (Summit.)**

**papāver, POPPY.**

**baculum, stick.**

**dē-cūtiō, strike off.**

**dis-cēdō, depart.**

**re-nūntiō, report. (Re-nounce.)**

**cōn-silium, plan, COUNSEL.**

**intel-legō, understand. (Intelligent.)**

**inter-imō, kill.**

**aut . . . aut, either . . . or.**

**exsilium, EXILE.**

**agō, drive. (Agent.)**

**re-liquus, remaining. (Relic.)**

**oppidānus, townsman.**

**ūltrō, of one's own accord.**

**cēdō, yield. (Cede.)**

**ita-que, and so.**

**ūllus, any.**

**di-micātiō, struggle.**

**trā-dō, give over, hand over. (Tradition.)**

autem nihil respondet, sed in hortum ambulat, et ibi summa capita papāverum baculō dēcūtīt. Dēnique nūntius fessus discēdit et Sextō dē patre renūntiat. Sextus autem cōnsilium patris intellegit. Mox prīncipēs oppidī aut interimit aut in exsilium agit. Reliquī oppidānī ūltrō cēdunt. Itaque Sextus patrī sine ūllā dīmīcātiōne oppidum trādit.

175. 1. Quis diū Gabiōs obsidēbat? 2. Quid dēnique rēx temptat? 3. Quem ad Gabīnōs mittit? 4. Quid dīcit Sextus oppidānīs? 5. Num Gabīnī in oppidum Sextum admittunt? 6. Quōrum favōrem Sextus conciliat? 7. Quem ad patrem mittit? 8. Quid facit rēx? 9. Intellegitne Sextus patris cōnsilium? 10. Quid facit Sextus? 11. Quid faciunt ūltrō reliquī oppidānī?

#### QUESTIONS.

176. Name the mutes in their classes (9, a). Decline: **vōx**, **lūmen**, **virtūs**, **condiciō**, **pēs**, **honor**, **comes**, **onus**, **salūs**. What difference in gender do you observe between nouns in **-us**, (Genitive **-eris** or **-oris**), and those in **-ūs**, (Genitive **-ūtis**)?

### LESSON XX.

#### Third Declension — I Stems.

##### MASCULINES AND FEMININES IN **-IS** AND **-ĒS**.

177.	<b>tussis</b> , <i>f.</i> <i>cough.</i>	<b>nāvis</b> , <i>f.</i> <i>ship.</i>	<b>ignis</b> , <i>m.</i> <i>fire.</i>	<b>hostis</b> , <i>m.</i> <i>enemy.</i>	<b>nūbēs</b> , <i>f.</i> <i>cloud.</i>
<i>Stem</i>	tussi-	nāvi-	igni-	hosti-	nūbi-

## SINGULAR.

N.	tussis	nāvis	ignis	hostis	nūbēs
G.	tussis	nāvis	ignis	hostis	nūbis
D.	tussī	nāvī	ignī	hosti	nūbī
Ac.	tussim	nāvem(-im)	ignem	hostem	nūbem
Ab.	tussī	nāvī (-e)	ignī (-e)	hoste	nūbe

## PLURAL.

N.	tussēs	nāvēs	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
G.	tussium	nāvium	ignium	hostium	nūbium
D.	tussibus	nāvibus	ignibus	hostibus.	nūbibus
Ac.	tussis (-ēs)	nāvis (-ēs)	ignis (-ēs)	hostis (-ēs)	nūbis (-ēs)
Ab.	tussibus	nāvibus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus

## NEUTERS IN -E, -AL, AND -AR.

178. mare, n., sea. animal, n., animal. calcar, n., spur.

Stem      mari-                      animāli-                      calcārī-

## SINGULAR.

N.	mare	animal	calcar
G.	maris	animālis	calcārīs
D.	marī	animālī	calcārī
Ac.	mare	animal	calcar
Ab.	marī	animālī	calcārī

## PLURAL.

N.	maria	animālia	calcārīa
G.	marium	animālium	calcārīum
D.	maribus	animālibus	calcārībus
Ac.	maria	animālia	calcārīa
Ab.	maribus	animālibus	calcārībus

Observe that -i stems have the following peculiarities:—

a. They have -ium in the Genitive Plural.

b. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar have -ī in the Ablative Singular, and -ia in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

c. Stems in -is and -ēs have -īs or -ēs in the Accusative Plural.

d. The Accusative Singular of stems in -is and -ēs varies between -im and -em.

e. The Ablative Singular of stems in -is and -ēs varies between -ī and -e.

**179. NOTE.**—i stems in -is and -ēs are easily distinguished from consonant stems in -is and -es; for -i stems *have the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative Singular*, while consonant stems *increase* the number of syllables; thus, *col-lis*, Genitive *col-lis*, is an -i stem; but *la-pis*, Genitive *la-pi-dis*, is a consonant stem. So also *cae-dēs*, Genitive *cae-dis*, is an -i stem; but *co-mes*, Genitive *co-mi-tis*, is a consonant stem.

**180.** To -i stems belong:

a. Nouns in -is and -ēs (not increasing in the Genitive).

b. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

**181.** Like *tussis*, decline *sitis*, *thirst* (in the Singular only, because of its meaning).

a. Like *nāvis*, decline *turris*, *tower*, and *secūris*, *axe*.

b. Like *ignis*, decline *amnis*, *river*, *avis*, *bird*, *classis*, *fleet*, *finis*, *end*, *messis*, *harvest*, and *ovis*, *sheep*.

c. Most other -i stems in -is and -ēs are declined like *hostis* and *nūbēs*.



## BRŪTUS ET FĪLIĪ TARQUINĪ

182. Māxima opera Tarquinī Superbī erant Templum Iovis et Cloāca Māxima. In labōre operum plēbem diū exercēbat. Subitō portentum appāret. Anguis ex columnā lignēā ēmergit atque incolās rēgiae perterret. Inde rēx suōs duōs filiōs per terrās et per maria ad ōrāculum Apollinis mittit. L. Iunius Brūtus, cōnsōbrīnus, erat comes prīncipibus. Trēs iuvenēs tandem in Graeciam perveniunt. Hīc prīmō prō rēge ōrāculum cōnsulunt.

183. 1. The greatest work of the people was a temple. 2. The king will send the youths over the sea. 3. The travellers were consulting the inhabitants of the land. 4. The companions of the youth are the king's cousins. 5. We shall keep the people busy on the works.

*Sight Translation.*BRŪTUS ET FĪLIĪ TARQUINĪ. — *Concluded.*

184. Deinde iuvenēs ab ōrāculō quaerunt: "Quis, post mortem Tarquinī, rēgnum obtinēbit?" Pythia sic respondet: "Imperium summum Rōmae habēbit, quī prīmus mātī ōsculum dabit." Inde duo filiī Tarquinī dē rēgnō sortīs dūcunt. Sed Brūtus cōsultō cadit, atque terrae ōsculum dat. "Nam" putat "terra est mātēr mortālium." Inde Rōmam repetunt. Brevī postea Rōmānī cīvēs, labōribus irātī, Tarquinium rēgnō pellunt, atque Brūtum cōsulem creant.

185. 1. Quae sunt m̄xima opera Tarquinī Superbī? 2. Quō modo rēx plēbem exercēbat? 3. Quod portentum appāret? 4. Quid facit rēx? 5. Quis erat comes filiīs Tarquinī. 6. Quid prīmō faciunt in Graeciā? 7. Quid postea quaerunt iuvenēs? 8. Quid respondet Pŷthia? 9. Quid faciunt prīncipēs? 10. Quid facit Brūtus? 11. Quid postea rēgī accidit?

## QUESTIONS.

186. What are the peculiarities of -i stems? How can -i stems in -is and -ēs be distinguished from consonant stems in -is and -es? What nouns belong to -i stems? Decline: *avis*, *lapis*, *cubile*, *rūpēs*, *eques*, *ovis*, *pāx*, *nectar*, *clādēs*, *vēctigal*, *aedis*, *nōmen*.

*de-inde*, then, afterwards.

*post*, after.

*mors*, death. (Mortal.)

*ob-tineō*, OBTAIN.

*rēgnum*, kingdom. (Reign.)

*im-perium*, command. (Empire.)

*māter*, MOTHER.

*ōsculum*, kiss.

*sors*, lot. (Sort.)

*dūcō*, lead, draw. (Aque-duct.)

*cōn-sultō*, on purpose.

(Consult.)

*cadō*, fall.

*putō*, think. (Com-pute.)

*mortālis*, MORTAL.

*re-petō*, seek again, return to. (Repeat.)

*civis*, citizen. (Civic.)

*pellō*, ex-PEL.

*creō*, elect. (Create.)

## LESSON XXI.

Third Declension — Mixed Stems; Gender Rules;  
Ablative of Accompaniment.

187.	<i>urbs</i> , f.	<i>arx</i> , f.	<i>pōns</i> , m.	<i>aetās</i> , f.
	city.	citadel.	bridge.	age.
Stem	urb- (i-)	arc- (i-)	pont- (i-)	aetāt- (i-)

## SINGULAR.

N.	urbs	arx	pōns	aetās
G.	urbis	arcis	pontis	aetātis
D.	urbī	arcī	pontī	aetātī
Ac.	urbem	arcem	pontem	aetātem
Ab.	urbe	arce	ponte	aetāte

## PLURAL.

N.	urbēs	arcēs	pontēs	aetātēs
G.	urbium	arclum	pontium	aetātium (-um)
D.	urbibus	arcibus	pontibus	aetātibus
Ac.	urbis (-ēs)	arcis (-ēs)	pontis (-ēs)	aetātis (-ēs)
Ab.	urbibus	arcibus	pontibus	aetātibus

a. Notice that these nouns are declined like Consonant stems in the Singular, and like *-i* stems in the Plural. Hence they are called *Mixed stems*. They were originally *-i* stems.

188. To Mixed stems belong:

a. Monosyllables ending in *-s* and *-x* following a consonant, as: *urbs*, *arx*.

b. Nouns ending in *-tās*, as: *aetās*.

189. Decline: *pars*, *partis*, *part*, *mōns*, *montis*, *mountain*, *cīvitās*, *cīvitātis*, *state*.

## 190. THIRD DECLENSION GENDER RULES.

I. Nouns ending in *-ō* (except those in *-dō*, *-gō*, *-iō*), *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, *-es* are generally Masculine.

II. Nouns ending in *-ās*, *-ēs*, *-is*, *-ys*, *-x*, *-s* (preceded by a consonant), *-dō*, *-gō*, *-iō*, and *-ūs* are generally Feminine.

III. Nouns ending in *-a*, *-e*, *-ī*, *-y*, *-c*, *l*, *-n*, *-t*, *-ar*, *-ur*, and *-us* are generally Neuter.

## 191. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.

**Puer cum amicō ambulat.** *The boy is walking with a friend.*

Observe that **amicō** is in the Ablative with the preposition **cum**, and that it denotes that the boy is *accompanied* by a friend. Hence it is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

**192. Rule XV.** The Ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote Accompaniment.

## HORĀTIUS COCLĒS.

**193.** Tarquinius Superbus, iam exsul, ab Larte Porsenā, rēge Clūsī, auxilium petit. Mox māximō in periculō erat Rōma. Nam Porsena māgnīs cum cōpiīs in urbem incēdēbat. Ubīque rēx cōpiās Rōmānōrum vincit. Iam montem Iāniculum occupat. Militēs Rōmānī arma ordinēsque relinquunt, atque fugā salūtem petunt. Tum Pōns Sublicius sōlus flūmen Tiberim iungēbat. Nisi Rōmānī pontem interscindent, brevī Porsena in urbem cōpiās suās trādūcet. Sed Rōmānīs virtūs nōn omnīnō deest. Prō ponte Horātius Coclēus cum Sp. Lartīō et T. Herminiō hostīs sustinet.

**194.** 1. The king's forces will advance upon the cities. 2. Large bridges span the river Tiber. 3. Will a Roman soldier leave the ranks, and seek safety in flight? 4. Are you not cutting down the bridges, Romans? The soldiers of Lars Porsena were holding back the enemy's forces.

*Sight Translation. HORATIUS COCLĒS. — Concluded.*

195. Intereā mīlitēs cīvēsque Rōmānī pontem interseindēbant. Mox, ubi exigua pars pontis manet, Horātius duōs comitēs trāsmittit. Nunc sōlus sed intrepidus pontem tenet. Dēnique māgnō fragōre pōns in flūmen dēcidit. Rōmānī māgnū clāmōrem tollunt. Inde Horātius, etiam armātus, in Tiberim dēsilit atque ad suōs comitēs trānat. Tantā virtūte cīvitatē servat. Grātī cīvēs statuam Horātī in Comitīō pōnunt.

196. 1. Ā quō Tarquinius auxilium petit? 2. Cūr mox erat Rōma māximō in periculō? 3. Quem montem Porsena occupat? 4. Nōne Rōmānī rēgem Clūsī vīcunt? 5. Quī pōns tum flūmen Tiberim iungēbat? 6. Quot Rōmānī hostīs sustinent? 7. Dum Horātius hostīs sustinet, quid Rōmānī faciēbant? 8. Dēciditne pōns in flūmen? 9. Quid deinde facit Horātius? 10. Quod praeium cīvēs Horātiō dant?

**inter-eā**, *meanwhile.*

**ex-iguus**, *small.*

**pars**, *PART.*

**trāns-mittō**, *send across.*

(*Transmit.*)

**fragor**, *crash.*

**dē-cidō**, *fall down.* (*Deciduous.*)

**tollō**, *raise.* (*Ex-tol.*)

**dē-sillō**, *leap down.*

**trā-nō**, *swim across.*

**tantus**, *so great.*

**civitās**, *state.*

**grātus**, *GRATE-ful.*

**Comitium**, *the COMITIUM, a place in the Forum.*

**pōnō**, *place.* (*Position.*)

## QUESTIONS.

197. Why are the Mixed stems so called? What nouns belong to Mixed stems? State the Gender Rules of the Third Declension. Give an example of your own of the Ablative of Accompaniment, Ablative of Manner, Ablative of Means. Decline : *aestās, cliēns, volpēs, laus, exemplar, mēns, celeritās, sēdēs, mors, piscis.*

---

## LESSON XXII.

Verb Sum — Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative; Imperative.

198. There are three tenses in the Indicative mood besides the Present, Imperfect, and Future; viz., the *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.*

199. The Perfect tense denotes either :

a. Time completed in the past, *without* reference to its *continuance*; as : *I walked*; or,

b. Time completed in the present, as : *I have walked.*

200. The Pluperfect tense denotes time completed in the past, before some other action was begun, as : *I had walked a mile, when I met a stranger.*

201. The Future Perfect tense denotes time completed in the future, as : *I shall have walked.*

202. The Imperative mood has but two tenses, the Present and the Future.

## 203.

## VERB SUM — INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Perfect stem, fu-.*

## PERFECT.

## SINGULAR.

fu-ī,	<i>I was.</i>
	<i>I have been.</i>
fu-istī,	<i>you were.</i>
	<i>you have been.</i>
fu-it,	<i>he was.</i>
	<i>he has been.</i>

## PLURAL.

fu-imus,	<i>we were.</i>
	<i>we have been.</i>
fu-istis,	<i>you were.</i>
	<i>you have been.</i>
fu-ērunt or. fu-ēre,	<i>they were.</i>
	<i>they have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

fu-erā-m, *I had been.*  
 fu-erā-s, *you had been.*  
 fu-erā-t, *he had been.*

fu-erā-mus, *we had been.*  
 fu-erā-tis, *you had been.*  
 fu-erā-nt, *they had been.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

fu-er-ō, *I shall have been.*  
 fu-er-i-s, *you will have been.*  
 fu-er-i-t, *he will have been.*

fu-er-i-mus, *we shall have been.*  
 fu-er-i-tis, *you will have been.*  
 fu-er-i-nt, *they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD. *Present stem, es-.*

## PRESENT.

es, *be thou.*es-te, *be ye.*

## FUTURE.

es-tō, *thou shalt be.*  
 es-tō, *he shall be.*

es-tōte, *ye shall be.*  
 su-ntō, *they shall be.*

a. Notice that the somewhat irregular personal endings in the Perfect are added directly to the Perfect stem.

b. The tense sign in the Pluperfect is *-era-* = *had*.

c. The tense sign in the Future Perfect is *-eri-* = *shall* or *will have*.

NOTE. — The tense signs and personal endings of these three tenses are the same in ALL Latin verbs. Master them and their meanings now, and they will present no further difficulty.

d. Observe that *-ō* is the prevailing vowel in the Future Imperative.

#### ATALANTA.

204. Atalanta fuit celerrima mortālium. Diū propter ōrāculum coniugium vitābat. Schoeneus, virginis pater, procōs filiae sic monēbat: "Sī victor certāmine pedum eris, tum fīliam meam in mātirimōnium dūcēs. Sed mors estō pretium tarditātis." Nihilō minus Atalantae multī procī fuērunt. Nam fuit pulcherrima virgō. Itaque multī ex foedere poenam pendēbant. Dēnique Hippomenēs virginem in mātirimōnium petit. Ante certāmen autem ā Venere auxilium ōrat. Inde dea iuvenī tria aurea pōma dat.

205. 1. Notwithstanding, the maidens had many suitors. 2. Had you been a victor in the races? 3. Many of the maidens were most beautiful. 4. Hippomenes will be the victor in the foot-race. 5. The father of the maidens had been the swiftest of mortals. 6. You shall pay the penalty unless you are (*lit.* shall have been) the victor.



*Sight Translation. ATALANTA. — Concluded.*

206. Intereā undique ad certāmen conveniunt. Mox tubae sīgnum dant. Ūnā cursōrēs carcere ēmicant et clāmōribus multitudinis pariter volant. Tum Hippomenēs, dum meta longē abest, ūnum dē tribus pōmīs mittit. Virgō cupīdine aurī dēclīnat, tollitque nitidum pōmum. Intereā Hippomenēs prīmum locum tenet. Mox tamen Atalanta moram corrigit. Inde iuvenis secundum pōmum mittit, sed nēquiquam. Iam ad metam appropīnquābant. “Nunc” inquit Hippomenēs “ades, ō dea.” Inde tertium pōmum mittit. Atalanta dubitat, dēclīnat, atque Hippomenēs vīctor ēmicat, habetque praemium.

207. 1. Cūr Atalanta coniugium vītābat? 2. Quō modo Schoeneus procōs filiae monēbat? 3. Num multī poenam pendēbant? 4. Quis dēnique virginem in mātīmōnium petit? 5. Quid Venus iuvenī dat? 6. Dum meta longē abest, quid facit Hippomenēs? 7. Num virgō cupīdine pōmī dēclīnat? 8. Corrigitne moram? 9. Quid deinde facit Hippomenēs? 10. Ubi tertium pōmum mittit? 11. Quis fuit vīctor?

tuba, trumpet.

sīgnum, signal.

ūnā, together. (Unit.)

cursor, runner. (Cursory.)

carcer, starting point.

ēmicō, dart forth.

pariter, side by side. (Parity.)

meta, goal.

longē, afar.

absūm, be distant. (Absent.)

cupīdō, desire. (Cupidity.)

aurum, gold.

dē-clīnō, turn aside. (Decline.)

tollō, pick up.

nitidus, shining.

corrīgō, make up. (Correct.)

dubitō, hesitate. (Dubitative.)

## QUESTIONS.

**208.** What time does the Perfect denote? Distinguish between the Imperfect and Perfect. What time does the Pluperfect denote? The Future Perfect? Of what does the Perfect of *sum* consist? What is the tense sign of the Pluperfect? Of the Future Perfect? What are the English equivalents of these tense signs? Conjugate all the tenses of the Indicative and Imperative of *sum*, Latin and English. Translate: *fueritis, fui, fuerāmus, fuēre, fuistis, fuerint*; *we have been, I had been, he will have been, they had been*. Give an example of the Dative of Possessor.

## LESSON XXIII.

Third Declension Adjectives — I stems; First Conjugation — Indicative and Imperative.

**209.** *ācer, sharp. Stem ācri-. celer, swift. Stem celerl-.*

## SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	celer	celeris	celere
G.		ācris			celeris	
D.		ācri			celeri	
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	celerem	celerem	celere
Ab.		ācri			celeri	

## PLURAL.

N.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
G.		ācrium			celerium	
D.		ācribus			celcribus	
Ac.	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria	celerīs (-ēs)	celerīs (-ēs)	celeria
Ab.		ācribus			celcribus	

## 210. fortis, brave. Stem forti-.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	MASC. and FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. and FEM.	NEUT.
N.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
G.		fortis		fortium
D.		forti		fortibus
Ac.	fortem	forte	fortis (-ēs)	fortia
Ab.		forti		fortibus

211. All stems in -ri are declined like ācer, except celer, which keeps -e throughout.

a. Like ācer, decline equester, equestrian, and pedester, pedestrian. Like fortis, decline brevis, short, and gravis, heavy. Decline together: fortis vir; ācris pūgna; breve tempus.

## 212. FIRST CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect stem amāv-.

## PERFECT.

amāv-ī,	{ I loved. I have loved.	amāv-imus,	{ we loved. we have loved.
amāv-isti,	{ you loved. you have loved.	amāv-istis,	{ you loved. you have loved.
amāv-it,	{ he loved. he has loved.	amāv-ērunt, or amāv-ēre,	{ they loved. they have loved.

## PLUPERFECT.

amāv-era-m,	I had loved.	amāv-erā-mus,	we had loved.
amāv-erā-s,	you had loved.	amāv-erā-tis,	you had loved.
amāv-era-t,	he had loved.	amāv-era-nt,	they had loved.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

amāv-er-ō,	I shall have loved.	amāv-erī-mus,	we shall have loved.
amāv-erī-s,	you will have loved.	amāv-erī-tis,	you will have loved.
amāv-erī-t,	he will have loved.	amāv-erī-nt,	they will have loved.

IMPERATIVE MOOD. — *Present stem, amā-*

## PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*

amā-te, *love ye.*

## FUTURE.

amā-tō, *thou shalt love.*

amā-tōte, *ye shall love.*

amā-tō, *he shall love.*

ama-ntō, *they shall love.*

a. Observe that, in the First Conjugation, the Perfect stem is formed by adding -v to the Present stem, thus: amā + v = amāv-.

NOTE. — The student should hereafter learn the Principal Parts of all the verbs in each Lesson, so that he may know their different stems.

## DEUCALIŌN ET PYRRHA.

213. Omnibus in locīs terrae ōlim fuērunt impietās et scelus. Numquam antehāc hominēs tam turpēs crūdēlēsque fuerant. Dēnique Iuppiter terribilem poenam parāvit. Ex omnī caelō dēnsōs nimbōs convocat et adsiduōs imbrīs dēmittit. Neptūnus quoque frātre*m* iuvat. Ubīque flūmina agrōs inundant. Iam altum mare etiam summōs montīs tegēbat. Parnāsus sōlus ex undīs ēminēbat. Hīc pius Deucaliōn cum coniuge Pyrrhā parvā rate adhaerēbant. Nec iam īra deōrum manet.

214. 1. We had called pious men together from every land. 2. The highest mountains alone will project from the deep sea. 3. The gods have prepared cruel punishments for base men. 4. The river will have inundated the land before this. 5. Jupiter and Neptune assisted Deucalion and Pyrrha.

*Sight Translation.*DEUCALIŌN ET PYRRHA. — *Concluded.*

**215.** Statim Neptūnus nūbīs fugāvit et flūmina mariaque revocāvit. Sed ex omnibus mortālibus modo duo supererant. Maestī Deucaliōn et Pyrrha in templō ā deā auxilium ōrābant. Inde Themis sīc respōnsum dedit: “Vēlate capita, et post tergum ossa māgnae parentis iactāte.” Diū stupēbant. Deucaliōn tandem sīc dīcit: “Terra est māgna parēns omnium. Fōrsitan lapidēs sunt ossa māgnae parentis.” Inde ā templō discēdunt, capita vēlant, et saxa post tergum mittunt. Mox respiciunt. Iam saxa sunt virī et fēminae. Sīc deī terrae hominēs restituerunt.

**216.** 1. Cūr ōlim Iuppiter terribilem poenam hominibus parāvit? 2. Quid facit Iuppiter? 3. Quō modo Neptūnus Iovem iuvat? 4. Quī mōns sōlus ex undīs ēminēbat? 5. Quī mōntī adhaerēbant? 6. Quid statim facit Neptūnus? 7. Quot ex omnibus mortālibus supererant? 8. Quid faciunt Deucaliōn et Pyrrha? 9. Quod respōnsum dedit dea? 10. Quid dē respōnsō dīcit Deucaliōn? 11. Quid faciunt Deucaliōn et Pyrrha? 12. Quid ēvēnit?

**re-vocō, recall.** (**Revoke.**)

**modo, only.**

**Themis, Goddess of Justice.**

**re-spōnsum, RESPONSE.**

**vēlō, VEIL.**

**os, bone.** (**Ossi-fy.**)

**parēns, PARENT.**

**re-spiciō, look back.** (**Respect.**)

**fēmina, woman.** (**Feminine.**)

**re-stituō, restore.** (**Restitution.**)

## QUESTIONS.

217. What is the difference in declension between *acer* and *celer*? Why does *fortis* have but two endings in the Nominative? Conjugate the whole of the Indicative and Imperative of *parō* and *dō*. What is the use of learning the Principal Parts of verbs?

## LESSON XXIV.

Third Declension Adjectives — Consonant Stems;  
Second Conjugation — Indicative and  
Imperative.

218. *audāx*, *daring*.  
*Stem audāc-*.

*prūdēns*, *prudent*.  
*Stem prūdent-*.

## SINGULAR.

	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
N.	<i>audāx</i>		<i>prūdēns</i>	
G.	<i>audācis</i>		<i>prudentis</i>	
D.	<i>audācī</i>		<i>prudentī</i>	
Ac.	<i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>prudentem</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>
Ab.	<i>audācī (-e)</i>		<i>prudentī (-e)</i>	

## PLURAL.

N.	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentia</i>
G.	<i>audācium</i>		<i>prudentium</i>	
D.	<i>audācibus</i>		<i>prudentibus</i>	
Ac.	<i>audācis (-ēs)</i>	<i>audācia</i>	<i>prudentis (-ēs)</i>	<i>prudentia</i>
Ab.	<i>audācibus</i>		<i>prudentibus</i>	

*a.* Almost all adjectives of the Third Declension with Consonant stems are declined, like *audāx* and *prūdēns*, with the case endings of *-i* stems. Decline *atrōx*, *fierce*, and *diligēns*, *diligent*. Decline together: *ferōx aper*; *ingēns templum*; *vetus Rōma*.

## 219. SECOND CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Perfect stem monu-.*

## PERFECT.

*I warned or I have warned.*

monu-ī	monu-imus
monu-isti	monu-istis
monu-it	monu-ērunt
	or monu-ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had warned.*

monu-era-m	monu-erā-mus
monu-erā-s	monu-erā-tis
monu-era-t	monu-era-nt

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Present stem monē-.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have warned.*

monu-er-ō	monu-eri-mus
monu-eri-s	monu-eri-tis
monu-eri-t	monu-eri-nt

## PRESENT.

monē	monē-te
------	---------

## FUTURE.

monē-tō	monē-tōte
monē-tō	monē-ntō

a. Most verbs of the Second Conjugation form the Perfect stem by changing final -s of the Present stem to -u, thus **monē-** becomes **monu-**; but there are many exceptions which should be carefully studied. Notice the stems of **sedeō** and **videō** in the following paragraph.

## C. MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA.

220. Diū Porsena Rōmam obsēderat. Māxima inopia cibī in urbe erat. Dēnique C. Mūcius, adulēscēns nōbilis, in castra hostium penetrāvit. Ibi prope rēgium tribūnal ingentem turbam vīdit. Scrība cum rēge sedēbat, atque stīpendium mīlitibus dabat. Diū Mūcius dubitābat; nam figūrae rēgis īncius erat. Dēnique scrībam prō rēge obtruncat. Satelītēs rēgis audācem iuvenem comprehendunt retrahuntque ante tribūnal. Iūssīs rēgis, līgna Mūciō circumdant, atque īgnīs parant.

221. 1. Porsena's soldiers were besieging the enemy's camp. 2. The daring youths had slain the king's attendants. 3. The soldiers penetrated the vast crowd. 4. The enemies of Mucius will have besieged the cities. 5. Is not the crowd of daring soldiers sitting before the tribunal?

*Sight Translation.*

C. MŪCIUS SCAEVOLA. — *Concluded.*

222. Mūcius autem interritus, "Rōmānus cīvis" inquit "sum, neque mortem timeō." Inde dextram in ignem impōnit. Porsena, attonitus mīrāculō, tantam virtūtem laudat, atque Mūcium līberum dīmīttit. Inde Mūcius rēgem sīc monuit: "Trecentī Rōmānī iuvenēs, māgne rēx, in tē coniūrāvērunt. Mea prīma sors fuit. Cēterī singulī aderunt, utcumque occāsio erit." Rēx, dē suā salūte commōtus, cōpiās dēdūcit, et agrō Rōmānō excēdit. Postēā Mūcius, ā clāde dextrae, cōgnōmen *Scaevola* habuit.

223. 1. Cūr ōlim erat māxima inopia cibī in urbe Rōmā? 2. Quis in castra hostium penetrāvit?

**in-territus**, UNTERRIFIED.

**timeō**, fear. (**Timid.**)

**dextra**, right hand. (**Dexterous.**)

**im-pōnō**, put into or on.  
(**Imposition.**)

**at-tonitus**, ASTONISHED.

**mīrāculum**, startling act.

**dī-mittō**, DISMISS.

**tre-centī**, three hundred.

**con-iūrō**, conspire. (**Conjure.**)

**ut-cumque**, whenever.

**oc-cāsio**, opportunity, OCCASION.

**com-mōtus**, alarmed. (**Commotion.**)

**cēterī**, the others.

**singulī**, one by one. (**Singular.**)

**dē-dūcō**, lead away. (**Deduce.**)

**cōg-nōmen**, surname.



3. Quid prope rēgium tribūnal vīdit? 4. Cūr Mūcius scribam prō rēge obtruncāvit? 5. Quid audācī iuvenī accidit? 6. Nōne Mūcius ignīs timuit? 7. Quid facit Mūcius? 8. Quid facit Porsena? 9. Quid Mūcius rēgem monuit? 10. Quid facit rēx? 11. Quod cōgnōmen postea Mūcius habuit?

## QUESTIONS.

**224.** What -i stem endings are found in the declension of most Third Declension adjectives with consonant stems? Conjugate the whole of the Indicative and Imperative of *habēō* and *sedeō*. What is the Genitive Singular of *Mūcius*?

## LESSON XXV.

**Fourth Declension; Third Conjugation — Indicative and Imperative.**

**225.** *exercitus, m., army. cornū, n., horn. domus, f., house.*  
*Stem exercitu- cornu- domu-*

	SINGULAR.			CASE ENDINGS.	
N.	exercitus	cornū	domus	-us	-ū
G.	exercitūs	cornūs	domūs (domī)	-ūs	
D.	exercitui (-ū)	cornū	domui (domō)	-ui (-ū)	-ū
Ac.	exercitum	cornū	domum	-um	-ū
Ab.	exercitū	cornū	domō (domū)	-ū	

	PLURAL.			CASE ENDINGS.	
N.	exercitūs	cornua	domūs	-ūs	-ua
G.	exercituum	cornuum	domuum (domōrum)	-uum	
D.	exercitibus	cornibus	domibus	-ibus	
Ac.	exercitūs	cornua	domōs (domūs)	-ūs	-ua
Ab.	exercitibus	cornibus	domibus	-ibus	

a. Notice that the stem ends in *-u*: hence this is sometimes called the *-u Declension*.

b. Observe that *domus* has several forms of the Second Declension, and that the Second Declension form is preferred to the Fourth in the *Ablative Singular* and in the *Accusative Plural*.

**226. Gender Rule.** Most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-us* are Masculine; those ending in *-ū* are Neuter.

Exc. *Manus* and *domus* are feminine.

**227.** Like *exercitus* decline *magistrātus*, *m.*, *magistrate*, and *manus*, *f.*, *hand*, *band*; like *cornū* decline *genū*, *n.*, *knee*.

**228. THIRD CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.**

*Perfect stem rēx-*

PERFECT.

*I ruled or I have ruled.*

rēx-ī	rēx-imus
rēx-istī	rēx-istis
rēx-it	rēx-ērunt
	or rēx-ēre

PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rēx-era-m	rēx-erā-mus
rēx-erā-s	rēx-erā-tis
rēx-era-t	rēx-era-nt

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Present stem rege-*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have ruled.*

rēx-er-ō	rēx-eri-mus
rēx-eri-s	rēx-eri-tis
rēx-eri-t	rēx-eri-nt

PRESENT.

rege                      regi-te

FUTURE.

regi-tō	regi-tōte
regi-tō	regu-ntō

a. The formation of the Perfect stem in the Third Conjugation is very irregular. Notice the following ways of forming the Perfect stem:

1. Adding *s* to the root: *reg-* + *s* = *rēx-*, *dūc-* + *s* = *dūx-*, *lūd-* + *s* = *lūs-*.
2. Reduplication (prefixing the first two letters to the root): *cu* + *curr-* = *cucurr-*, *pe* + *pell-* = *pepul-*.
3. Lengthening the vowel of the root: *em-*, *ēm-*; *ag-ēg-*; *vinc-*, *vīc-*.
4. Adding *-u* to the root: *al-* + *u* = *alu-*, *col-* + *u* = *colu-*.
5. By adding *-iv* to the root: *pet-* + *iv* = *petiv-*, *quaer-* + *iv* = *quaesiv-*.
6. Retaining the root: *ru-*, *ru-*: *vert-*, *vert-*.

## DUO EQUITĒS.

229. Postquam Porsena cum suō exercitū finibus Rōmānīs excesserat, Tarquinius ab Octāviō Mamiliō, rēge Latīnōrum, auxilium petīvit. Brevī postea Rōmānī et Latīnī ad lacum Rēgillum dīmīcāvērunt. Grave et atrōx erat proelium. Dēnique ā sinistrō cornū Rōmānī impetum Latīnōrum nōn sustinuerunt. Inde Aulus Postumius dictātor, "Templum" inclāmat "geminīs frātribus voveō, sī hodiē hostīs vīcerimus." Ecce autem, statim duo īgnōtī iuvenēs in albīs equīs dēlēctam manum dictātōris in hostīs dūcēbant.

230. 1. The two armies have withdrawn from the Latin territory. 2. Mamilius had led the cavalry against the left wing. 3. The dictator, with a picked band of young men, was sustaining the enemy's attacks. 4. Postumius will lead the left wing of the Roman army. 5. Will not the king have sought aid from the Latins?

*Sight Translation. Duo Equitēs. — Concluded.*

231. Omnibus in locīs māgna caedēs erat. Iam Mamilius atque fīlius Tarquinī occidunt. Dēnique Latīnī terga vertunt et fugā salūtem petunt. Intereā in urbe cīvēs in māgnō metū erant. Subitō, occāsū sōlis, duo equitēs in Forō appārent. Prope templum Vestae ex equīs dēscendunt. Dum hīc fessīs equīs aquam dant, cīvibus vīctōriam praeclāram nūntiant. Inde ex Forō equitant, neque iterum Rōmānīs appārent. Sed Aulus “Duo equitēs” inquit “geminī frātrēs, Castor et Pollūx, fuērunt.” In Forō igitur templum māgnificum aedificāvit dicāvitque geminīs deīs.

232. 1. Num Porsena Rōmam expūgnāvit? 2. Ā quō postea Tarquinius auxilium petīvit? 3. Ubi duo exercitūs dīmīcāvērunt? 4. Nōne Rōmānī impetum Latīnōrum sustinuērunt? 5. Quid inclāmāvit dictātor? 6. Quid accidit? 7. Quī dēnique terga vertērunt? 8. Quī in Forō, occāsū sōlis, appāruērunt? 9. Quid prope templum Vestae fēcērunt? 10. Quī erant duo equitēs?

**oc-cidō**, *fall, perish.*

**vertō**, *turn. (Re-vert.)*

**metus**, *anxiety.*

**oc-cāsus**, *setting.*

**sōl**, *sun. (Solar.)*

**Vesta**, Goddess of the Hearth.

**dē-scendō**, *DESCEND, dis-mount.*

**fessus**, *tired.*

**victōria**, *VICTORY.*

**prae-clārus**, *splendid, glorious.*

**nūntiō**, *an-NOUNCE.*

**iterum**, *again.*

**Castor**, *CASTOR.*

**Pollūx**, *POLLUX.*

**māgni-ficus**, *MAGNIFICENT.*

## QUESTIONS.

**233.** Why is the Fourth Declension sometimes called the -u Declension? Decline *domus*. In what cases of *domus* are the Second Declension forms preferred to the Fourth? State the Gender Rule. What nouns in -us are Feminine? Conjugate the whole of the Indicative and Imperative of *dūcō*. Give a synopsis in the Indicative and Imperative of *dō* and *sustineō*. (A synopsis is an outline of a verb, giving but one form in each tense, as: *amat, amābat, amābit*, etc.)

## LESSON XXVI.

**Fifth Declension; Fourth Conjugation — Indicative and Imperative; Accusative of Time.**

<b>234. diēs, m., day.</b>			<b>rēs, f., thing.</b>			<b>CASE ENDINGS.</b>	
<i>Stem</i>	<i>diē-</i>		<i>rē-</i>				
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs	
G.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum	-ēi	-ērum	
D.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus	-ēi	-ēbus	
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs	
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus	-ē	-ēbus	

a. The stem ends in -ē.

b. Only *diēs* and *rēs* have all the cases in the Plural. Most nouns of this declension are declined in the Singular only, but a few have also the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

c. Contrary to the rule, in the Genitive and Dative Singular the vowel -e is long before -i, except in *rēs*, *spēs*, and *fidēs*. See § 8, b.

**235. Gender Rule.** Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except *dies*, which is usually Masculine in the Singular, and always in the Plural.

**236. FOURTH CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.**

*Perfect stem audīv-*.

**PERFECT.**

*I heard or I have heard.*

audiv-ī	audiv-imus
audiv-istī	audiv-istis
audiv-it	audiv-ērunt
	or audiv-ēre

**PLUPERFECT.**

*I had heard.*

audiv-era-m	audiv-erā-mus
audiv-erā-s	audiv-erā-tis
audiv-era-t	audiv-era-nt

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

*Present stem audi-*.

**FUTURE PERFECT.**

*I shall have heard.*

audiv-er-ō	audiv-eri-mus
audiv-eri-s	audiv-eri-tis
audiv-eri-t	audiv-eri-nt

**PRESENT.**

audi                  audi-te

**FUTURE.**

audi-tō	audi-tōte
audi-tō	audiu-ntō

*a.* The Perfect stem in the Fourth Conjugation is regularly formed by adding -v to the Present stem as, audi- + v = audīv-.

**237. ACCUSATIVE OF TIME HOW LONG.**

*Multōs annōs caecus fuit. He was blind many years.*

Observe that *annōs* is in the Accusative, and that it answers the question, *How long?* It is therefore called the Accusative of *time how long*.

**238. Rule XVI.** The Accusative is used to denote *time how long*.

## PRŌSERPINA.

**239.** In Siciliā quondam Prōserpina, filia Cereris, in lūcō flōrēs carpēbat. Subitō Plūtōnis currus ad lūcum celeriter appropinquat. Deus pulchram deam videt atque statim diligit. Nec ūlla mora est. Iam Prōserpina captīva in currū terribilis deī per agrōs lacūsque volat. Nēquiquam dea territa mātrem et comitēs clāmat. Mox Plūtōn scēptrum in altum fontem condit et viam in Tartara aperit.

Intereā Cerēs filiam diēs noctisque quaesiverat sed nōn reppererat. Dēnique fessa dea omnem spem dēposuit. Valdē irāta frūgēs terrīs negābat. Ubique dīra inopia erat.

**240.** 1. At length the mother and companions of Proserpina gave up all their hopes. 2. Have you searched for the maiden during the night? 3. He had opened a way through the earth with Pluto's sceptre. 4. Did not the maidens pluck flowers in the fields during the day? 5. You will not find the god's chariot in the grove.

*Sight Translation.* PRŌSERPINA. — *Concluded.*

**241.** Sed flūmen Alphēus, dum subter Siciliam fluit, Prōserpinam vīderat, et nunc tandem Cererī tōtam rem nārrāvit. Inde dea ad Iovem vēnit, et auxilium ōrāvit. Pater hominum atque deōrum precēs Cereris benīgnē audīvit. Tum sic respondit: "Prōserpina repetet terram, sed certā lēge, sī nūllum cibum contigit." At infēlix Prōserpina, dum per

hortum errat, Pūniceum pōmum gustāverat. Iterum Cerēs omnem spem dēposuit. Tum Iuppiter, plēnus misericordiae annum inter Plūtōnem et Cererem dīvidit. Quā rē postea Prōserpina cum mātē sex mēnsīs, cum coniuge totidem mēnsīs semper manēbat.

242. 1. Ubi quondam Prōserpina flōrēs carpēbat? 2. Quis ad lūcum celeriter appropīnat? 3. Videtne Plūtōn Prōserpinam? 4. Quid statim accidit? 5. Quō modo Plūtōn viam in Tartara aperuit? 6. Quid interea Cerēs fēcerat? 7. Quō modo Cerēs terrās pūnīvit? 8. Quis tandem Cererī tōtam rem nārrāvit? 9. Ā quō Cerēs auxilium ōrāvit? 10. Quid respondit Iuppiter? 11. Contigeratne Prōserpina ūllum cibum? 12. Quid tandem fēcit Iuppiter?

## QUESTIONS.

243. Decline together *fēstus diēs*; *rēs pūblica*; *inānis currus*. State the Gender Rule for the Fifth Declension. Inflect the Indicative and Imperative of *reperiō*. Give a synopsis of *dīvidō* and *maneō*.

*Alphēus*, a river in Greece.  
*subter*, underneath.

*fluō*, FLOW.

*tōtus*, whole. (Total.)

*prex*, prayer, entreaty.

*benignē*, in a kindly manner,

BENIGNLY.

*lēx*, law. (Legal.)

*certus*, fixed, CERTAIN.

*nūllus*, no. (Null.)

*con-tingō*, touch. (Contact.)

*in-fēlix*, unfortunate. (Infelicitous.)

*Pūniceus*, PUNIC, reddish; with  
*pōmum* = pomegranate.

*gustō*, taste. (Dis-gust.)

*miseri-cordia*, pity.

*dīvidō*, DIVIDE.

*sex*, SIX.

*mēnsis*, month.

*con-iunx*, husband. (Conjugal.)



## LESSON XXVII.

## Personal and Reflexive Pronouns; Double Accusative.

244.

## FIRST PERSON.

## SINGULAR.

N.	ego, I.
G.	mei, of me.
D.	mihi (mī), to or for me.
Ac.	mē, me.
Ab.	mē, from, with, or by me.

## PLURAL.

nōs, we.
nostrum or nostri, of us.
nōbis, to or for us.
nōs, us.
nōbis, from, with, or by us.

## SECOND PERSON.

N.	tū, you.	vōs, you.
G.	tui, of you.	vestrum or vestri, of you.
D.	tibi, to or for you.	vōbis, to or for you.
Ac.	tē, you.	vōs, you.
Ab.	tē, from, with, or by you.	vōbis, from, with, or by you.

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

N	_____	_____
G.	sui, of himself, herself, itself.	sui, of themselves.
D.	sibi, to or for himself, etc.	sibi, to or for themselves.
Ac.	sē or sēsē, himself, etc.	sē or sēsē, themselves.
Ab.	sē or sēsē, from, with, or by himself, etc.	sē or sēsē, from, with, or by themselves.

a. The Reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence, as: *Imperātor sē culpat*, *The general blames himself*. The pronouns of the first and second person may also be used reflexively, as: *Ego mē culpō*, *I blame myself*; *vōs vōs culpātis*, *You blame yourselves*.

b. The preposition *cum* becomes an enclitic when used with the Personal and Reflexive pronouns, as: *tēcum*, *nōbiscum*.

245.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

*Rōmulus urbem Rōmam vocāvit, Romulus called the city Rome.*

246. Rule **XVII.** Verbs of *naming, making, choosing, showing*, and the like, may have two Accusatives of the same person or thing.

PERSEUS ET MEDŪSA.

247. Polydectēs, rēx Serīphī, Danaēn, mātrem Perseī, in mātirimōnium sibi petēbat. At Perseus obstābat. Rēx tandem iuvenem ad sē vocāvit. "Quot annōs" inquit "hīc īgnāvus manēbis? Tū es nōn iam infāns. Ā latere māttris discēde, et apud externās gentīs glōriam pete. Ubi Gorgonis Medūsae caput abscīderis, tum fortem virum tē praebebīs." Sine morā Perseus ad iter parāvit. Medūsa autem cum duābus sorōribus in Libyā habitābat. Dīra mōnstra erant Gorgonēs; nam aureās ālās et aeneōs unguīs habēbant. Medūsa ōlim pulcherrima virgō fuerat. Sed Minervam laeserat. Quā rē irāta, dea crīnīs Medūsae in turpīs serpentis mūtāverat.

248. 1. Show yourselves brave heroes, young men. 2. The maiden will remain abroad two years. 3. I had sought glory for myself in Africa. 4. We called the young men to us. 5. The monster has brazen claws (*use the Dative of Possessor*).

*Sight Translation.*

PERSEUS ET MEDŪSA. — *Continued.*

249. Exinde, sī quis ōra Medūsae aspēxit, prōtinus in saxum sē vertit. Perseus autem Gorgonēs

nōn temerē petīvit, sed primum ab immortalibus deīs auxilium orāvit. Inde Minerva iuvenī nitidum clipeum dedit. Harpēn, telum curvō hāmō, atque tālāria ab Mercuriō Perseus accēpit. Sic armātus ad orās Libycās tendit. Mox ad locum vēnit, ubi Graeae sedēbant. Tribus sorōribus erant omnīnō ūnus oculus ūnusque dēns. Ab Graeīs viam ad Hesperidas quaesīvit Perseus, sed asperum respōnsum recēpit. Dum autem ūnum oculum inter sē trādunt, Perseus suam manum supposuit et oculum subripuit. Tum dēnique necessitāte, sorōrēs iuvenī viam mōnstrāvērunt.

250. 1. Quis mātrem Perseī in mātrimonium sibi frūstrā petēbat? 2. Quid tandem fēcit rēx? 3. Quid Perseō dīxit? 4. Quālia mōnstra erant Gorgonēs? 5. Quō modo olim Minerva Medūsam pūnīverat? 6. Quid accidit, sī quis ora Medūsae aspēxit? 7. Quid Perseus ab Minervā accēpit? 8. Quid ab Mercuriō? 9. Quae erant Graeae? 10. Quō modo Perseus Graeārum oculum cēpit?

**ex-inde**, thereafter.

**ōs**, face, feature. (Oral.)

**a-spiciō**, look at. (Aspect.)

**prō-tinus**, forthwith.

**temerē**, rashly. (Temerity.)

**immortālis**, IMMORTAL.

**clipeus**, (a round) shield.

**Harpē**, a sickle-shaped sword.

**hāmus**, hook.

**curvus**, CURVED, bent.

**tālāria**, winged sandals.

**Mercurius**, MERCURY, messenger of the gods.

**ac-cipiō**, receive. (Accept.)

**ōra**, shore.

**Libycus**, Libyan, African.

**tendō**, hold one's course, TEND.

**Graeae**, the GRAEAE. (See Vocab.)

**dēns**, tooth. (Dentist.)

**Hesperides**, guardians of the golden apples.

**sup-pōnō**, place under.

**sub-ripiō**, steal away. (Sur-reptitious.)

**necessitās**, NECESSITY.

## QUESTIONS.

**251.** Decline the Personal Pronouns. Decline the Reflexive. Translate: *We blame ourselves ; they blame themselves ; will not your mother come with you ?*

## LESSON XXVIII.

## Voice ; Passive of First Conjugation ; Ablative of Agent.

**252.** There are two voices :

*a.* The Active voice represents the subject as acting, as : **The dog bit the boy.**

*b.* The Passive voice represents the subject as acted upon, as : **The boy was bitten by the dog.**

Heretofore, verbs have been given in the Active voice only.

**253.** The Personal endings in the Passive voice are as follows :—

## SINGULAR.

-r = *I.*

-ris or -re = *you.*

-tur = *he, she, it.*

## PLURAL.

-mur = *we.*

-minī = *you.*

-ntur = *they.*

**254.** FIRST CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD — PRESENT TENSE.

amo-r, *I am loved.*

amā-ris or -re, *you are loved.*

amā-tur, *he is loved.*

amā-mur, *we are loved.*

amā-minī, *you are loved.*

ama-ntur, *they are loved.*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-ba-r, *I was loved.*

amā-bā-ris or -re, *you were loved.*

amā-bā-tur, *he was loved.*

amā-bā-mur, *we were loved.*

amā-bā-minī, *you were loved.*

amā-ba-ntur, *they were loved.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

amā-bo-r, *I shall be loved.*  
 amā-be-ris or -re, *you will be loved.*  
 amā-bi-tur, *he will be loved.*  
 amā-bi-mur, *we shall be loved.*  
 amā-bi-mini, *you will be loved.*  
 amā-bu-ntur, *they will be loved.*

## PERFECT TENSE.

amātus (-a, -um)	{	sum,	{ <i>I was loved.</i> <i>I have been loved.</i>
		es,	{ <i>you were loved.</i> <i>you have been loved.</i>
		est,	{ <i>he was loved.</i> <i>he has been loved.</i>
amāti (-ae, -a)	{	sumus,	{ <i>we were loved.</i> <i>we have been loved.</i>
		estis,	{ <i>you were loved.</i> <i>you have been loved.</i>
		sunt,	{ <i>they were loved.</i> <i>they have been loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amātus (-a, -um)	{	eram,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
		erās,	<i>you had been loved.</i>
		erat,	<i>he had been loved.</i>
amāti (-ae, -a)	{	erāmus,	<i>we had been loved.</i>
		erātis,	<i>you had been loved.</i>
		erant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

amātus (-a, -um)	{	erō,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
		eris,	<i>you will have been loved.</i>
		erit,	<i>he will have been loved.</i>
amāti (-ae, -a)	{	erimus,	<i>we shall have been loved.</i>
		eritis,	<i>you will have been loved.</i>
		erunt,	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD — PRESENT TENSE.

**amā-re**, *be thou loved.*

**amā-mini**, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

**amā-tor**, *thou shalt be loved.*

**amā-tor**, *he shall be loved.*

**ama-ntor**, *they shall be loved.*

a. Observe that the *tense signs* in the Present, Imperfect, and Future are the same as in the Active voice.

b. In the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses, the participle **amātus** must agree with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case, as: **pater amātus est**, **māter amāta est**, etc.

c. Notice that the Present Imperative Passive is the same as the Present Infinitive Active.

d. Notice the irregularities in the First Singular of the Present Indicative, and in the First and Second Singular of the Future Indicative.

255.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT.

**Oppidum ā Caesare expūgnātum est.** *The town was taken by Caesar.*

Observe that **Caesare** is in the Ablative with the preposition **ā**, and that it denotes the *agent* or *person* by whom the action was done. Hence it is called the *Ablative of Agent*.

256. **Rule XVIII.** The Ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab** is used to denote the Agent after Passive verbs.

NOTE. — **ā** may be used *only* before words beginning with a consonant; **ab** before words beginning with a vowel or a consonant. (Compare the use of *a* and *an* in English.)

PERSEUS ET MEDŪSA. — *Continued.*

257. Haud ita multō post Perseus ad pōmāria Hesperidum pervēnit. Pulchrae virginēs cum insomnī dracōne arborem aureīs pōmīs custōdiēbant. Hīc quoque Perseus fēlīx fuit. Nam ab virginibus mīrā galeā dōnātus est. Quicumque galeam induit, statim ex oculīs ēvānuit. Nunc dēnique Perseus ad certāmen cum Gorgonibus pārātus est. Mox ad domōs Gorgonum appropīnquābat. Passim per agrōs et per viās saxeae simulācra hominum ferārū vidēbat. Nam omnēs rēs ā Medūsā in saxa mūtatae erant. Perseus autem in nitidum clipeum īnspectēbat. Subitō horribilem fōrmam mōnstrī cernit.

258. 1. Be thou changed, frightful monster, into a stone. 2. The maiden is presented by Perseus with a golden apple. 3. Will the men have been prepared for the contests with wild beasts? 4. The sleepless dragon will watch the golden apples in the gardens. 5. Men and beasts were everywhere being changed into stones.

*Sight Translation.*PERSEUS ET MEDŪSA. — *Concluded.*

259. Dum gravis somnus trīs sorōrēs tenet, Perseus Medūsae caput fidō tēlō absēdit. Inde celeribus tālāribus āvolat. Intereā duae reliquae Gorgonēs ē somnō excitantur, atque caedem suae sorōris sentiunt. Omnīs in partīs circumspectant et mox hostem cernunt. Sine morā īstant. At Perseus mīram galeam induit, atque ita māgnō periculō statim

liberātur. Dēnique cum capite Gorgonis ad īnsulam Serīphon pervenit. Hīc mātrem in templō invenit, quō indīgnitātibus Polydectae fūgerat. Inde ad rēgiam Perseus pergit, atque sine morā malum rēgem in saxum mūtāt. Brevī posteā Harpēn et tālāria Mercuriō, galeam Hesperidibus reddidit. Medūsae caput Minervae dedit. Semper posteā dea Gorgonis caput in mediō clipeō gerēbat.

260. 1. Quid īnsomnis dracō in pōmāriīs Hesperidum custōdiēbat? 2. Quid Hesperides Perseō dedērunt? 3. Quam ob rem mīra fuit galea? 4. Quid vidēbat Perseus, ubi ad domōs Gorgonum appropinquābat? 5. Cūr Perseus in saxum nōn mūtātus est? 6. Quō modo Perseus Medūsam caedit? 7. Quid faciunt duae reliquae Gorgonēs? 8. Quō modo Perseus perīculō liberātur? 9. Ubi mātrem invenit? 10. Quō modo malum rēgem pūnīvit? 11. Quibus Perseus arma dedit? 12. Ubi semper posteā erat caput Gorgonis?

QUESTIONS.

261. Distinguish between the Active and Passive voice. What are the Personal endings in the Passive? What stems are used in the Passive? Give an example of your own of the Ablative of Agent. How does it differ from the Ablative of Means?

<b>somnus</b> , <i>sleep</i> . (In-somnia.)	<b>īnsula</b> , <i>island</i> . (Insular.)
<b>fidus</b> , <i>trusty</i> . (Fidelity.)	<b>quō</b> , <i>whither</i> .
<b>ā-volō</b> , <i>fly away</i> .	<b>in-dīgnitās</b> , <i>INDIGNITY</i> .
<b>ex-citō</b> , <i>awake</i> . (Excite.)	<b>fugiō</b> , <i>flee</i> . (Fugitive.)
<b>sentiō</b> , <i>perceive</i> . (Sense.)	<b>pergō</b> , <i>proceed</i> .
<b>circum-spectō</b> , <i>look around</i> .	<b>medius</b> , <i>middle of</i> . (Medium.)
<b>instō</b> , <i>pursue</i> . (Instant.)	



Inflect *parō* in all tenses of the Indicative and Imperative Passive. Translate: *mūtāberis, mūtantor, mūtātus eram, mūtāmini, mūtāta est, mūtābāris, mūtāti erimus; you (plural) had been changed, I am changed, it will have been changed, we were being changed, you (singular) will be changed, be ye changed.*

### LESSON XXIX.

**Demonstrative Pronouns, *Hic, Ille, and Iste*; Passive of the Second Conjugation.**

**262.** The Demonstrative pronouns are used to *point out* or emphasize an object. They are *hic, iste, ille, is, idem, and ipse*. They may be used alone as pronouns; or, like adjectives, they may agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

**263.** *hic, this.*

*ille, that.*

#### SINGULAR.

N.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
G.		<i>hūius</i>			<i>illius</i>	
D.		<i>huic</i>			<i>illi</i>	
Ac.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
Ab.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

#### PLURAL.

N.	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G.	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
D.		<i>his</i>			<i>illis</i>	
Ac.	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
Ab.		<i>his</i>			<i>illis</i>	

NOTE. — *iste, ista, istud* is declined like *ille, illa, illud*.

*a. hic, this (near me),* is called the Demonstrative of the First person, as : *hic liber, this book.*

b. *iste*, *that (of yours)*, is called the Demonstrative of the Second person, as: *iste liber*, *that book of yours*. It often implies contempt.

c. *ille*, *that (yonder, near him)*, is called the Demonstrative of the Third person, as: *ille liber*, *that book yonder*.

d. When *hic* and *ille* are contrasted, *ille* usually denotes *the former*, and *hic* *the latter*.

## 264. SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

*I am warned.*

*moneo-r*

*monē-mur*

*monē-ris* or *-re* *monē-mini*

*monē-tur*

*mone-ntur*

#### IMPERFECT.

*I was warned.*

*monē-ba-r*

*monē-bā-mur*

*monē-bā-ris* or *re* *monē-bā-mini*

*monē-bā-tur*

*monē-ba-ntur*

### FUTURE.

*I shall be warned.*

*monē-bo-r*

*monē-bi-mur*

*monē-be-ris* or *-re* *monē-bi-mini*

*monē-bi-tur*

*monē-bu-ntur*

### PERFECT.

*I was warned* or *I have been warned.*

*monitus*

(-a, -um)

{ *sum*  
*es*  
*est*

*moniti*  
(-ae, -a)

{ *sumus*  
*estis*  
*sunt*

### PLUPERFECT.

*I had been warned.*

*monitus*

(-a, -um)

{ *eram*  
*erās*  
*erat*

*moniti*

(-ae, -a)

{ *erāmus*  
*erātis*  
*erant*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been warned.*

monitus	{	erō	moniti	{	erimus
(-a, -um)		eris	(-ae, -a)		eritis
		erit			erunt

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

monē-re

monē-mini

## FUTURE.

monē-tor

monē-tor

mone-ntor

## ARĪON ET DELPHĪNUS.

265. Clārissimī vātēs antiq̄uitātis fuērunt Orpheus et Arīon. Ex hīs, ille Thrācius, hīc Lesbius fuit. Dē Arīone haec rēs adhūc memoriā tenētur: Apud Periandrum, rēgem Corinthī, Arīon multōs annōs habitābat. Aliquandō in Siciliam trāsmisit. Ubīque rēgēs prīncipēsque dulcēdine carminum Arīonis dēlectābantur. Dēnique multīs pretiōsīs dōnīs onustus nāvem cōnscendit, et Graeciam repetēbat. Nautae autem avārī erant, atque Arīonī mortem struēbant. Vātēs illōrum mala cōnsilia sentit et misericordiam implōrat sed frūstrā. Dēnique extrēmam veniam ōrat atque impetrat. Prōtinus splendidam vestem induit, et lyram sūmit.

266. 1. These things had been remembered by the wicked princes many years. 2. The avaricious king will have been delighted with that costly gift (of yours). 3. I will embark immediately and return to Sicily. 4. The former implored pity in vain, the latter obtained his request. 5. Are the songs of Arion still remembered in Greece?

*Sight Translation.* ARĪŌN ET DELPHĪNUS. — *Concluded.*

**267.** Inde Arĭōn in puppī nāvis lyrā canit. Tōtum mare cantū vātis sonat. Mox multī delphīnī circum nāvem congregantur. Prōtinus Arĭōn ōrnātus in mediās undās dēsilit. Tum ūnus ex delphīnīs Arĭōnī curvum tergum suppōnit atque novum onus vehit. Vātēs autem incolumis in illius tergō sedet, tenetque lyram, et cantū undās mulcet. Sic māgnā cum celebritāte delphīnus Arĭōnem ad Taenarum vehit. Inde Arĭōn ad Periandrum contendit et omnīs rēs nārrāvit. Brevī posteā malī nautae ad urbem Corinthum pervēnērunt. Sine morā ad rēgem vocātī sunt. Primum dē Arĭone mendācia dīxērunt. Sed ubi rēx vātem advocāvit perturbātī sunt, atque mox poenam iūstam solvērunt.

**268.** 1. Quī fuērunt clārissimī vātēs antīquitātis? 2. Ubi habitābat Arĭōn? 3. Ā quibus multa dōna aliquandō accēpit? 4. Quī Arĭōnī mortem struēbant? 5. Quid fēcit vātēs? 6. Quī circum

puppis, *stern.*

canō, *play.*

cantus, *singing.* (Chant.)

sonō, *re-sound.*

circum, *around.*

con-gregō, *assemble.* (Congregation.)

ōrnātus, *ad-ORNED, dressed.*

novus, *strange, NEW.*

vehō, *carry.* (Vehicle.)

in-columis, *safe, unharmed.*

mulceō, *soothe.*

Taenarus, a promontory of Greece.

con-tendō, *hasten.* (Contend.)

mendācium, *falsehood, lie.* (Mendacity.)

ad-vocō, *call to.* (Advocate.)

per-turbō, *confuse.* (Perturbation.)

iūstus, *JUST, deserved.*

solvō, *pay.* (Solve.)

nāvem congregantur? 7. Quō modo ūnus ex delphīnīs Arīonī auxilium dedit? 8. Quō delphīnus vātem vehit? 9. Ad quem Arīōn contendit? 10. Ubi nautae ad rēgem vocātī sunt, quid dē Arīone dīxērunt? 11. Quid accidit ubi Arīonem vīdērunt?

## QUESTIONS.

269. In what two ways may Demonstrative pronouns be used? Decline together: *hic vir*; *haec res*; *hōc dōnum*; *ille rēx*; *ista civitās*; *illud mare*. Distinguish between *hic*, *ille*, and *iste*. Inflect *doceō* in all tenses of the Indicative and Imperative Passive. Translate: *doctae eritis*, *doceor*, *docēbitur*, *docti erant*, *docēmini*, *docēbāmur*, *docēre*, *doctus es*; *we are taught*, *they shall be taught*, *you (singular) had been taught*, *I was being taught*, *she has been taught*.

## LESSON XXX.

Demonstrative Pronouns — *Is*, *Īdem* and *Ipse*;  
Passive of the Third Conjugation.

270.

*is, this, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N. <i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>īd</i>	<i>eī (īi)</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G.	<i>ēius</i>		<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D.	<i>eī</i>			<i>eīs (īis)</i>	
Ac. <i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>īd</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
Ab. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>		<i>eīs (īis)</i>	

*īdem, the same.*

N. <i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
			( <i>īidem</i> )		
G.	<i>ēiusdem</i>		<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D.	<i>eīdem</i>			<i>eīsdem (īisdem)</i>	
Ac. <i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
Ab. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>		<i>eīsdem (īisdem)</i>	

*ipse, self.*

N.	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
G.		<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsorum</i>	<i>ipsarum</i>	<i>ipsorum</i>
D.		<i>ipsi</i>		<i>ipsis</i>	
Ac.	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum ipsos</i>	<i>ipsas</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
Ab.	<i>ipso</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipso</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	

a. *Is* is not as forcible as *hic* or *ille*. It is frequently used as a pronoun of the Third person, meaning *he, she, it*.

b. Notice that *Idem* = *is* + *dem* (a demonstrative suffix).

Observe the change of *m* to *n* before *d*.

c. *Ipse* adds emphasis to a noun or pronoun, as :  
*vir ipse, the man himself.*

## 271. THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

*I am ruled.*

<i>rego-r</i>	<i>regi-mur</i>
<i>rege-ris</i> or <i>re</i>	<i>regi-mini</i>
<i>regi-tur</i>	<i>regu-ntur</i>

#### IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*

<i>regē-ba-r</i>	<i>regē-bā-mur</i>
<i>regē-bā-ris</i> or <i>re</i>	<i>regē-bā-mini</i>
<i>regē-bā-tur</i>	<i>regē-ba-ntur</i>

#### FUTURE.

*I shall be ruled.*

<i>reg-a-r</i>	<i>reg-ē-mur</i>
<i>reg-ē-ris</i> or <i>re</i>	<i>reg-ē-mini</i>
<i>reg-ē-tur</i>	<i>reg-e-ntur</i>

#### PERFECT.

*I was ruled* or *I have been ruled.*

<i>rēctus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$	<i>rēcti</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$
<i>(-a, -um)</i>		<i>(-ae, -a)</i>	

#### PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*

<i>rēctus</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{array} \right.$	<i>rēcti</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{array} \right.$
<i>(-a, -um)</i>		<i>(-ae, -a)</i>	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been ruled.*

rēctus	{ erō	rēcti	{ erimus
(-a, -um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

rege-re    regi-mini

## FUTURE.

regi-tor	_____
regi-tor	regu-ntor

## DOMUS RŌMĀNA.

**272.** Vestibulum domūs Rōmānae erat vacuus locus ante iānuam. Per id vestibulum erat aditus ā viā ad domum. Iānuā ipsa erat līgnea; at postēs saepe erant ē marmore. In līmine plērumque erat verbum “Salvē” in pavīmentō tessellātō. Interior domus in trīs partīs dīvidēbātur. Eārum prīma pars appellāta est ātrium. In mediō tēctō eius partis, lūcis et āeris causā, apertum spatium relīctum est. Pluvia per eundem locum in impluvium dēscendit. Supellex erat exigua; at parietēs pulchrīs statuīs pīctūrīsque ōrnābantur. In ātriō, dominus amīcīs et clientibus aditum dabat.

**273.** 1. That space had been left in the wall on account of a door. 2. The atrium will be in the same part of the house. 3. Roman houses are divided into these three parts. 4. Have not the doors themselves been left open? 5. The roofs of Roman houses were divided into the same parts.

*Sight Translation.* DOMUS RŌMĀNA. — *Concluded.*

274. Ab utrōque latere ātrī erant nocturna et diurna cubicula familiae hospitibusque. Locus proximus ātriō appellātus est **tablīnum**. Hīc tabulae familiārēs condēbantur; et in eōdem locō dominus pecūniam servābat atque suum opus faciēbat. Utrimque **faucēs** ab ātriō ad **peristylum**, tertiam partem domūs, dūcēbant. In peristylō pulcher hortus atque fōns columnīs marmoreīs inclūdēbantur. Ubi vēla prō tablīnō reducta sunt, tōta domus, — ātrium, deinde tablīnum, mox pulchrum peristylum, — ūnum in cōspectum vēnit. Peristylō adiacēbant **triclīnia**, cubicula, et cellae omnis generis. Superior domus servōrum et libertōrum ūsibus dētīnēbātur.

275. 1. Ubi erat vestibulum domūs Rŏmānae?

2. Quid plērumque in līmine erat? 3. In quot

uter-que, each (of two).

nocturnus, for the night.

(Nocturnal.)

diurnus, for the day. (Diurnal.)

familia, FAMILY.

hospes, guest. (Hospitality.)

proximus, nearest. (Approximate.)

tablīnum, the TABLINUM.

tabulae, records. (Tables.)

familiāris, of the FAMILY. (Familiar.)

\*pecūnia, money. (Pecuniary.)

utrimque, on both sides.

faucēs, passages.

peri-stylum, the PERISTYLE.

tertius, third. (Tertiary.)

marmoreus, of MARBLE.

in-clūdō, enclose, INCLUDE.

vēlum, curtain. (Veil.)

re-dūcō, draw back. (Re-duce.)

ūnus, one. (Unit.)

cōn-spectus, view.

ad-laceō, adjoin, be ADJACENT.

triclīnium, dining-room.

cella, store-room. (Cellar.)

superior, upper part of. (Superior.)

libertus, freed-man. (Liberty.)

ūsus, USE.

dē-tineō, reserve. (Detain.)



partīs interior domus dīvidēbātur? 4. Quid prīma pars appellāta est? 5. Ubi erat impluvium? 6. Quō modo ātrium ōrnābātur? 7. Ubi erant cubi- cula familiae hospitibusque? 8. Ubi erat tablī- num? 9. Quid erat tertia pars domūs? 10. Quibus superior domus dētīnēbātur.

## QUESTIONS.

**276.** In what two ways may *this thing* be translated? (*Ans.* [1] *Ea rēs*, [2] *id.*) Decline together: *ea rēs*; *idem cōnsilium*; *tū ipse*. Inflect *dīvidō* in all tenses of the Indicative and Im- perative Passive. Translate: *relinquēminī*, *relinquitur*, *relictī sumus*, *relinquuntur*, *relicta eram*, *relinquēbāris*; *it has been left*, *I shall be left*, *you (plural) will have been left*, *these things were being left*, *you (singular) are left*.

## LESSON XXXI.

Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns;  
Passive of Fourth Conjugation.

277.

quī, *who, which.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. qui	quae quod	quī	quae	quae	
G. cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
D. cūī			quibus		
Ac. quem	quam quod	quōs	quās	quae	
Ab. quō	quā quō		quibus		

278.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

quis, *who? which? what?*

N. quis (quī)	quae quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
G. cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cūī			quibus	
Ac. quem	quam quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Ab. quō	quā quō		quibus	

## 279.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. **aliquis** (-quī), **aliqua**, **aliquid** (-quod), *some one, any one, some, any.*

2. **quis** (quī), **quae**, **quid** (quod), *some one, any one, some, any.*

3. **quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (quoddam), *certain one, certain.*

4. **quisque**, **quaque**, **quidque** (quodque), *each one, every.*

5. **quisquam**, —, **quidquam** (no plural), *any one.*

a. In the Interrogative and Indefinite pronouns, the forms **quis** and **quid** are generally used as nouns, the forms **quī** and **quod** as adjectives, thus: **Quis scribit?** *Who is writing?* **Quī puer scribit?** *What boy is writing?* This is also true of compounds of **quis**.

b. The compounds are declined like the simple pronouns, except that in **quidam**, **m** changes to **n** before **d**, as: **quendam**. **Aliquis** has **aliqua** in the Feminine Nominative Singular, and also in the Neuter Nominative and Accusative Plural.

c. The Indefinite pronoun **quis** is chiefly used with **si**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**, and then means *any one, any*.

## 280.

## USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

1. **Tū, quī epistulam scripsisti, poenās solvēs.** *You, who wrote the letter, shall pay the penalty.*

2. **Mulier, quam dēfenderam, mea māter fuit.** *The woman, whom I had defended, was my mother.*

In the first example, observe that the Relative pronoun **quī** agrees with its *antecedent* (the word to which it refers) in gender, number, and person. For **quī** is

Masculine in form, and it is followed by its verb **scripsisti** in the Second person and Singular number.

In like manner, observe that **quam** in the second example agrees with **muller** in being Feminine Third Singular. But notice that in both examples the *case* of the pronoun is not determined by the case of its antecedent, but by its relation to the other words in the clause in which it stands. For **quī**, as the subject of **scripsisti**, is in the Nominative case; while **quam**, as the object of **dēfenderam**, is in the Accusative case.

**281. Rule XIX.** A Relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

## 282. FOURTH CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

*I am heard.*

audio-r	audi-mur
audi-ris or re	audi-mini
audi-tur	audiu-ntur

#### IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

audiē-r	audiē-mur	audiē-ba-r	audiē-bā-mur
audiē-ris or re	audiē-mini	audiē-bā-ris or re	audiē-bā-mini
audiē-tur	audiē-ntur	audiē-bā-tur	audiē-ba-ntur

#### FUTURE.

*I shall be heard.*

audi-a-r	audi-ē-mur
audi-ē-ris or re	audi-ē-mini
audi-ē-tur	audi-e-ntur

#### PERFECT.

*I was heard or I have been heard.*

auditus	{ sum	audītī	{ sumus
(-a, -um)	{ es	(-ae, -a)	{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

#### PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

auditus	{ eram	audītī	{ erāmus
(-a, -um)	{ erās	(-ae, -a)	{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been heard.*

auditus	{	erō	auditi	{	erimus
(-a, -um)		eris	(-ae, -a)		eritis
		erit			erunt

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

audi-re audi-mini

## FUTURE.

audi-tor ———  
audi-tor audiu-ntor

## OBSIDIŌ VĒIŌRUM.

283. Post proelium ad lacum Rēgillum, Rōmānī cum finitimīs oppidīs multa bella gerēbant; quōrum clārissimum est obsidiō Vēiōrum. Id oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū ēgregiē mūnītum est. Decem annōs Rōmānī ēius moenia obsidēbant, sed frūstrā. Dēnique mīrum prōdigium ēvēnit, quod animōs omnium māgnoperē perturbāvit. Nam aqua in lacū Albānō in altitudinem īnsolitam crēvit, atque finitimōs agrōs inundāvit. Deinde vātēs quīdam Vēiēns sīc cecinit: “Numquam Rōmānī Vēiōs expūgnābunt, priusquam aqua ex lacū Albānō ēmīssa erit.” Lēgātī ab Rōmānīs ad ōrāculum Delphīcum mīssī sunt. Quibus ā deō sīc respōsum est: “Sī aqua ex lacū Albānō in mare īnfluet, Vēiōs nōn occupābitis.”

284. 1. The Romans have taken the town, whose walls they have besieged for ten years. 2. If any water is (shall have been) let out of the Alban Lake, Veii will never be captured. 3. Some of the neighboring towns are admirably fortified. 4. What god

responded thus to the ambassadors? 5. Wonderful prodigies had happened, which disturbed the minds of certain Roman seers.

*Sight Translation.* OBSIDIŌ VEIŪRUM. — *Concluded.*

**285.** Haud ita multō post ex lacū in agrōs aqua ēmissa est. Deinde M. Furius Camillus dictātor creātus est atque mox māgnō cum exercitū in castra Rōmānōrum vēnit. Prōtinus mīlitēs ad māgnū opus ductī sunt. Nam cunīculus ab castrīs in arcem hostium inceptus est. Neque nocte neque diē opus intermīssum est. Dēnique paene perāctum est in templum Iūnōnis, quod in arce Vēientānā erat. Quō in templō fōrte rēx Vēientium hostiam immolābat. Cū harūspex sic dīcit: “Quī ēius hostiae exta in ārās impōnet, eī vīctōria dabitur.” Quam vōcem Rōmānī in cunīculō exaudiunt. Sine morā cunīculum adaperiunt, in templum ērumpunt, exta rapiunt feruntque ad dictātōrem. Mox urbs Rōmānīs mīlitibus implētur. Māgna est caedēs omnibus in locīs. Sic Rōmānī Vēiōs occupāvērunt.

**cunīculus, mine.**

**in-cipīō, begin. (Inception.)**

**inter-mittō, interrupt. (Intermittent.)**

**paene, almost. (Pen-insula.)**

**per-agō, carry through.**

**Iūnō, JUNO, wife and sister of Jupiter.**

**Vēientānus, VEIENTIAN, of Veii.**

**hostia, victim.**

**im-molō, sacrifice. (Immolate.)**

**harūspex, soothsayer, diviner. exta, entrails.**

**āra, altar.**

**ad-aperīō, throw open.**

**ē-rumpō, burst out. (Eruption.)**

**rapiō, seize. (Rapine.)**

**ferō, bear, carry.**

**im-pleō, fill, fill up.**

286. 1. Quot annōs Rōmānī Vēiōs obsidēbant? 2. Deinde quod prōdigium ēvēnit? 3. Quid vātēs quīdam Vēiēns cecinit? 4. Quō Rōmānī lēgātōs mīsērunt? 5. Quid deus lēgātīs respondit? 6. Quis dictātor creātus est? 7. Quod māgnū opus dictātor incēpit? 8. Ubi erat templū Iūnōnis? 9. Quis in hōc templō hostiam immolābat? 10. Quid dīcit harūspex rēgī? 11. Quī harūspicis vōcem exaudiunt? 12. Quid Rōmānī mīlitēs faciunt?

## QUESTIONS.

287. Decline **quī**; **quis**. What is the meaning of **quīdam**, **quisquam**, **aliquis**, **quisque**, **quis**? Illustrate the use of the two forms found in **quis** and its compounds. What irregularity occurs in the declension of **quīdam**? of **aliquis**? How is **quis** chiefly used? Illustrate the rule for the use of the Relative pronoun. Inflect **mūniō** in all tenses of the Indicative and Imperative Passive. Translate: **audīta erant**, **audior**, **audimīni**, **audīta est**, **auditor**, **audītī sumus**; *I was heard, you have been heard, be thou heard, we have been heard, he will be heard.*

## LESSON XXXII.

Regular Comparison; Declension of Comparatives;  
Ablative with Comparatives.

288. Adjectives undergo a change in form in order to express different degrees of quality. Thus in English we say: *a tall tree, a taller tree, the tallest tree*; i.e., starting with the simple adjective, — which is said to be in the **positive** degree, — we add **-er** to form the **comparative** degree, and **-est** to form the **superlative** degree, as :

POSITIVE. .	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>tall,</i>	<i>taller,</i>	<i>tallest.</i>

Now observe the Latin :

## 289.

## REGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>lātus</i> ( <i>stem lāto-</i> ), <i>wide.</i>	<i>lātiōr, -ius,</i> <i>wider.</i>	<i>lātissimus, -a, -um,</i> <i>widest.</i>
<i>fortis</i> ( <i>stem forti-</i> ), <i>brave.</i>	<i>fortiōr, -ius,</i> <i>braver.</i>	<i>fortissimus, -a, -um,</i> <i>bravest.</i>
<i>audāx</i> ( <i>stem audāc-</i> ), <i>bold.</i>	<i>audāciōr, -ius,</i> <i>bolder.</i>	<i>audācissimus, -a, -um,</i> <i>boldest.</i>
<i>sapiēns</i> ( <i>stem sapient-</i> ), <i>wise.</i>	<i>sapiētiōr, -ius,</i> <i>wiser.</i>	<i>sapiēntissimus, -a, -um,</i> <i>wisest.</i>

*a.* Observe that the comparative is formed by adding *-ior, -ius*, to the stem of the adjective, and the superlative by adding *-issimus, -a, -um*, dropping the final vowel of the stem, if there is any.

*b.* Compare *gravis, heavy, atrōx, fierce, longus, long, prūdēns, prudent, fēlix, happy, altus, high, levis, light.*

290. In English, when it would not sound well to compare the adjective by adding *-er* and *-est*, we prefix the adverbs *more* and *most*, as: *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful.* Likewise in Latin some adjectives are compared by prefixing the adverbs *magis, more*, and *māximē, most*, as: *idōneus, suitable, magis idōneus, more suitable, māximē idōneus, most suitable.*

## 291.

## DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

<i>lātiōr, wider.</i>	<i>plūs, more.</i>
<i>Stem lātiōr-</i>	<i>Stem plūr-</i>

## SINGULAR.

	MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.		MASC. and FEM.	NEUTER.
N.	<i>lātior</i>	<i>lātius</i>	_____		<i>plūs</i>
G.	<i>lātiōris</i>		_____		<i>plūris</i>
D.	<i>lātiōrī</i>		_____		_____
Ac.	<i>lātiōrem</i>	<i>lātius</i>	_____		<i>plūs</i>
Ab.	<i>lātiōre or-ī</i>		_____		<i>plūre</i>

## PLURAL.

N.	<i>lātiōrēs</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
G.	<i>lātiōrum</i>		<i>plūrium</i>	
D.	<i>lātiōribus</i>		<i>plūribus</i>	
Ac.	<i>lātiōrēs (-is)</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>	<i>plūris (-ēs)</i>	<i>plūra</i>
Ab.	<i>lātiōribus</i>		<i>plūribus</i>	

*a.* Comparatives are declined like *lātior*. Notice how closely the declension of comparatives resembles that of consonant stems, differing in this respect from other adjectives of the Third Declension. See § 218, *a*.

*b.* Superlatives are declined like *bonus*.

*c.* The comparative may sometimes be translated rather, as : *Dūrior iūdex erat, He was a rather severe judge.*

*d.* The superlative may sometimes be translated very, as : *Dūrissimus iūdex erat, He was a very severe judge.*

## 292. ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES.

1. *Caesar erat fortior quam Cicerō. Caesar was braver than Cicero.*

2. *Caesar erat fortior Cicerōne. Caesar was braver than Cicero.*



Notice that in the first example, where *quam* (*than*) is used, *Cicerō* is in the same case as *Caesar*, the word with which it is compared. But in the second example, where *quam* is omitted, *Cicerōne* is in the Ablative case.

**293. Rule XX.** The comparative degree is followed by the Ablative when *quam* is omitted.

**NOTE.** — *Quam* may be omitted *only* when the first of the compared words is either in the Nominative or Accusative case.

### THESEUS.

**294.** Thēseus ā suā māt̄re in urbe Troezōne ēducātus est. Nam, ubi etiam parvolus erat, ēius pater Aegeus, quī imperium Athēnārū habuit, uxōrem dēseruerat et suum rēgnū repetīverat. Prīmō Thēseus lūdīcīs certāminibus vīrēs auxit. Mox erat validior cēterīs iuvenibus ēiusdem aetātis. Deinde in vēnātiōne saltūs peragrābat. Semper prīnceps in perīculō erat atque fortissimus armīs. Nēmō ex omnibus Argolicīs iuvenibus iaculō levibusque sagittīs celerior erat. Complūrīs ferās occīdit, sed māximē saevissimam suam, quae agrōs diū vāstābat. Iam nōmen Thēseī per tōtam terram Argolicam clārissimum erat.

**295.** 1. This young man will be braver than his father. 2. Several very fierce wild beasts had been slain by Theseus. 3. Are not the young man's arrows rather light? 4. These young men were most famous throughout the kingdom. 5. Was there any one braver in danger than Theseus?

*Sight Translation. THĒSEUS. — Continued.*

296. Tandem māter Thēseī eum ad sē vocāvit, atque patris gladium soleāsque eī ostendit. “Sūme, mī filī,” inquit “haec monumenta, et tuum patrem pete, quem in urbe Athēnīs reperiēs. Periculōsa et ā latrōnibus infesta est via. Tamen deī tē incolumem per omnia pericula ad tuum patrem dūcent.” Inde Thēseus maestus mātrem suam reliquit, atque mox ad Atticam contendēbat. Quō in itinere prope Epidaurum obviam vēnit cuīdam saevissimō latrōnī, Periphētae nōmine, quī ferreā clāvā viātōrēs occidēbat. At Thēseus dē ēius manibus clāvam extorsit, et ipsius telō eum occidit.

297. 1. Cūr Thēseus ā suā mātrem ēducātus est? 2. Quō modo vīrēs auxit? 3. Num quis fuit ex Argolicīs iuvenibus fortior quam Thēseus? 4. Quid in vēnatiōne occidit Thēseus? 5. Quae monumenta pater ēius reliquerat? 6. Ubi habitābat pater Thēseī? 7. Quam ob rem erat via ad Atticam periculōsa? 8. Cuī Thēseus obviam vēnit prope Epidaurum? 9. Quō modo Thēseus latrōnem occidit?

solea, sandal. (Sole.)  
monumentum, remembrance.  
periculōsus, dangerous, PER-  
ILOUS.

latrō, robber.

in-festus, made unsafe, IN-  
FESTED.

Attica, a province of Greece.  
Epidaurus, a city of Argolis.

ob-viam, in the way (to). (Ob-  
vius.)

Periphētēs, a robber.

ferreus, iron.

clāva, club.

viātor, traveller.

ex-torqueō, twist out. (Ex-  
tort.)

## QUESTIONS.

**298.** How are adjectives regularly compared in Latin? Decline *plūs*. Decline together *audāciōr servus*; *fortior fēmina*; *gravius bellum*; *saevissimus leō*. How may the Comparative sometimes be translated? The Superlative? State and illustrate the rule for the Ablative with Comparatives. Translate in two ways: "*Who was braver than Caesar?*" When may *quam* be omitted?

## LESSON XXXIII.

Irregular Comparison; Ablative of Degree of  
Difference.

**299.**

## ADJECTIVES IN -ER.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>miser</i> ( <i>stem misero-</i> ), <i>wretched</i> .	<i>miserior, -ius</i> , <i>more wretched</i> .	<i>miserrimus, -a, -um</i> , <i>most wretched</i> .
<i>ācer</i> ( <i>stem ācri-</i> ), <i>sharp</i> .	<i>ācrior, -ius</i> , <i>sharper</i> .	<i>ācerrimus, -a, -um</i> , <i>sharpest</i> .

Observe that adjectives in -er form the Superlative by adding -*rimus, -a, -um* to the Masculine Nominative Singular. Compare *celer, swift, pulcher, beautiful, asper, rough*.

**300.**

## ADJECTIVES IN -LIS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>facilis, easy</i> .	<i>facilior, -ius</i> .	<i>facillimus, -a, -um</i> .
<i>difficilis, difficult</i> .	<i>difficilior, -ius</i> .	<i>difficillimus, -a, -um</i> .
<i>similis, like</i> .	<i>similior, -ius</i> .	<i>simillimus, -a, -um</i> .
<i>dissimilis, unlike</i> .	<i>dissimilior, -ius</i> .	<i>dissimillimus, -a, -um</i> .
<i>gracilis, slender</i> .	<i>gracilior, -ius</i> .	<i>gracillimus, -a, -um</i> .
<i>humilis, low</i> .	<i>humilior, -ius</i> .	<i>humillimus, -a, -um</i> .

Observe that these six adjectives in *-lis* form the superlative by adding *-limus*, *-a*, *-um*, to the stem minus the stem vowel.

### 301. ADJECTIVES WITH DOUBLE SUPERLATIVE.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>exterus</b> , <i>outward.</i>	<b>exterior</b> , <i>outer.</i>	<b>extrēmus, extimus</b> , <i>outmost.</i>
<b>inferus</b> , <i>low.</i>	<b>inferior</b> , <i>lower.</i>	<b>īfimus, īmus</b> , <i>lowest.</i>
<b>posterus</b> , <i>following.</i>	<b>posterior</b> , <i>later.</i>	<b>postrēmus, postumus</b> , <i>last.</i>
<b>superus</b> , <i>upper.</i>	<b>superior</b> , <i>higher.</i>	<b>suprēmus, summus</b> , <i>top of, highest.</i>

### 302. ADJECTIVES WITH NO POSITIVE.

<b>[cis, citrā,</b> <i>adv., on this side.]</i>	<b>citerior</b> , <i>hither.</i>	<b>citimus</b> , <i>hithermost.</i>
<b>[in, intrā,</b> <i>prep., in, within.]</i>	<b>interior</b> , <i>inner.</i>	<b>intimus</b> , <i>inmost.</i>
<b>[prae, prō,</b> <i>prep., before.]</i>	<b>prior</b> , <i>former.</i>	<b>primus</b> , <i>first.</i>
<b>[prope,</b> <i>adv., near.]</i>	<b>propior</b> , <i>nearer.</i>	<b>proximus</b> , <i>next.</i>
<b>[ultrā,</b> <i>adv., beyond.]</i>	<b>ūlterior</b> , <i>farther.</i>	<b>ūltimus</b> , <i>farthest.</i>

### 303. ADJECTIVES IRREGULAR THROUGHOUT.

<b>bonus</b> , <i>good.</i>	<b>melior</b> , <i>better.</i>	<b>optimus</b> , <i>best.</i>
<b>malus</b> , <i>bad.</i>	<b>pēior</b> , <i>worse.</i>	<b>pessimus</b> , <i>worst.</i>
<b>māgnus</b> , <i>great.</i>	<b>māior</b> , <i>greater.</i>	<b>māximus</b> , <i>greatest.</i>
<b>parvus</b> , <i>small.</i>	<b>minor</b> , <i>smaller.</i>	<b>minimus</b> , <i>smallest.</i>
<b>multus</b> , <i>much.</i>	——, <b>plūs</b> , <i>more.</i>	<b>plūrimus</b> , <i>most.</i>
<b>multi</b> , <i>many.</i>	<b>plūrēs</b> , <i>more.</i>	<b>plūrimī</b> , <i>most.</i>

**304. ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE.**

1. *Arbor sex pedibus altior est quam turris.* *The tree is (by) six feet higher than the tower.*

2. *Crassus multō divitior erat Caesare.* *Crassus was (by) much richer than Caesar.*

In the first example, the Ablative *sex pedibus* exactly expresses the *difference* between the height of the tree and that of the tower. In the second example, the Ablative *multō* is an indefinite expression of the *difference* between the wealth of Crassus and that of Caesar. Such ablatives are called **Ablatives of Degree of Difference**.

**305. Rule XXI.** The Ablative is used to express the Degree of Difference.

**THĒSEUS ET LATRŌNĒS.**

**306.** *Paucīs post diēbus Thēseus in extrēmum perīculum vēnit. Iam ad Isthmum appropīnquābat. Hīc propter angustīās difficillimum erat iter. Utrāque ex parte erant rūpēs altissimae et asperrimae. Mox Thēseus ante vāstum specum latrōnem, Sinim nōmine, vīdit, dē quō incolae terrae eum saepe numerō prae-monuerant. Hīc multō gravior hostis erat quam Periphētēs. Hīc enim duās prōcērās pīnūs ad terram curvābat, ad quās incautōs viātōrēs adligābat. Deinde, ubi subitō arborēs solvit, corpora infēlicum hominum dīvellēbantur. Hōc modō iam plūrimōs viātōrēs necāverat.*

**307.** 1. You will not see a much more formidable robber than Sinis. 2. Are not the roads to the

Isthmus very rough and difficult? 3. A few days afterwards, the unfortunate traveller approached the robbers' cave, and was killed. 4. Are these trees taller than the pine? 5. This road to the caves is much more difficult than that.

*Sight Translation.* THĒSEUS ET LATRŌNĒS. — *Continued.*

**308.** Ubi Sinis procul Thēsea vīdit, prīmō iuvenem inrīsīt. Interritus autem Thēseus in hostem invāsīt. Ācerrima erat pūgna. Dēnique Sinis dēfessus occidit. Tum Thēseus ad duās pīnūs mōnstrum ipsum adligāvit. Mox dīvolsum est Sinis corpus eōdem modō, quō tot viātōrēs ab eō ipsō necātī erant. Inde Thēseus ad urbem Megaram contendit. Quō in itinere angusta sēmita in altum montem dūcēbat. Ā dextrā erat abrupta rūpēs māgnā altitūdine. Hīc latēbat latrō, Scīrōn nōmine, quī prīmum viātōrēs spoliābat; deinde, dum hī ēius pedēs lavābant, ipsōs praecipitēs ad īmam rūpem dēiciēbat. Īnfṛā ingēns testūdō eōrum corpora dēvorābat.

**in-rideō**, *laugh at.* (De-ride.)

**in-vādō**, *advance upon.* (Invade.)

**dē-fessus**, *tired out, exhausted.*

**tot**, *so many.*

**Megara**, a town in Megaris.

**angustus**, *narrow.*

**sēmita**, *foot-path.*

**altus**, *high.* (Altitude.)

**ab-ruptus**, *precipitous.* (Abrupt.)

**lateō**, *lurk.* (Latent.)

**spoliō**, *rob.* (De-spoil.)

**lavō**, *wash.* (Lave.)

**prae-ceps**, *headlong.* (Precipitous.)

**dē-iciō**, *hurl down.* (Deject.)

**īnfṛā**, *below.*

**testūdō**, *tortoise.*

**309.** 1. Ubi Thēseus in extrēmum perīculum vēnit?  
 2. Quam ob rem erat iter difficillimum? 3. Ubi  
 Thēseus latrōnem vīdit? 4. Quō modo Sinis viā-  
 tōrēs necābat? 5. Nōne Thēseus latrōnem timuit?  
 6. Quō modo Thēseus Sinim necāvit? 7. Ubi latē-  
 bat Scīrōn? 7. Quō modo viātōrēs necābāt? 9.  
 Quae eōrum corpora dēvorābat?

#### QUESTIONS.

**310.** Compare in Latin and English : *imus, mālor, primus, multus, miser, summus, ceterior, bonus, proximus, similis, minor, extrēmus, ācer, postrēmus, interior, malus, ūterior, plūrimī*. What adjectives have *-limus* in the superlative? Give an example of your own of the Ablative of Degree of Difference. Give a synopsis, Active and Passive, of *dūcō*.

### LESSON XXXIV.

#### Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; Genitive and Ablative of Characteristic.

##### 311.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| a. <i>lātus</i> ( <i>stem lāto-</i> ), <i>wide</i> .        | <i>lātē</i> , <i>widely</i> .         |
| <i>pulcher</i> ( <i>stem pulchro-</i> ), <i>beautiful</i> . | <i>pulchrē</i> , <i>beautifully</i> . |

Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives of the Second Declension by changing the final *-o* of the stem to *-ē*.

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| b. <i>gravis</i> ( <i>stem gravi-</i> ), <i>heavy</i> .   | <i>graviter</i> , <i>heavily</i> .   |
| <i>ācer</i> ( <i>stem ācri-</i> ), <i>sharp</i> .         | <i>ācriter</i> , <i>sharply</i> .    |
| <i>prūdēns</i> ( <i>stem prūdent-</i> ), <i>prudent</i> . | <i>prūdentē</i> , <i>prudently</i> . |

Observe that adverbs are formed from adjectives of the Third Declension by adding *-ter* to the stem. Stems in *-nt* drop *-t* before adding *-ter*.

- |                               |                           |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| c. (1). multus, <i>much</i> . | multum, <i>much</i> .     |
| (2). facilis, <i>easy</i> .   | facile, <i>easily</i> .   |
| (3). subitus, <i>sudden</i> . | subitō, <i>suddenly</i> . |

The Neuter Accusative Singular of the adjective is sometimes used as an adverb, as in examples (1) and (2). Likewise the Ablative, as in example (3).

### 312. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
lātē, <i>widely</i> .	lātius, <i>more widely</i> .	lātissimē, <i>most widely</i> .
graviter, <i>heavily</i> .	gravius, <i>more heavily</i> .	gravissimē, <i>most heavily</i> .

Notice that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the Neuter comparative of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing the final -o of the stem to -ē. If the adjective is irregular, the adverb will show the same irregularities. Learn the following:

### 313. COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADVERBS.

bene, <i>well</i> .	melius, <i>better</i> .	optimē, <i>best</i> .
male, <i>ill</i> .	pēius, <i>worse</i> .	pessimē, <i>worst</i> .
multum, <i>much</i> .	plūs, <i>more</i> .	plūrium, <i>most</i> .
_____	magis, <i>more</i> .	māximē, <i>most</i> .
parum, <i>not enough</i> .	minus, <i>less</i> .	minimē, <i>least</i> .

### 314. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

1. Vir *māgnae virtūtis*. A man of great valor.
2. Vir fuit *humili statūrā*. He was a man of short stature.

Observe that, in the first example, *virtūtis* is in the Genitive, and that, in connection with the adjective



*māgnae*, it expresses a *characteristic* or *quality* of the man. But notice that, in the second example, a *physical characteristic* or *quality* is expressed by *statūrā*, with an accompanying adjective, in the *Ablative* case. Physical characteristics are always thus expressed by the *Ablative*. Other qualities by either the *Genitive* or *Ablative*.

**315. Rule XXII.** The *Genitive* and *Ablative* are used, with a modifying adjective, to denote a characteristic or quality.

#### THĒSEUS ET LATRŌNĒS.

**316.** Scīrōn erat ingentī māgnitūdine corporis atque terribilī aspectū. In quem tamen Thēseus cum ferrō audācissimē invāsīt. Diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Dēnique Scīrōn supplex misericordiam implōrat. Sed Thēseus latrōnem ad īmam rūpem dēmittit eōdem modō, quō ille multōs viātōrēs tam crūdēliter necāverat. Quā ex rē nōmen Scīrōnis erat scopulīs.

Haud ita multō post Thēseus in Atticam pervēnit, atque ibi Cercyonem lūctāmine vīcit necāvitque. Sīc Thēseus perditīs hominibus latrōnibusque omnis generis liberābat omnīs terrās, per quās in itinere contendēbat.

**317. 1.** The travellers had been hurled down to the bottom of the cliffs. **2.** Sciron killed travellers much more cruelly than Cercyon. **3.** Theseus used to attack robbers of every kind most fiercely.

4. Are not robbers men of frightful appearance?  
 5. The land, through which Theseus is hastening, will be freed from many desperate robbers.

*Sight Translation.* THĒSEUS ET LATRŌNĒS. — *Concluded.*

318. Iam Thēseus ad ipsam urbem Athēnās appropinquābat, ubi in rīpā Cēphīsī in māgnūm perīculum capitis vēnit. Hīc enim Procrūstēs habitābat, quī in suam rēgiam turrim incautōs viātōrēs dūcēbat, atque eōs prīmō māgnificē accipiēbat. Ubi autem nox vēnit, in mīrum lectum infēlicem hospitem impōnēbat. Tum, sī hospes longior erat quam lectus, illīus membra satis praecīdēbat. Sī viātōr brevior erat lectō, tum Procrūstēs ēius corpus in longitudinē lectī distendēbat. Hōc modō multōs annōs viātōrēs necāverat. Sed Thēseus victor latrōnem in ipsiūs lectum imposuit, atque ēius caput praecīdit. Brevī postea Thēseus incolumis ad portam Athēnārum pervēnit.

319. 1. Num Scīrōn erat vir humilī statūrā? 2. Quō modo Thēseus Scīrōnem necāvit? 3. Quem deinde Thēseus in Atticā necāvit? 4. Ubi in māgnūm perīculum capitis vēnit? 5. Quō modo Procrūstēs prīmō incautum viātōrem accipiēbat? 6. Ubi nox vēnit, quid faciēbat Procrūstēs? 7. Necā-

rīpa, bank.

satis, sufficiently. (Satis-fy.)

Cēphisus, a river near Athens. longitudō, length. (Longitude.)

lectus, bed.

dis-tendō, stretch, DISTEND.

membrum, limb, MEMBER.

vitne Thēseus Procrūstēn?    8. Ubi brevī postea incolumis pervēnit?

### QUESTIONS.

**320.** How are adverbs formed from adjectives of the Second Declension? Of the Third Declension? What cases of adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs? How are adverbs compared? Form and compare adverbs from the following adjectives: *ācer, facilis, malus, lātus, multus, gravis, parvus, pulcher, bonus, prūdēns*. Explain the use of the Genitive and Ablative of Characteristic. Decline *is*. Give a synopsis of *moveō*.

### LESSON XXXV.

#### Numerals; Partitive Genitive; Nine Irregular Adjectives.

321.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1.	<i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one.</i>	<i>prīmus, first.</i>
2.	<i>duo, duae, duo, two.</i>	<i>secundus, second.</i>
3.	<i>trēs, tria, three.</i>	<i>tertius, third.</i>
4.	<i>quattuor</i>	<i>quartus</i>
5.	<i>quīnque</i>	<i>quīntus</i>
6.	<i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>
7.	<i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>
8.	<i>octō</i>	<i>octāvus</i>
9.	<i>novem</i>	<i>nōnus</i>
10.	<i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>
11.	<i>ūndecim</i>	<i>ūndecimus</i>
12.	<i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>
13.	<i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>
14.	<i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quartus decimus</i>
15.	<i>quīndecim</i>	<i>quīntus decimus</i>
16.	<i>sēdecim</i>	<i>sextus decimus</i>
17.	<i>septendecim</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i>
18.	<i>duodēviginti</i>	<i>duodēvīcēsīmus</i>

19. <i>undēvigintī</i>	<i>undēvicēsīmus</i>
20. <i>vīgintī</i>	<i>vicēsīmus</i>
21. <i>vīgintī ūnus or</i> <i>ūnus et vīgintī</i>	<i>vicēsīmus prīmus or</i> <i>ūnus et vicēsīmus</i>
28. <i>duodētrīgintā</i>	<i>duodētricēsīmus</i>
29. <i>undētrīgintā</i>	<i>undētricēsīmus</i>
30. <i>trīgintā</i>	<i>tricēsīmus</i>
40. <i>quadrāgintā</i>	<i>quadrāgēsīmus</i>
50. <i>quīnquāgintā</i>	<i>quīnquāgēsīmus</i>
60. <i>sexāgintā</i>	<i>sexāgēsīmus</i>
70. <i>septuāgintā</i>	<i>septuāgēsīmus</i>
80. <i>octōgintā</i>	<i>octōgēsīmus</i>
90. <i>nōnāgintā</i>	<i>nōnāgēsīmus</i>
100. <i>centum</i>	<i>centēsīmus</i>
101. <i>centum ūnus or</i> <i>centum et ūnus</i>	<i>centēsīmus prīmus or</i> <i>ūnus et centēsīmus</i>
200. <i>ducentī, -ae, -a</i>	<i>ducentēsīmus</i>
300. <i>trecentī, -ae, -a</i>	<i>trecentēsīmus</i>
400. <i>quadringentī, -ae, -a</i>	<i>quadringentēsīmus</i>
500. <i>quīngentī, -ae, -a</i>	<i>quīngentēsīmus</i>
600. <i>sēscentī, -ae, -a</i>	<i>sēscentēsīmus</i>
700. <i>septingentī, -ae, -a</i>	<i>septingentēsīmus</i>
800. <i>octingentī, -ae, -a</i>	<i>octingentēsīmus</i>
900. <i>nōngentī, -ae, -a</i>	<i>nōngentēsīmus</i>
1,000. <i>mīlle</i>	<i>mīllēsīmus</i>
2,000. <i>duo mīlia</i>	<i>bis mīllēsīmus</i>
100,000. <i>centum mīlia</i>	<i>centiēs mīllēsīmus</i>
1,000,000. <i>decīēs centēna mīlia</i>	<i>decīēs centiēs mīllēsīmus</i>

a. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable. The hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*. The ordinals are declined throughout like *bonus*.

322.	<i>duo, two.</i>			<i>trēs, three.</i>	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. and F.	N.
N.	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
G.	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	
D.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	
Ac.	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>tris (trēs) tria</i>	
Ab.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	

*a.* In the Singular, **mīlle** is generally an adjective; but the Plural **mīlia** is a Neuter noun, and is followed by the Partitive Genitive, as: **mīlle hominēs**, *a thousand men*, but **duo mīlia hominum**, *two thousand men* (lit. *two thousands of men*).

## NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

**323.** The following nine adjectives end in **-ius** in the Genitive Singular and in **-i** in the Dative in all genders. They are regular in the Plural.

<b>alius</b> , <i>another.</i>	<b>ūnus</b> , <i>one.</i>	<b>alter</b> , <i>the other.</i>
<b>sōlus</b> , <i>alone.</i>	<b>ūllus</b> , <i>any.</i>	<b>uter</b> , <i>which (of two).</i>
<b>tōtus</b> , <i>whole.</i>	<b>nūllus</b> , <i>none.</i>	<b>neuter</b> , <i>neither.</i>

*a.* **Alius** and **ūnus** are thus declined in the Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>ūnus</b>	<b>ūna</b>	<b>ūnum</b>
G.		<b>alius</b>			<b>ūnius</b>	
D.		<b>alii</b>			<b>ūni</b>	
Ac.	<b>alium</b>	<b>aliam</b>	<b>aliud</b>	<b>ūnum</b>	<b>ūnam</b>	<b>ūnum</b>
Ab.	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>	<b>ūnō</b>	<b>ūnā</b>	<b>ūnō</b>

NOTE. — **Alius** is the only one of these adjectives that ends in **-ud** in the Neuter.

**324.**      PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

**Trēs militum.** *Three of the soldiers.*

*a.* Observe that **militum** is in the Genitive, and denotes the entire number of which a *part* is taken. It is called the **Partitive Genitive**.

**325. Rule XXIII.** The Genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

## SUPELLEX DOMŪS RŌMĀNAE.

**326.** Et in ātriō domūs Rŏmānae et in peristylō, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, exigua erat supellex. In trīclīniō autem semper erat mēnsa, aut quadra aut orbis. Hārum mēnsārum multae erant pulcherrimae et māgnī pretī. Plīnius māior dē duābus mēnsīs scrīpsit, quārum alterī pretium fuit deciēs centēna mīlia sestertiūm, alterī paulō minus. Convīvae circum mēnsam in sellīs nōn cōnsidēbant. Sed ex tribus mēnsae lateribus erant lectī, in quibus novem convīvae accumbēbant, trēs in quōque lectō. Līgnea aut aenea erat sponda lectī in quam torus et cervical et vestēs strāgulae impositae sunt.

**327.** Six guests are reclining on two of the couches. 2. Is not the furniture in the dining-room very expensive? 3. He is writing of two chairs, of which the price of one is five hundred sesterces, of the other, seven hundred and fifty. 4. (There) were twelve chairs in each dining-room. 5. The price of this table is one hundred thousand sesterces.

*Sight Translation.*SUPELLEX DOMŪS RŌMĀNAE. — *Concluded.*

**328.** Lectus cubiculāris erat altior quam lectus trīclīniāris et scamnō ascendēbātur.

Varia erant genera sellārum in domibus Rŏmānīs; sed cathedra, in quā fēminae plērumque sedēbant, erat simillima nostrīs sellīs. Omnium sellārum insīgnissima erat eburnea *sella curūlis* curvīs pedibus, in quā quīdam magistrātūs solī sedēbant.

Pulcherrimae erant lucernae Rōmānōrum, quārum multa exempla adhūc exstant. Aliae fictilēs, aliae erant aeneae, sed omnēs summā arte perfectae. Lucernae, aut in mēnsās aut in alta candēlābra impōnēbantur, aut etiam laqueāribus dēpendēbant. Nōn autem clāram lūcem praebēbant.

**329.** 1. Eratne multa supellex in ātriō domūs Rōmānae? 2. Quālis mēnsa erat in tricliniō? 3. Quae erant ex tribus mēnsae lateribus? 4. Quot convīvae in quōque lectō accumbēbant? 5. Erantne lectī Rōmānōrum similēs nostrīs lectīs? 6. Quālis erat lectus cubiculāris? 7. Quid erat nōmen sellae, in quā fēminae sedēbant? 8. Quālis erat sella curūlis? 9. Quālēs lucernae erant Rōmānīs? 10. Ubi impōnēbantur? 11. Nōnne clāram lūcem praebēbant?

#### QUESTIONS.

**330.** Count from 1–100 in Latin. Give the Latin for the following: 463, 58, 3,723, 938,365. Give the hundreds and the thousands in Latin. Give the Latin ordinals from 1–20. Decline *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*. Mention the nine irregular adjectives. In what does their irregularity consist? Decline *alius*. Which

*cubiculāris*, of a bedroom.

*tricliniāris*, of a dining-room.

*scamnum*, stool, step.

*varius*, VARIOUS.

*cathedra*, an arm-chair. (*Cathedral*.)

*insignis*, remarkable.

*eburneus*, of ivory.

*curūlis*, CURULE.

*lucerna*, lamp.

*ex-stō*, exist, be EXTANT.

*fictilis*, of clay, pottery.

*per-fectus*, finished, PERFECT.

*ars*, ART, skill.

*candēlābrum*, a lamp stand.

(*Candelabrum*.)

*laqueāria*, a panelled ceiling.

*dē-pendeō*, hang down. (*Depend*.)

of the cardinals are indeclinable? How are the ordinals declined? What of *mille* in the Singular, and in the Plural? Give an example of the Partitive Genitive, the Ablative of Comparison, and the Ablative of Degree of Difference.

## LESSON XXXVI.

**Infinitives; Complementary Infinitive; Expressions of Place.**

**331.** The Infinitive mood has neither person nor number, and has but three tenses, the Present, Perfect, and Future. The sign of the Infinitive in English is *to*.

**332. ACTIVE INFINITIVES.**

## VERB SUM.

PRES.	es-se, <i>to be</i> .
PERF.	fu-isse, <i>to have been</i> .
FUT.	fut-ūrus, -a, -um esse (or fore) } , <i>to be about to be</i> .

## CONJ. I.

PRES.	amā-re, <i>to love</i> .
PERF.	amāv-isse, <i>to have loved</i> .
FUT.	amāt-ūrus, -a, -um esse } , <i>to be about to love</i> .

	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
PRES.	monē-re.	rege-re.	audi-re.
PERF.	monu-isse.	rēx-isse.	audīv-isse.
FUT.	monit-ūrus, -a, -um esse.	rēct-ūrus, -a, -um esse.	audit-ūrus, -a, -um esse.

Observe:

*a.* That in the Active voice the Present Infinitive is formed by adding *-re* to the Present stem. (Note the irregularity in the verb *sum*.)



b. That the Perfect is formed by adding *-isse* to the Perfect stem.

c. That the Future is formed by adding *-ūrus, -a, -um esse* to the Participial stem.

### 333. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

**Cupit** *dīcere*, *He desires to speak.*

Notice that the Infinitive *dīcere* completes the meaning of *cupit*. Hence it is called the **Complementary Infinitive**.

### 334. PLACE WHERE.

#### LOCATIVE CASE.

**In oppidō.** *In the town.*

**Rōmae.** *At Rome.*

**In Italiā.** *In Italy.*

**Athēnis.** *At Athens.*

**In Africā.** *In Africa.*

**Curibus.** *At Cures.*

Observe that *oppidō*, *Italiā*, and *Africā* are in the Ablative with the preposition *in*, and that they denote the *place where*. But notice that the *names of towns* denoting *place where* omit the preposition, and are put in the **Locative Case**. This *in the Singular* of nouns of the First and Second Declension is like the Genitive; elsewhere, it is like the Ablative. Account for the form of *Rōmae*, *Athēnis*, and *Curibus*.

**335. Rule XXIV.** *Place where* is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *in*. Names of towns are put in the **Locative**.

### 336.

#### PLACE TO WHICH.

**In Italiā.** *To Italy.*

**Rōmam.** *To Rome.*

**Ad flūmen.** *To the river.*

**Delphōs.** *To Delphi.*

**337. Rule XXV.** *Place to which* is expressed by the Accusative with *ad* or *in*. Names of towns omit the preposition.

**338.**

PLACE FROM WHICH.

**Ex oppidō.** *From the town.*      **Rōmā.** *From Rome.*

**Ab Italiā.** *From Italy.*      **Corinthō.** *From Corinth.*

**339. Rule XXVI.** *Place from which* is expressed by the Ablative with *ab* or *ex*. Names of towns omit the preposition.

NOTE. — Names of small islands, *domus*, *home*, and *rūs*, *country*, are used like names of towns, as : *Cypri est*, *He is at Cyprus*; *Mox domum veniet*, *He will soon come home*; *Rūs ibō*, *I shall go into the country*.

#### THĒSEUS ET AEGEUS.

**340.** Intereā rēx Aegeus venēficam Mēdēam, quae Athēnās nūper vēnerat, in mātirimōnium dūxerat. Ex eā autem nullōs liberōs habuit. Quam ob rem vīgintī filiī Pallantis, frātris Aegeī, rēgnum sibi occupāre cōstituērunt. Hīs hominibus ea coniūratiō prōsperē ēvēnit. Nam rēgem cum Mēdēā in rēgiam sē recipere cōgunt, atque ipsī cīvitatē regunt. Athēnīs in hōc statū erant rēs, ubi Thēseus in urbem vēnit. Sine morā iuvenis ad Aegeī rēgiam contendit, atque tandem aditum ad patrem habuit. Sed Aegeus hunc iuvenē, quī Troezēne vēnerat, nōn āgnōvit. Quīn etiam eum prō hoste habuit, atque cōsiliō uxōris eī vīnum dedit, quō Mēdēā venēnum miscuerat.

**341.** 1. The king's palace was at Athens. 2. Was Aegeus compelled to marry a sorceress? 3. Affairs were in this condition at Troezen when he determined to seize the kingdom. 4. Theseus hastened from Troezen to Athens. 5. The king will compel Medea to mix the poison with the wine.

*Sight Translation. THĒSEUS ET AEGEUS. — Concluded.*

**342.** Thēseus pōculum dextrā sūmpserat, ubi pater in eburneō capulō gladī āgnōvit sīgna suī generis, atque pōculum ab ōre excussit. Inde Mēdēa per sua carmina effūgit. At Aegeus ingentī gaudiō complēbātur, quod suus fīlius incolumis erat, atque eum in rēgiam laetissimus accēpit. Postquam Thēseus dē omnibus periculīs itineris nārrāvit, et pater et filius deīs immortalibus grātiās agunt, et ārās dōnīs cumulant. Intereā vīgintī filiī Pallantis dē adventū Thēseī audīverant, atque pūgnare parābant. Ācerrimē Thēseus impetum in eōs fēcit, cūnctōsque ex urbe expulit. Brevī posteā Aegeus palam Thēsea suum fīlium āgnōvit. Quam ob rem māgna laetitia erat per tōtam urbem.

**343.** 1. Quam Aegeus Athēnīs in mātirimōnium dūxit? 2. Quī rēgnū sibi occupāre cōstituērunt?

pōculum, *cup.*

capulus, *hilt.*

ex-cutiō, *strike away.*

gaudium, *joy.*

com-pleō, *fill. (Complete.)*

quod, *because.*

laetus, *glad.*

grātia, *thanks. (Grace.)*

cumulō, *load. (Accumulate.)*

ad-ventus, *arrival. (Advent.)*

cūnctus, *all.*

ex-pellō, *drive out, expel.*

palam, *openly.*

laetitia, *gladness.*

3. Quid rēgem facere coēgērunt? 4. Ubi Thēseus Athēnās vēnit, quō primum contendit? 5. Nōne Aegeus suum filium āgnōvit? 6. Quid eī dedit? 7. Quid accidit? 8. Quid deinde fēcit Mēdēa? 9. Quō modo rēx Thēsea accēpit? 10. Num filiī Pallantis laetī erant, ubi dē adventū Thēseī audīvērunt? 11. Vicitne Thēseus eōs? 12. Cūr brevī postea māgna erat laetitia Athēnīs?

## QUESTIONS.

**344.** How does the Infinitive differ from other moods? How are the tenses of the Active Infinitive formed in Latin? Give the Active Infinitives, Latin and English, of *parō, doceō, scribō, mūniō*. Give the Infinitives of *sum*. What is meant by the Complementary Infinitive? State the rules for *place where, place to which, and place from which*. What is the Locative case? Translate: *At Delphi; from Rome to Corinth; at home; from Greece to Cyprus; we were hastening into the country*. Compare the following: *summus, melior, imus, multus, proximus, similis, miser, primus*.

## LESSON XXXVII.

Passive Infinitives; Infinitive as a Noun; Simple Indirect Discourse; Dative with Special Verbs; Ablative of Specification.

345.

CONJ. I.

PRES. amā-rī, to be loved.

PERF. amāt-us, -a, -um esse, to have been loved.

FUT. amāt-um irī, to be about to be loved.

	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
PRES.	monē-rī.	reg-ī.	aud-īrī.
PERF.	monit-us, -a, -um esse.	rēct-us, -a, -um esse.	audit-us, -a, -um esse.
FUT.	monit-um irī.	rēct-um irī.	audit-um irī.

In the Passive voice :

*a.* The Present Infinitive is formed by adding -rī to the Present stem. But notice that in the Third Conjugation -ī (not -rī) is added to the stem minus the final vowel.

*b.* The Perfect is formed by adding -us, -a, -um esse to the Participial stem.

*c.* The Future is formed by adding -um irī to the Participial stem.

### 346.      INFINITIVE USED AS A NOUN.

1. *Vidēre est crēdere.* To see is to believe.

2. *Puerī nāre discunt.* Boys learn to swim.

Observe that the Infinitive may be used as a noun. Thus in example (1) *vidēre* is the subject of *est*, while *crēdere* is a Predicate Nominative. In example (2) *nāre* is the object of *discunt*.

### 347.      SIMPLE INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

In English, verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving* are sometimes followed by an Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative, as: *We supposed him to be a friend. He found it to be impossible.*

Compare the following :

DIRECT. **Urbs incolumis est.** *The city is safe.*

INDIRECT. **Putāmus urbem incolumem esse.** *We think that the city is safe (lit. the city to be safe).*

DIRECT. **Hostēs discessērunt.** *The enemy have departed.*

INDIRECT. **Cōgnōvērunt hostīs discessisse.** *They ascertained that the enemy had departed (lit. the enemy to have departed).*

DIRECT. **Veniam.** *I shall come.*

INDIRECT. **Dicit sē ventūrum esse.** *He says that he will come (lit. himself to be about to come).*

*a.* Observe that where a Direct statement is made to depend upon a verb of *saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving*, it becomes Indirect, the verb in Latin being put in the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

*b.* Observe that, in English, the Indirect statement is generally introduced by the conjunction *that*, and that the verb is in the Indicative Mood.

**348. Rule XXVII.** Verbs of *saying, knowing, thinking, and perceiving* are followed by the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

**349.** Examine the following :

<b>Dicit</b>	<b>venire.</b>	<i>He says that the</i>	<b>{ are coming.</b>
<b>militēs</b>	<b>vēnisse.</b>	<i>soldiers</i>	<b>{ have come.</b>
	<b>ventūrōs esse.</b>		<b>{ will come.</b>
<b>Dixit</b>	<b>venire.</b>	<i>He said that the</i>	<b>{ were coming.</b>
<b>militēs</b>	<b>vēnisse.</b>	<i>soldiers</i>	<b>{ had come.</b>
	<b>ventūrōs esse.</b>		<b>{ would come.</b>

Observe that the tense changes in the English, when the verb of *saying, etc.*, is in a *past* tense, while the tense of the Latin Infinitive remains the same.

The tense of the Infinitive depends on the time of the principal verb. If the Infinitive denotes :

*a.* The *same* time as the principal verb, it will be in the Present.

*b.* Time *before* that of the principal verb, it will be in the Perfect.

*c.* Time *after* that of the principal verb, it will be in the Future.

### 350.                  DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS.

*Servō parciť.* *He spares the slave.*

*Lēgibus nōn pārent.* *They do not obey the laws.*

Notice that *servō* and *lēgibus*, apparently the objects of *parciť* and *pārent*, are in the Dative case, and not in the Accusative, as we should expect them to be.

Of the verbs thus followed by the Dative, the most common are :

*Parcō, pāreō, placeō,*  
*Faveō, noceō, serviō,*  
*Invideō, nūbō, ignōscō,*  
*Resistō, persuādeō,*  
*Maledicō, indulgeō.*

**351. Rule XXVIII.** Many verbs meaning to *favor, help, please, trust*, and their opposites; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare*, and the like, are followed by the Dative.

### 352.                  ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

*Virtūte praecōdunt.* *They excel in courage.*

*Virtūte* is in the Ablative, and *specifies* what they excel in. Hence it is called the **Ablative of Specification**.

**353. Rule XXIX.** The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that *in respect to which anything is or is done*.

#### DAEDALUS.

**354.** Daedalus, nātū Athēniēnsis, vir summō ingeniō, multās ūtilis artīs invēnit. Sed Perdīx, ēius sorōris filius, quī ā Daedalō docēbātur, etiam puer, celeriter praeceptōrī antecellit. Cū Daedalus invidet et dēnique eum ex altā rūpe praecipitem dēmittit. Deinde puerum dēcidisse nūntiat. Cū autem Athēniēnsēs nōn crēdidērunt. Quam ob rem Daedalus cum filiō Īcarō ad Mīnōem, rēgem Crētae, effūgit. Eī Daedalus dīxit sē Athēnīs iniūstē expulsum esse; sē autem parātum esse rēgī multīs rēbus servīre. Nec difficile erat id rēgī persuādere. Nam dīrum mōnstrum, nōmine Mīnōtaurus, nūper in Crētā appāruerat, cū corpus hominis erat, sed caput taurī.

**355.** 1. They say that an Athenian, Daedalus by name, envied his sister's son. 2. The boys declared that Perdix had been hurled from a very high cliff. 3. It is very difficult to believe this man in all things. 4. I say that Perdix excels his instructors in genius. 5. The Athenians said that Minos would expel Daedalus from Crete.

*Sight Translation.* DAEDALUS. — *Concluded.*

**356.** Itaque Mīnōs Daedalum benīgnē accēpit, atque eum iussit in potestātem suam mōnstrum redigere. Inde Daedalus mīrābilem labyrinthum aedificāvit, quī mīlle viās et innumerābilis ambāgēs



habuisse dicitur. Hic Minotaurum clausit. Tamen necesse erat monstrō corpora hominum ad cibum praebere. Paucis post annis Daedalus nūtiat sē Athēnās reditūrum esse. Id autem ā rēge nōn conceditur. Inde ille novam viam fugae reperit. Nam pennās avium in ordine pōnit, quās līnō et cērā in fōrmam ālārū adligat. Hās ignōtās ālās umeris suis et fili accommodat. Inde iter periculōsum incēperunt. Sed Icarus iūssis patris nōn pāret et celsior volat. Mox sōl cēram pennārum molliat, et Icarus in mare dēcidit quod nōmen ab illō trāxit. Daedalus autem incolumis in Siciliam pervēnit et multis rēbus rēgī Siciliae serviēbat.

357. 1. Quis erat Daedalus? 2. Cūr Daedalus Perdīcī invidet? 3. Quid Perdīcī accidit? 4. Ad quem Daedalus effūgit? 5. Quid Minōi dixit? 6. Cūr nōn difficile erat id rēgī persuādere? 7. In quō Daedalus mōnstrum clausit? 8. Quid erat cibus monstri? 9. Quam viam fugae ā Crētā Daedalus reperit? 10. Quid accidit Icarō? 11. Num Daedalus in mare dēcidit? 12. Cuī rēgī postea serviēbat?

**iubeō, order.**

**potestās, power.**

**red-igō, reduce.**

**mirābilis, wonderful.**

**ambāgēs, windings. (Ambiguous.)**

**claudō, shut up, in-close.**

**red-eō, return.**

**con-cēdō, permit, concede.**

**penna, feather. (Pen.)**

**līnum, thread. (Linen.)**

**cēra, wax.**

**fōrma, form.**

**umerus, shoulder.**

**ac-commodō, fit to. (Accommodate.)**

**celsus, high. (Ex-celsior.)**

**molliō, soften. (Molli-fy.)**

## QUESTIONS.

**358.** How are the tenses of the Passive Infinitive formed? Give the Passive Infinitives, Latin and English, of *nūntiō*, *videō*, *mittō*, *veniō*. Illustrate the use of the Infinitive as a noun. What is the difference between Direct and Indirect Discourse? In what case is the subject of the Infinitive put? On what does the tense of the Infinitive depend? When will it be Present? Perfect? Future? Mention the most common of the special verbs which are followed by the Dative. State the rule for Dative with special verbs. Distinguish between the Ablative of Specification and Ablative of Characteristic, giving an example of each. Compare the Adverbs formed from *multus*, *parvus*, *acer*, *gravis*, *facilis*.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

## Participles; Ablative Absolute.

**359.** A Participle is a Verbal Adjective; as a verb it may be followed by an object; as an adjective it must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case.

**360.** In Latin there are two participles in each voice, as follows:

## ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

NAME.	ENDING.	MEANING.
PRESENT.	-ns, gen. -ntis.	-ing.
FUTURE.	-ūrus, -a, -um.	about to.

## PASSIVE PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	-us, -a, -um.	having been.
GERUNDIVE.	-ndus, -a, -um.	necessary to be, or -ing.

## CONJ. I.

PRES.	amā-ns,	loving.
FUT.	amāt-ūrus,	} about to love.
	-a, -um,	
PERF.	amāt-us,	} having been loved.
	-a, -um,	
G'V'E.	ama-ndus,	} necessary to be loved, or loving.
	-a, -um,	

	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
PRES.	monē-ns.	regē-ns.	audiē-ns.
FUT.	monit-ūrus,	rēct-ūrus,	audit-ūrus,
	-a, -um.	-a, -um.	-a, -um.
PERF.	monit-us,	rēct-us,	audit-us,
	-a, -um.	-a, -um.	-a, -um.
G'V'E.	mone-ndus,	rege-ndus,	audie-ndus,
	-a, -um.	-a, -um.	-a, -um.

a. Observe that the Present participle and the Gerundive are formed by adding the endings to the Present stem, while the Future and the Perfect have the Participial stem.

b. Notice that -e is added to the Present stem in the Fourth Conjugation.

c. Form the participles, both Latin and English, of *portō*, *doceō*, *scribō*, *mūniō*.

## 361.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

1. <i>Bellō cōfectō,</i> <i>in Itāliam con-</i> <i>tendit.</i>	<i>The war having been finished,</i>	} <i>he hastened</i> <i>into Italy.</i>
	<i>Since the war was finished,</i>	
	<i>When the war was finished,</i>	
	<i>Having finished the war,</i>	

- |   |   |  |   |                                  |
|---|---|--|---|----------------------------------|
| 2. <i>Signō datō, milites impetum fecerunt.</i>         | { | <i>The signal having been given,<br/>When the signal was given,<br/>At the signal,</i>   | } | <i>the soldiers charged.</i>     |
| 3. <i>Eorū vicis incēsis, Caesar exercitum redūxit.</i> | { | <i>Their villages having been burned,<br/>When he had burned their villages,<br/>After burning their villages,<br/>Having burned their villages,</i> | } | <i>Caesar led back his army.</i> |
| 4. <i>Ā castris, tō insciente, discessit.</i>           | { | <i>You not knowing,<br/>Without your knowledge,</i>  | } | <i>he departed from camp.</i>    |
| 5. <i>Caesare duce, nihil timēmus.</i>                  | { | <i>Caesar (being) our leader,<br/>With Caesar as leader,</i>   | } | <i>we fear nothing.</i>          |
| 6. <i>Ventō secundō, classis redibit.</i>               | { | <i>The wind (being) favorable,<br/>When the wind is favorable,<br/>If the wind is favorable,</i>   | } | <i>the fleet will return.</i>    |

a. Notice that in the first three examples, there is a noun (in the fourth, a pronoun) in the Ablative, and a participle agreeing with it, and that they define the *time* or *circumstances* of the action expressed in the main clause of the sentence. Notice also that they are *independent* of the rest of the sentence. Hence this construction is called the **Ablative Absolute**.

**Rule XXX.** A noun or pronoun, with a participle, may be put in the Ablative to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action.

*b.* Observe that in the 5th example a *noun*, and in the 6th an *adjective*, is used instead of the participle. In both cases, "*being*" is supplied in English.

*c.* Observe that the literal translation of the Ablative Absolute is apt to be awkward. A smoother translation is obtained by using the Active participle with a direct object, or a clause introduced by a suitable conjunction.

*d.* In translating English into Latin, do not imagine that *all* participles will have the Ablative Absolute construction. For example, if a participle belongs to the subject of a verb in the Indicative mood, it will, of course, be in the Nominative case, as: *Caesar, influenced by their entreaties, undertook the war. Caesar, eōrum precibus adductus, bellum suscepit.*

### 362.     USE OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

In Latin, the Present participle can only be used when it denotes the *same time* as the principal verb, as: *Vidi eum ridentem. I saw him laughing.* When, therefore, the Present participle is used *loosely* in English to denote time *before* that of the principal verb, an Ablative Absolute or a clause must be substituted, as:

*Ascertaining these facts, they departed.*

*His rebus cōgnitis, discesserunt.*

### THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS.

363. Ōlim, rēgnante Aegeō, Androgeus Mīnōis filius Athēnās vēnit, atque lūdōrum, quī ibi quotannis celebrābantur, victor appellātus est. Haud ita multō post, cāsū nesciō quō necātus est. Quam ob rem Mīnōs incēsusus irā bellum cum Athēniēnsibus gessit.

Quibus victīs terribile tribūtum imposuit. Eōs enim quotannis septem iuvenīs septemque virginēs ad cibum Mīnōtaurō mittere iussit. Eā rē cōgnitā, Thēseus ad Crētā nāvigāre et cum mōnstrō pūgnāre cōstituit. Nec lacrimīs patris nec precibus populī mōtus est. Dēnique sortēs dūcuntur et omnia parāta sunt. Infēlicēs iuvenēs cum Thēseō nāvem ātrīs vēlīs aptātam, sīgnum lūctūs, cōscendunt. Quam nāvem Thēseus patrī prōmittit albīs vēlīs aptātam, sīgnum victōriæ, Athēnās reditūram esse.

**364.** 1. In the reign of Minos king of Crete, Androgeus, his son, was murdered at Athens. 2. When everything was ready, we embarked on a ship with black sails. 3. Theseus said that he would kill the Minotaur and return to Athens a victor. 4. After the lots had been drawn, seven unfortunate youths were ordered to sail to Crete. 5. On ascertaining these facts, Minos determined to wage war with Aegeus.

*Sight Translation.*

THĒSEUS ET MĪNŌTAURUS. — *Concluded.*

**365.** Mox nautae nāvem solvunt, et altum mare petunt. Paucīs post diēbus nāvis ad Crētā ap-pulsa est. Captīvī expositī ad rēgem dūcuntur. Tum prīmum Ariadnē, pulchra filia Mīnōis, Thēsea videt. Statim admīrātiōne et misericordiā mōta nōbilem iuvenem servāre cōstituit. Itaque virgō, captīvīs in carcerē ductīs, custōdēs aurō corrumpit, ac ipsa Thēseī gladium et fīlum dat. Vesperī custōdēs Thēsea

in labyrinthum dūcunt. Prope introitum autem iuvenis custōdibus īnscentibus filum adnectit. Subitō terribilem mūgītum exaudiunt. Inde custōdēs ex labyrinthō discēdunt et Thēseus sōlus relinquitur. Mox Mīnōtaurum videt. Tum ācerrima erat pūgna. Nam Mīnōtaurō erant et vīrēs taurī et dolus celeritāsque hominis. Dēnique vulneribus cōfectum mōnstrum cadit.

366. 1. Cūr Mīnōs bellum cum Athēniēnsibus gessit? 2. Quod terribile tribūtum Athēniēnsibus vīctis imposuit? 3. Quāle mōnstrum erat Mīnōtaurus? 4. Quis cum Mīnōtaurō pūgnāre cōstituit? 5. Quālem nāvem infēlicēs iuvenēs cōnscendunt? 6. Quid Thēseus patrī prōmittit? 7. Ubi prīmum Ariadnē Thēsea vīdit? 8. Quid fēcit virgō? 9. Quādo Thēseus in labyrinthum ductus est? 10. Quid prope introitum fēcit? 11. Cūr ācerrima erat pūgna cum Mīnōtaurō? 12. Quis vīcit?

#### QUESTIONS.

367. What is a participle? Give the names, endings, and meanings of the four participles. Which are formed from the Present stem? From what stem are the others formed? Form the participles of *dūcō*, *moveō*, *custōdiō*, *laudō*. What is an Ablative Absolute? What may be used instead of the participle? Is there an Ablative Absolute in the sentence: *The Gauls having been conquered sent hostages to Caesar*? Why? Where only may the Present participle be used in Latin? Rule for *place where*. Give the Infinitives, Active and Passive, of *pōnō*.

*ap-pellō*, *land*.

*ex-pōnō*, *disembark*.

*ad-mirātiō*, ADMIRATION.

*moveō*, MOVE.

*carcer*, *prison*. (In-carcerate.)

*filum*, *thread*.

*introitum*, *entrance*.

*ad-nectō*, *fasten*.

*mūgītus*, *bellowing*.

*dolus*, *cunning*.

## LESSON XXXIX.

Gerund; Gerundive; Supine; Ablative of Time.

## 368.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
G.	<b>amandī</b> , <i>of loving.</i>	<b>monendī</b>	<b>regendī</b>	<b>audiendī</b>
D.	<b>amandō</b> , <i>for loving.</i>	<b>monendō</b>	<b>regendō</b>	<b>audiendō</b>
Ac.	<b>amandum</b> , <i>loving.</i>	<b>monendum</b>	<b>regendum</b>	<b>audiendum</b>
Ab.	<b>amandō</b> , <i>by loving.</i>	<b>monendō</b>	<b>regendō</b>	<b>audiendō</b>

a. The Gerund is a *verbal noun* of the Second Declension; it lacks the Nominative case, which is supplied by the Infinitive. Following are examples of its use.

## 369.

G. **His potestātem discēdendī fēcīt.** *He gave these the opportunity of departing.*

D. **Aqua utilis est bibendō.** *Water is useful for drinking.*

Ac. **Nāvēs erant inūtilēs ad nāvīgandum.** *The ships were useless for sailing.*

Ab. **Militēs in metendō occupātī sunt.** *The soldiers were occupied in reaping.*

a. Observe that the gerund is governed precisely like any other noun. As it has the force of a verb, it *may* take an object in the proper case. But, as a general rule, instead of the gerund with a direct object the gerundive is used. *The gerundive then agrees with its noun, which is put in the case in which the gerund would have been.* The following examples illustrate the use of the gerundive instead of the gerund.



**370.**

- G. Cōsillium } legiōnem opprimendi. } They formed the  
cēpērunt } legiōnis opprimendae. } plan of crushing  
the legion.
- D. Vix erat } rēs conlocandō. } There was scarcely  
tempus } rēbus conlocandis. } time for arranging  
matters.
- Ac. In Italiam } ad agendum con- } He hastened into Italy for  
contendit } ventūs. } the purpose of holding  
} ad cōventūs } (to hold) courts.  
} agendōs. }
- Ab. Mōbilēs } in capiendō cōsilia. } They are changea-  
sunt } in cōsiliis capiendis. } ble in forming  
plans.

a. Notice that the Accusative of the gerundive with **ad** is used to express *purpose*.

**371.**

<b>371.</b>		<b>SUPINE.</b>		
	<b>CONJ. I.</b>	<b>CONJ. II.</b>	<b>CONJ. III.</b>	<b>CONJ. IV.</b>
<b>Ac.</b>	<b>amātum</b> , <i>to love.</i>	<b>monitum</b>	<b>rēctum</b>	<b>audītum</b>
<b>Ab.</b>	<b>amātū</b> , <i>to love.</i>	<b>monitū</b>	<b>rēctū</b>	<b>auditū</b>

*a.* The Supine is a verbal noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Accusative and Ablative as follows :

1. **Lēgātōs misērunt rogātum auxiliū.** *They sent ambassadors to ask assistance.*
2. **Perfacile factū est.** *It is very easy to do.*

b. The Accusative of the supine — called the *supine in -um* — is used, as in example (1), with verbs of motion to express purpose.

NOTE. — This Supine is also used with *irī*, — the Passive Infinitive of *eō*, *to go*, — to form the Future Passive Infinitive of verbs, as : *amātum irī*.

c. The Ablative of the supine — called the *supine in -ū* — is used, as in example (2), with a few adjectives.

## 372.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

1. *Nocte oppidum oppugnābimus.* We shall storm the town at night.

2. *Tribus hōris expugnābitur.* It will be taken within three hours.

In the first example the Ablative *nocte* expresses *time when*; in the second example the Ablative *tribus hōris* expresses *time within which*.

373. Rule XXXI. *Time when or within which* is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition.

## THĒSEUS ET ARIADNĒ.

374. Mīnōtaurō vīctō, Thēseus flō viam, quā vēnerat, celeriter repetit. Ad introitum labyrinthi Ariadnē videt, quae metū tremēns iuvenem petītum vēnerat. Nunc tandem virgō laeta eum vīctōrem videt, atque eī dīcit sē omnia parāvisse; custōdēs carceris somnō vīnōque sepultōs esse; ēius comitēs ad nāvīgandum parātōs esse. Statim Thēseus cum Ariadnē ad lītus properat, ubi iam suī comitēs convēnerant. Sine tumultū omnēs nāvem ātrīs vēlīs cōnscendunt et nocte tēctī per classem Mīnōis ēvādunt. Nunc tandem eīs est spēs patriae videndae. Posterō diē Naxon veniunt. Hīc ab omnī periculō tūtī paucōs diēs manēbant. Tum Thēseus et comitēs nāvem cōnscendunt et Athēnās cursum dērigunt. Ariadnē autem relīcta est, quam ob rem difficile dictū est.

**375.** 1. The companions of Theseus had no hope of conquering the Minotaur. 2. They had hastened to the shore to see the ship with black sails. 3. They say it is (a) difficult (thing) to see. 4. They will remain at Naxos for the purpose of searching for the maiden. 5. On the following day they said that they would arrive at Athens within a few days.

*Sight Translation.* THĒSEUS ET ARIADNĒ. — *Concluded.*

**376.** Alii dīcunt Thēseī in animō esse Naxon postea redire ad dūcendam Ariadnē in mātirimōnium; aliī deum Bacchum coēgisse iuvenem Ariadnē relinquare dīcunt. Saltem certum est Bacchum eam in caelum sēcum ēvēxisse et eī corōnam septem stellārum dedisse. Etiam nunc enim nocte in caelō Ariadnea corōna cernitur.

Iam multōs diēs rēx Aegeus reditum nāvis expectābat, quae suum filiū ad Crētā ēvēxerat. Procul tandem nāvem cernit, sed ēheu! ātrīs vēlīs. Nam Thēseus cāsū nēsciō quō vēla nōn mūtāverat. Tum rēx māgnō dolōre adfectus sē ex altā rūpe in mare dēiēcit; unde marī nōmen est *Aegaeum*. Inde Thēseus rēx Athēnārū sapiēter cīvitatē regē-

**Bacchus**, god of wine.

**saltem**, at any rate.

**ē-vehō**, carry away. (**Vehicle**.)

**stella**, star. (**Stellar**.)

**red-itus**, return.

**ēheu**, Alas!

**dolor**, sorrow, grief. (**Dolorous**.)

**ad-ficiō**, AFFECT.

**Aegaeus**, AEGEAN.

**sapiēter**, wisely.

**ar-cessō**, send for, fetch.

**prae-cipuus**, special.

bat. Suam mātrem, Aethram, Troezēne arcessīvit, quam semper habēbat praecipuō honōre.

377. 1. Quō modo Thēseus ex labyrinthō ēvāsīt? 2. Quam ad introitum vīdit? 3. Quid virgō eī dīxit? 4. Ubi Thēseus suōs comitēs invēnit? 5. Quō modo per classem Mīnōis ēvāsērunt? 6. In quā insulā Ariadnēn relīquērunt? 7. Quid dīcunt scrīptōrēs dē hāc rē? 8. Quid certum est? 9. Cūr Aegeus sē ex rūpe in mare dēiēcīt? 10. Quis postea erat rēx Athēnārū? 11. Quālis rēx erat Thēseus? 12. Quālis fīlius erat Thēseus?

#### QUESTIONS.

378. Give the gerunds of *nārrō*, *videō*, *dūcō*, *veniō*. What is a gerund? A gerundive? When is the gerundive used instead of a gerund? In the following examples change from the gerund to the gerundive construction, and *vice versā*: **ad perferendās calamitātis, cōnsilium bellum renovandī, difficultās belli gerendī, ad legiōnēs trānsportandum**. What is a supine? How are the supines used? Give an example of *time when*; *time within which*. What kind of time does the Accusative express?

---

#### LESSON XL.

##### Derivation and Composition of Words.

379. In English, several words of kindred meaning may often be formed from one word by the addition of certain endings, called *suffixes*; e. g., from the verb *govern* we have *governor*, *governess*, *government*, *governable*, etc. Compare the following examples in Latin:

REG- = *guide*.

reg-ere, to rule.

rēx (= reg-s), king.

rēg-ina, queen.

rēg-ius, royal.

rēg-ia, palace.

reg-iō, direction.

rēgn-um, reign.

rēgn-āre, to reign.

rēgnā-tor, ruler.

rēc-tor, guide, ruler.

rēct-iō, direction, government.

rēct-us, direct, straight.

All these Latin words, having in them the idea of *guidance* or *government*, are formed from the root REG- by the addition of certain suffixes. Following are a few of the most important suffixes used in the formation of Latin words.

## 380.

## NOUNS.

1. The suffix -tor added to roots or verb-stems denotes the *agent* or *doer* of an action, as :

vincō (root VIC-), I conquer.

victor, conqueror.

ōrō (stem ōrā-), I plead.

ōrātor, pleader, orator.

In like manner form nouns of agency from imperō and canō.

2. -ia, -tia, -tās and -tūdō added to adjective and noun stems form abstract nouns expressing *quality*, as :

diligēns (stem diligent-), diligentia, diligence.

diligent.

laetus (stem laeto-), glad.

laetitia, gladness.

celer (stem celeri-), quick.

celeritās, quickness.

altus (stem alto-), high.

altitūdō, height.

Form nouns expressing *quality* from prūdēns, saevus, tardus, māgnus.

(3.) **-iō, -tiō, -tus** and **-tūra** added to verb stems form nouns expressing *action*, as :

<b>legō</b> (root <b>LEG-</b> ), <i>I gather.</i>	<b>legiō</b> , <i>gathering, legion.</i>
<b>dimicō</b> (stem <b>dimicā-</b> ), <i>I fight.</i>	<b>dimicātiō</b> , <i>struggle.</i>
<b>canō</b> (root <b>CAN-</b> ), <i>I sing.</i>	<b>cantus</b> , <i>singing.</i>
<b>pingō</b> (root <b>PIC-</b> ), <i>I paint.</i>	<b>pictūra</b> , <i>painting.</i>

Form nouns of *action* from **dicō**, **conīdū**, **adveniō**, **stō**.

## 381.

## ADJECTIVES.

(1.) The suffixes **-ānus, -īnus, -ēnsis** form adjectives denoting *belonging to*, as :

<b>Rōma</b> (stem <b>Rōma-</b> ), <i>Rome.</i>	<b>Rōmānus</b> , <i>Roman.</i>
<b>Gabii</b> (stem <b>Gabio-</b> ), <i>Gabii.</i>	<b>Gabinus</b> , <i>of Gabii.</i>
<b>Athēnae</b> (stem <b>Athēna-</b> ), <i>Athens.</i>	<b>Athēniēnsis</b> , <i>Athenian.</i>

Form such adjectives from **Alba**, **Latium**, **Sicilia**.

(2.) **-eus** forms adjectives denoting *material*, as :

<b>aurum</b> (stem <b>auro-</b> ), <i>gold.</i>	<b>aureus</b> , <i>golden.</i>
<b>ferrum</b> (stem <b>ferro-</b> ), <i>iron.</i>	<b>ferreus</b> , <i>of iron.</i>

Form adjectives denoting *material* from **lignum** and **marmor**.

(3.) **-lis, -ālis, -ilis, -ilis, -bilis** form adjectives denoting *tendency*, as :

<b>humus</b> (stem <b>humo-</b> ), <i>ground.</i>	<b>humilis</b> , <i>low.</i>
<b>mors</b> (stem <b>mort-</b> ), <i>death.</i>	<b>mortālis</b> , <i>mortal.</i>
<b>fidēs</b> (stem <b>fidē-</b> ), <i>faith.</i>	<b>fidēlis</b> , <i>faithful.</i>
<b>hostis</b> (stem <b>hosti-</b> ), <i>enemy.</i>	<b>hostilis</b> , <i>hostile.</i>
<b>terreō</b> (root <b>TERR-</b> ), <i>frighten.</i>	<b>terribilis</b> , <i>terrible.</i>

In like manner form adjectives from **faciō**, **nātūra**, **crūdus**, **vir**, **horreō**.

## 382.

## VERBS.

Some Latin verbs are formed directly from roots, as **agō** from root **AG-**; others are formed from noun, adjective, and other verb stems, as :

<b>laus</b> (stem <b>laud-</b> ), <i>praise.</i>	<b>laudāre</b> , <i>to praise.</i>
<b>albus</b> (stem <b>albo-</b> ), <i>white.</i>	<b>albeō</b> , <i>be white.</i>
<b>caleō</b> (stem <b>calē-</b> ), <i>be warm.</i>	<b>calēscō</b> , <i>grow warm.</i>
<b>finis</b> (stem <b>fini-</b> ), <i>end.</i>	<b>finiō</b> , <i>end.</i>

## 383.

## COMPOUND WORDS.

Latin compounds consist of two or more simple stems uniting to form one word, as : **māgno** + **animus** = **māgnanimus**, *great-souled*.

They are often formed of verbs preceded (1) by a preposition, as **in-scribō**, *inscribe*, or (2) by a particle, as **dis-cēdō**, *depart*.

a. Notice the following compounds of **mittō**, *send*.

<b>ā-mittō</b> , <i>send away.</i>	<b>manū-mittō</b> , <i>send from the hand,</i> <i>release.</i>
<b>ad-mittō</b> , <i>send to, admit.</i>	<b>o-mittō</b> , <i>omit.</i>
<b>circum-mittō</b> , <i>send around.</i>	<b>per-mittō</b> , <i>send through, per-</i> <i>mit.</i>
<b>com-mittō</b> , <i>send together,</i> <i>commit.</i>	<b>prae-mittō</b> , <i>send forward.</i>
<b>dē-mittō</b> , <i>send or cast down.</i>	<b>prō-mittō</b> , <i>promise.</i>
<b>dī-mittō</b> , <i>send apart, scatter.</i>	<b>re-mittō</b> , <i>send back, remit.</i>
<b>ē-mittō</b> , <i>send forth, emit.</i>	<b>sub-mittō</b> , <i>send under, submit.</i>
<b>in-mittō</b> , <i>send in.</i>	<b>trāns-mittō</b> , <i>send across.</i>
<b>inter-mittō</b> , <i>send between, in-</i> <i>termit.</i>	

b. The final consonant in the preposition is often assimilated to the consonant beginning the following word, as **cor-rumpō** for **con-rumpō**, **au-ferō** for **ab-ferō**.

c. A short *a* or *e* in the stem of a verb compounded with a preposition is often weakened to short *i*, as **cōn-ficiō** for **cōn-faciō**, **ob-tineō** for **ob-teneō**.

## PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

**384.** Prepositions, when compounded with other words, sometimes vary from their usual meaning. Note carefully the following :

**Com-, con- (cum),** (1) *together*, as **con-venīre**, *to come together* ; (2) *thoroughly, completely*, as **con-laudāre**, *to praise highly*.

**In-, im-,** (1) with verbs, *in, into, on, against*, as **im-portāre**, *to bring in* ; (2) with adjectives, *not, un-*, as **in-iūstus**, *unjust*.

**Ob,** (1) *towards*, as **oc-currere**, *to run towards* ; (2) *down*, as **oc-cīdere**, *to cut down*.

**Sub,** (1) *under, beneath*, as **sub-mergere**, *to dip under* ; (2) *from beneath, up*, as **sub-levāre**, *to raise up* ; (3) *secretly*, as **sub-ripere**, *to take away secretly* ; (4) *slightly*, as **sub-rīdēre**, *(to laugh slightly), to smile*.

**385.** PARTICLES IN COMPOSITION.

**amb-, am-, an-,** *around, round about*, as **amb-īre**, *to go around*.

**dis-, dī-,** *asunder, apart*, as **dis-cēdere**, *to depart*.

**por-,** *forward, forth*, as **por-rigere**, *to hold forth, extend*.

**red-, re-,** *back, again*, as **red-īre**, *to go back, return*.

**sēd-, sē-,** *apart*, as **sē-clūdere**, *to shut apart*.

## NŪPTIAE RŌMĀNAE.

**386.** Diē nūptiārum nūbēns albā tunicā et flammeō iūteō induēbātur. Eius coma, cuspide hastae in sex crīnīs dīvisā, vittīs nectēbātur. Ubi convīvae in patris nūbentis domum convēnērunt, optimīs auspiciīs caerimōnia agēbātur. Prīmum certa et sollemnia verba, decem testibus praesentibus, dīcuntur. Deinde



*prōnuba* novōs marītōs ad āram deīs sacrificandī causā dūcit. Dum Flāmen Diālis carmina peragit, novī marītī, manibus inter sē iūctīs, āram circumībant. Quibus rītibus factīs, omnēs convīvae et marītō et nūptae ‘fēliciter’ dīcunt. Deinde epulīs usque ad noctem apud patrem novae nūptae accumbunt.

387. 1. They said that the guests had assembled at the bridegroom's house. 2. The solemn words will be pronounced in the presence of the priest. 3. The guests will recline at the feast until night-fall. 4. Has the bride put on the white tunic and orange-colored veil? 5. The priest used to go round the altar for the sake of performing these ceremonies.

*Sight Translation.* NŪPTIAE RŌMĀNAE. — *Concluded.*

388. Ubi nox vēnit, nūpta speciē vīs dē complexū mātris āvolsa ad domum marītī dēdūcitur. Tībīcinēs

<i>speciēs</i> , show. ( <i>Species</i> .)	<i>oleum</i> , OIL.
<i>com-plexus</i> , embrace. ( <i>Complexion</i> .)	<i>unguō</i> , anoint. ( <i>Uction</i> .)
<i>ā-vellō</i> , tear away. ( <i>Re-vulsion</i> .)	<i>ōmen</i> , OMEN.
<i>tibicen</i> , flute-player.	<i>trāns-fertur</i> , is carried across. ( <i>Transfer</i> .)
<i>fax</i> , torch.	<i>vidē-licet</i> , (one may see), clearly.
<i>āgmen</i> , line.	<i>quā</i> , because.
<i>prae-cēdō</i> , PRECEDE.	<i>necessārius</i> , NECESSARY.
<i>Talassiō</i> , perhaps an ancient god of marriage.	<i>re-pōtia</i> , return banquet.
<i>clāmitō</i> , keep shouting.	<i>Larēs</i> , deified spirits of ancestors.
<i>nux</i> , nut.	<i>Penātēs</i> , household gods.
<i>spargō</i> , scatter. ( <i>Sparse</i> .)	<i>sacri-ficō</i> , SACRIFICE.
<i>signi-ficō</i> , SIGNIFY.	

et servī facēs ferentēs āgmen praecēdunt. Post novōs marītōs veniunt convīvae, quibus mox māgna turba plēbis sē iungit. Omnēs carmina canunt et 'Talassiō' clāmitant. Nunc marītus puerīs nucēs spargit, quō sīgnificat sē nōn iam puerum esse. Ubi ad domum marītī veniunt, nūpta postīs oleō unguīt atque eōs vittīs ōrnat. Deinde ad malum ōmen vītandum nūpta trāns līmen trānsfertur. In ātriō marītus suam uxōrem aquā et ignī accipit, videlicet quia hae duae rēs ad vīvendum māximē necessāriae sunt. Posterō diē repōtia apud marītum erant, quō tempore prīmum nūpta Laribus et Penātibus marītī sacrificābat.

389. 1. Quō modo nūbēns Rōmāna induēbātur? 2. Quō modo ēius coma dīvidēbātur? 3. Quot testibus praesentibus caerimōnia agēbātur? 4. Quis dūcit novōs marītōs ad āram? 5. Dum Flāmen Dīālīs carmina peragit, quid faciunt novī marītī? 6. Quid deinde faciunt convīvae? 7. Ubi nox vēnit, quō nūpta dēdūcitur? 8. Dum turba per viās incēdit, quid faciunt omnēs? 9. Quid facit novus marītus? 10. Ubi ad domum veniunt, quid facit nūpta? 11. Cūr nūpta trāns līmen trānsfertur? 12. Quō modo marītus in ātriō nūptam accēpit? 13. Ubi prīmum nūpta Laribus et Penātibus marītī sacrificābat.

#### QUESTIONS.

390. Explain the formation of the following words, giving the meaning of the suffixes: Rōmānus, dīligentia, fidēlis, ōrātor, terribilis, altitūdō, Gabinus, pictūra, cantor, ligneus, laetitia, mortālis, legiō, celeritās, Athēniēnsis, ferreus, hu-

*illis, dimicātio, hostilis, cantus.* What is the force of the prepositions and particles in the following: *iniustus, porrigere, subripere, sēclūdere, occidere, conlaudāre, redire, subridere, discōdere, sublevāre, occurrere, ambire, convenire, importāre.*

## LESSON XLI.

### Subjunctive of Sum; Hortatory Subjunctive; Subjunctive of Wish.

**391.** The Subjunctive mood has four tenses; viz., Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. It is variously translated according to the clause in which it stands. Learn the following paradigm:—

#### SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
<i>s-i-m</i>	<i>s-i-mus</i>	<i>es-se-m</i>	<i>es-sē-mus</i>
<i>s-i-s</i>	<i>s-i-tis</i>	<i>es-sē-s</i>	<i>es-sē-tis</i>
<i>s-i-t</i>	<i>s-i-nt</i>	<i>es-se-t</i>	<i>es-se-nt</i>
PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
<i>fu-er-i-m</i>	<i>fu-er-i-mus</i>	<i>fu-isse-m</i>	<i>fu-issē-mus</i>
<i>fu-er-i-s</i>	<i>fu-er-i-tis</i>	<i>fu-issē-s</i>	<i>fu-issē-tis</i>
<i>fu-er-i-t</i>	<i>fu-er-i-nt</i>	<i>fu-isse-t</i>	<i>fu-isse-nt</i>

**392.** The Subjunctive has two principal uses.

- I. It may be used *independently*.
- II. It may be *dependent* on another verb.

#### I. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

**393.** HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Bonī sīmus.* Let us be good.
2. *Nē ignāvi sīmus.* Let us not be cowards.

*a.* Observe that these sentences are *exhortations*. Hence this is called the **Hortatory Subjunctive**.

*b.* The negative is *nē*, as in example (2).

**394. Rule XXXII.** The Subjunctive is used to express a mild command or exhortation.

**395. SUBJUNCTIVE OF WISH.**

1. *Sis fēlix.* **May you be fortunate.**

2. (*Utinam*) *Athēnis essem.* **O that I were (now) at Athens!**

3. (*Utinam*) *nē domī fuissēmus.* **O that we had not been at home!**

*a.* Notice that the wish expressed in example (1) is with regard to the *future*, and that it may be fulfilled. Hence, it is called a *possible* wish. It requires the Present Subjunctive.

*b.* The wish expressed in example (2) is with regard to *present* time, but it *cannot* be fulfilled, as the person is evidently *not* now at Athens. It is therefore called an *impossible wish in the present*. Notice that although the time is present, the tense is Imperfect.

*c.* The wish in example (3) is with reference to *past* time, and of course cannot be fulfilled. It is called an *impossible wish in the past*, and requires the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

*d.* *Utinam* may be omitted. The negative is *nē*.

**396. Rule XXXIII.** The Subjunctive is used to express a wish; the Present tense is used for a *possible* wish; the Imperfect for an *impossible wish in the present*; the Pluperfect for an *impossible wish in the past*.

## MIDĀS.

**397.** Bacchus ōlim Midae, rēgī Phrygiae, prō beneficiō arbitrium mūneris dedit. Ille autem sic petīvit: “Quicquid meō corpore contigerō, id aurum sit.” Cuī deus maestus adnuit, “Ita sit.” Midās autem laetus domum abīvit. Vix fōrtūnae crēdēns postīs tangit, quī prōtinus in aurum vertuntur. Deinde rēgiam percurrit, lectōs, mēnsās, sella, manū tangēns. Brevī omnia sunt aurea. Mox rēgī māgnificās epulās ministrī appōnunt. Tum vērō quicquid cibī rēx ōre contingit, id statim in aurum vertitur. Etiam vīnum in aureum flūmen vertitur. Midās attonitus opēs effugere temptat sed frūstrā. Sic tandem sēcum dīcit: “Nē tam stultus fuisset! Ét dītissimus et pauperrimus mortālium sum! Utinam deus ipse adesset! Quō modo sine ēius auxiliō mortem effugiam?”

**398.** 1. Let not the king be astonished. 2. O that all things in the palace were golden! 3. Let the feast be magnificent. 4. O that the attendants of the king had not been so foolish! 5. O that we were not so poor!

*Sight Translation.* MIDĀS. — *Concluded.*

**399.** Inde Midās Bacchum diem noctemque quaerēbat. Dēnique famē sitīque dēfessus deum repperit. Tum sic ōrat: “Dā veniam, pater, peccāvī. Ab hōc crūdēlī fātō mē ēripe.” Cuī deus benīgnē respondet: “Vāde ad flūmen Pactōlum. Ubi ad flūminis fontīs vēneris, aquae tuum caput subde, et simul

corpus crīmenque ēlue." Rēx ad flūmen succēdit, atque in aquam sē mergit. Statim, mīrābile dictū, vīs aurea dē ēius corpore in flūmen cēdit. Usque ad hōc tempus Pactōlus aureīs harēnīs fluere dīcitur. At Midās, cuī ex eō tempore opēs invīsae erant, silvās et rūra semper colēbat.

400. 1. Quis erat Midās? 2. Quis ōlim Midae arbitrium mūneris dedit? 3. Ubi rēx domum vēnit, quid primum fēcit? 4. Quid accidit? 5. Quid deinde Midās fēcit? 6. Quid accidit, ubi ministrī epulās rēgī apposuērunt? 7. Quem Midās diū quaerēbat? 8. Quid Midae petentī deus respondit? 9. Quid accidit, ubi rēx in aquam sē mersit? 10. Cūr postea Midās silvās et rūra colēbat?

## QUESTIONS.

401. Inflect the Subjunctive of *sum*. What are the two principal uses of the Subjunctive? Illustrate the Hortatory Subjunctive. Why is it called Hortatory? In wishes, when is the Present Subjunctive used? The Imperfect? The Pluperfect? What negative is used with the Hortatory Subjunctive and in wishes?

*famēs, hunger, FAMINE.*

*sitis, thirst.*

*peccō, sin.*

*ē-ripiō, snatch or save from.*

*vādō, go, proceed. (In-vade.)*

*Pactōlus, river in Asia Minor.*

*sub-dō, put or dip under.*

*crīmen, offence, CRIME.*

*ē-luō, wash, wash away.*

*suc-cēdō, draw near. (Succeed.)*

*mergō, dip, sink. (Merge.)*

*harēna, sand. (Arena.)*

*in-vīsus, hateful.*

*colō, inhabit, frequent.*

*(Culture.)*

## LESSON XLII.

Active Subjunctive; Indirect Question; Genitive  
and Dative with Adjectives.

## 402. ACTIVE VOICE — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
am-e-m	mone-a-m	reg-a-m	audi-a-m
am-ē-s	mone-ā-s	reg-ā-s	audi-ā-s
am-e-t	mone-a-t	reg-a-t	audi-a-t
am-ē-mus	mone-ā-mus	reg-ā-mus	audi-ā-mus
am-ē-tis	mone-ā-tis	reg-ā-tis	audi-ā-tis
am-e-nt	mone-a-nt	reg-a-nt	audi-a-nt

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-re-m	monē-re-m	rege-re-m	audi-re-m
amā-rē-s	monē-rē-s	rege-rē-s	audi-rē-s
amā-re-t	monē-re-t	rege-re-t	audi-re-t
amā-rē-mus	monē-rē-mus	rege-rē-mus	audi-rē-mus
amā-rē-tis	monē-rē-tis	rege-rē-tis	audi-rē-tis
amā-re-nt	monē-re-nt	rege-re-nt	audi-re-nt

## PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-eri-m	monu-eri-m	rēx-eri-m	audīv-eri-m
amāv-eri-s	monu-eri-s	rēx-eri-s	audīv-eri-s
amāv-eri-t	monu-eri-t	rēx-eri-t	audīv-eri-t
amāv-eri-mus	monu-eri-mus	rēx-eri-mus	audīv-eri-mus
amāv-eri-tis	monu-eri-tis	rēx-eri-tis	audīv-eri-tis
amāv-eri-nt	monu-eri-nt	rēx-eri-nt	audīv-eri-nt

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-isse-m	monu-isse-m	rēx-isse-m	audīv-isse-m
amāv-issē-s	monu-issē-s	rēx-issē-s	audīv-issē-s
amāv-isse-t	monu-isse-t	rēx-isse-t	audīv-isse-t
amāv-issē-mus	monu-issē-mus	rēx-issē-mus	audīv-issē-mus
amāv-issē-tis	monu-issē-tis	rēx-issē-tis	audīv-issē-tis
amāv-isse-nt	monu-isse-nt	rēx-isse-nt	audīv-isse-nt

a. Notice that the tense signs of the Subjunctive in all four Conjugations are as follows :

PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
-a- (CONJ. I. -e-)	-re-	-eri-	-isse-

b. Inflect the Active Subjunctive of **portō, habeo, dīcō, veniō**.

## II. SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

### 403.

#### INDIRECT QUESTION.

##### DIRECT QUESTION.

##### 1. Ubi est ?

*Where is he?*

##### 2. Quid agunt ?

*What are they doing ?*

##### INDIRECT QUESTION.

**Sciō ubi sit.**

*I know where he is.*

**Sēnsit quid agerent.**

*He perceived what they were doing.*

a. Observe that an Indirect Question is really a Direct Question made dependent on a verb.

b. Notice that the verb in the Indirect Question is in the Subjunctive mood.

**404. Rule XXXIV.** Indirect Questions are put in the Subjunctive.

### 405.

#### SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Quaerit	}	quis	{	<i>discēdat.</i>
Quaeret				
Quaesiverit				

*He is inquiring*

*He will inquire*

*He will have inquired*

}	who	{	<i>is departing.</i>

Quaerēbat	}	quis	{	<i>discēderet.</i>
Quaesivit				
Quaesiverat				

*discessisset.*



<i>He was inquiring</i>	} who {	<i>was departing.</i>
<i>He inquired</i>		<i>had departed.</i>
<i>He had inquired</i>		

a. Carefully examine the above sentences and observe that the tense of the Subjunctive depends upon the tense of the principal verb according to the following rule :

**406. Rule XXXV.** If the tense of the principal verb is *Present*, *Future*, or *Future Perfect*, it will be followed by the *Present* or *Perfect Subjunctive*. But if the tense of the principal verb is *Imperfect*, *Perfect*, or *Pluperfect*, it will be followed by the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive*.

**407. GENITIVE AND DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.**

GENITIVE.

**Plēnus iræ.**  
Full of anger.

DATIVE.

**Locus idōneus castris.**  
A place suitable for a  
camp.

**408. Rule XXXVI.** The Genitive is used with adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *fulness*, *power*, *sharing*, *guilt*, and their opposites.

**409. Rule XXXVII.** The Dative is used with adjectives denoting *fitness*, *nearness*, *likeness*, *friendliness*, *inclination*, and their opposites.

**LĀSŌN ET CENTĀURUS.**

**410.** In Thessaliā ōlim erat rēx, nōmine Aesōn, cui erat frāter Peliās, homō summā audāciā et impudentiā. Hīc, coniūrātiōne factā, frātre expulit, ac ipse rēgnum occupāvit. Haud ita multō post, Peliās

Iāsonem filium Aesonis interficere cōstituit. Sed quīdam, quī Aesonī amīcus erat, eī ostendit quid cōsiliī Peliās habēret. Inde Aēsōn, plēnus timōris, cum filiō in montīs effūgit, ubi cuiādam centaurō, nōmine Chīrōnī, Iāsonem ēducandum dedit. (Centaurī caput manūsque hūmānās sed corpus equīnum habēbant.) Cum Chīrōne multōs annōs vivēbat Iāsōn, patris rēgnīque immemor. Tandem eī iam fortissimō et validissimō centaurus ostendit unde vēnisset et quis esset.

411. 1. Full of recklessness he was expelled from Thessaly by the king. 2. Let us show the brave youth who he is, and whence he came. 3. Jason was educated by a centaur who was friendly to his father. 4. O that his brother would show him what plan the centaurs have! 5. Forgetful of their father, they had lived many years in the mountains.

*Sight Translation.* IĀSŌN ET ANUS.

412. Inde Iāsōn, patris videndī cupidissimus, ad Iōlcum, ubi rēgia erat, contendere cōstituit, atque, Peliā expulsō, patrem restituere in suum rēgnum. Mox, omnibus rēbus parātis, Chīrōnī "Valē" dīcit, et ad plānitiei dēscendit. Sub monte succēdit ad Anaurum, rapidum flūmen, quī tum māximē imbris tumidus erat. Dum Iāsōn trānsire dubitat, pauperem anum in rīpā sedentem videt. Quae statim strīdulā vōce iuvenem sē trānsportāre iubet. Quod prīmum Iāsōn recūsāt; sed postea, misericordiā mōtus, eam in suōs umerōs tollit et aquam intrat. Vix in rapidō

flūmine sē sustinet. Tandem, dēfessus labōribus, alterō calceō amīssō, ad rīpam venit. Deinde, onere dēpositō, ad “Valē” dīcendum sē vertit. At iam, mīrābile dictū, nōn anus, sed dea pulcherrimā fōrmā adest.

413. 1. Quālis homō erat Peliās? 2. Quō modo rēgnum occupāvit? 3. Quid deinde facere cōnstituit? 4. Quis Aesonī ostendit quid cōnsilī Peliās habēret? 5. Quid fēcit Aesōn? 6. Quālia animālia erant centaurī? 7. Quis Iāsōnī ostendit unde vēnisset et quis esset? 8. Quid deinde iuvenis facere cōstituit? 9. Ad quod flūmen sub monte succēdit? 10. Quam in rīpā sedentem videt? 11. Quid anus iuvenem facere iubet? 12. Num Iāsōn recūsāt? 13. Quid accidit, ubi aquam intrat? 14. Ubi ad alteram rīpam vēnit, quid fēcit Iāsōn? 15. Quis adest?

#### QUESTIONS.

414. What are the tense signs of the Active Subjunctive in all four conjugations? What is the difference between a *Direct* and an *Indirect Question*? Give the rule for Sequence of tenses. What adjectives are followed by the Genitive? What by the Dative?

Iōlcus, town in Thessaly.  
plānitīēs, PLAIN.  
Anaurus, river in Thessaly.  
rapidus, swift, RAPID.

tumidus, swollen. (Tumor.)  
trāns-eō, go across. (Transit.)  
anus, old woman.

LESSON XLIII.

Passive Subjunctive; Subjunctive of Purpose;  
Dative of Service.

415. PASSIVE VOICE — SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
am-e-r	mone-a-r	reg-a-r	audi-a-r
am-ē-ris	mone-ā-ris	reg-ā-ris	audi-ā-ris
or -re	or -re	or -re	or -re
am-ē-tur	mone-ā-tur	reg-ā-tur	audi-ā-tur
am-ē-mur	mone-ā-mur	reg-ā-mur	audi-ā-mur
am-ē-mini	mone-ā-mini	reg-ā-mini	audi-ā-mini
am-e-ntur	mone-a-ntur	reg-a-ntur	audi-a-ntur

IMPERFECT TENSE.

amā-re-r	monē-re-r	rege-re-r	audi-re-r
amā-rē-ris	monē-rē-ris	rege-rē-ris	audi-rē-ris
or -re	or -re	or -re	or -re
amā-rē-tur	monē-rē-tur	rege-rē-tur	audi-rē-tur
amā-rē-mur	monē-rē-mur	rege-rē-mur	audi-rē-mur
amā-rē-mini	monē-rē-mini	rege-rē-mini	audi-rē-mini
amā-re-ntur	monē-re-ntur	rege-re-ntur	audi-re-ntur

PERFECT TENSE.

amātus	{ sim sis sit	amātī	{ simus sitis sint
(-a, -um)		(-ae, -a)	
monitus	{ sim sis sit	monitī	{ simus sitis sint
(-a, -um)		(-ae, -a)	
rēctus	{ sim sis sit	rēctī	{ simus sitis sint
(-a, -um)		(-ae, a)	

auditus	{	sim	auditi	{	simus
(-a, -um)		sis	(-ae, -a)		sitis
		sit			sint

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amātus	{	essem	amāti	{	essēmus
(-a, -um)		essēs	(-ae, -a)		essētis
		esset			essent

monitus	{	essem	moniti	{	essēmus
(-a, -um)		essēs	(-ae, -a,)		essētis
		esset			essent

rēctus	{	essem	rēcti	{	essēmus
(-a, -um)		essēs	(-ae, -a)		essētis
		esset			essent

auditus	{	essem	auditi	{	essēmus
(a, -um)		essēs	(-ae, -a)		essētis
		esset			essent

a. Inflect the Passive Subjunctive of *volnerō*, *doceō*, *vincō*, and *vinciō*.

## 416. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

1. *Vēnit ut auxilium peteret.*

*He came* { that he might seek assistance.  
in order to seek assistance.  
to seek assistance.

2. *Misit amicum, qui auxilium peteret.*

*He sent a friend* { who was to seek assistance.  
in order to seek assistance.  
to seek assistance.

3. *Eum in vincula coniēcit, nē auxilium peteret.*

*He imprisoned him* { that he might not seek assistance.  
lest he should seek assistance.  
in order that he might not seek assistance.

4. **Monuit captivum, nē auxilium peteret.**

He warned the captive { that he should not seek assistance.  
 { lest he should seek assistance.  
 { not to seek assistance.

a. Observe that the dependent clauses introduced by **ut**, **quī**, and **nē** express *purpose*, the verb being in the Subjunctive.

b. Observe that the dependent clause in example (4) is equivalent to a noun, or *substantive*, used as an object of the principal verb. Such clauses are called *Substantive clauses of Purpose*.

417. Rule **XXXVIII**. The Subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, or a *relative*, is used to express Purpose.

NOTE. — The rule for Sequence of Tenses is observed in clauses of Purpose.

## 418. DATIVE OF SERVICE.

**Militēs urbi praesidiō erant.**

*The soldiers were (for) a guard to the city.*

a. Observe that **praesidiō** is in the Dative, and that the soldiers *served* as a guard to the city. Hence this is called the **Dative of Service**. It is usually coupled with another Dative forming the construction sometimes called the **Double Dative**.

419. Rule **XXXIX**. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End.

## IĀSŌN ET DEA.

420. Tum sic dicit dea Iāsonī: “Iūnō sum, quae incēdō rēgīna deōrum, et soror et uxor Iovis! Tū mihi labōrantī auxiliō fuistī. Ego, sī quandō ūsus

erit, tibi auxilium feram.” Hīs verbīs ē cōnspectū in tenuem auram ēvānuit. Inde Iāsōn laetissimus ad Iōleum contendit.

Intereā Peliās mīrīs somniīs graviter commōtus, Delphōs mīsit lēgātum, quī Apollinem cōnsuleret. Cū sīc respondit deus: “Cavē nē aliēnus, ūnum calceum gerēs, tē ex tuō rēgnō expellat.” Lēgātus rediit et rēgī nūntiāvit quid deus respondisset. Eum rēx monuit nē quid dē ōrāculō dīceret. Tamen, nēsciō quō modo, rūmor dē hāc rē volgātus est. Ubi igitur Iāsōn in urbem vēnit, cīvēs eum alterum calceum amīsisse sēnsērunt atque eum monuērunt ut fugeret. At ille “Vēnī,” inquit “ut crūdēlem tyrannum expellerem.”

421. 1. A citizen had warned me not to come into the city. 2. The stranger is reporting what Apollo has replied. 3. Jason will come to expel the cruel tyrant from the city. 4. The citizens will send a messenger to consult the oracle. 5. He was sent to be an aid to the king in trouble.

*Sight Translation.* IĀSŌN ET PELIĀS.

422. Inde Iāsōn clāmōre secundō ad rēgiam contendit. Sed Peliās — mīrābile dictū — iuvenem benīgnē accēpit. Blandīs verbīs dīxit sē frātris filiō libenter

blandus, *flattering*, BLAND.

sub-eō, *undergo*.

callidus, *crafty, cunning*.

vellus, *fleece*.

re-ferō, *bring back*. (Refer.)

neg-ōtium, *task*. (Negotiate.)

temerē, *rashly*.

Athamās, king of Boeōtia.

Boeōtia, province in Greece.

noverca, *step-mother*.

cessūrum esse; primum autem necesse esse Iāsonem sē fortem virum praebere. Cui Iāsōn respondit sē ad omnia pericula subeunda parātum esse. Tum callidus rēx “Ubi mihi vellus aureum ex Colchide rettuleris, tum tibi rēgnum trādam.” Iāsōn autem hōc difficillimum negōtium temerē suscēpit.

Dē vellere aureō haec rēs nārrātur. Athamantī, rēgī Boeōtiaē, erant duo liberī, Phrixus et Hellē. Quōs eōrum noverca interficere cōstituit, ut suī liberī rēgnārent. Sed deus ē manibus novercae liberōs ēripuit.

423. 1. Quae erat dea? 2. Quid Iūnō Iāsonī prōmīsīt? 3. Cūr intereā Peliās graviter commōtus est? 4. Quid fēcīt rēx? 5. Quid respondit deus? 6. Dē quō rēx lēgātum monuit nē dīceret? 7. Ubi Iāsōn in urbem vēnit, quid cīvēs dīxērunt? 8. Quid respondit Iāsōn? 9. Quō modo Peliās iuvenem accēpit? 10. Quod difficillimum negōtium Iāsonī dedit? 11. Quī erant Phrixus et Hellē? 12. Quis liberōs interficere cōstituit?

#### QUESTIONS.

424. What is the meaning of *ut* and *nē*? Give an example of a Purpose clause introduced by a relative. What other ways of expressing purpose have been given? May the Infinitive be used to express purpose? (Ans. *Only in poetry.*) Give an example of the Dative of Service. What special verbs take the Dative? What adjectives are followed by the Dative?



## LESSON XLIV.

## Verbs in -iō; Subjunctive of Result.

425. Verbs in -iō of the Third conjugation have a few forms in the *present stem* like the Fourth conjugation. Study the following:

Principal parts: capiō, capere, cēpi, captus.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I take, etc.*

capi-ō      capi-mus

capi-s      capi-tis

capi-t      capiu-nt

*I am taken, etc.*

capi-o-r

cape-ris or -re

capi-tur

capi-mur

capi-mini

capiu-ntur

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*I was taking, etc.*

capiē-ba-m, etc.

*I was taken, etc.*

capiē-ba-r, etc.

## FUTURE TENSE.

*I shall take, etc.*

capi-a-m      capi-ē-mus

capi-ē-s      capi-ē-tis

capi-e-t      capi-e-nt

*I shall be taken, etc.*

capi-a-r

capi-ē-ris or -re

capi-ē-tur

capi-ē-mur

capi-ē-mini

capi-e-ntur.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*I took, or have taken, etc.*

cēp-ī, etc.

*I was or have been taken, etc.*

capt-us, -a, -um sum, etc.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*I had taken, etc.*

cēp-ēra-m, etc.

*I had been taken, etc.*

capt-us, -a, -um eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*I shall have taken, etc.*  
cēp-er-ō, etc.

*I shall have been taken, etc.*  
capt-us, -a, -um erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

capi-a-m, etc.

capi-a-r, etc.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

cape-re-m, etc.

cape-re-r, etc.

PERFECT TENSE.

cēp-erī-m, etc.

capt-us, -a, -um sīm, etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

cēp-isse-m, etc.

capt-us, -a, -um essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

cape, take thou.  
capi-te, take ye.

cape-re, be thou taken.  
capi-mini, be ye taken.

FUTURE TENSE.

capi-tō, thou shalt take.

capi-tor, thou shalt be taken.

capi-tō, he shall take.

capi-tor, he shall be taken.

capi-tōte, ye shall take.

—

caplu-ntō, they shall take.

caplu-ntor, they shall be taken.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. cape-re, to take.

cap-ī, to be taken.

PERF. cēp-isse, to have taken.

capt-us, -a, -um esse, to have  
been taken.

FUT. capt-ūrus, -a, -um esse,  
to be about to take.

capt-um irī, to be about to be  
taken.

## PARTICIPLES.

**PRES.** capiē-ns, -entis, *taking*. **PERF.** capt-us, -a, -um, *having been taken*.

**FUT.** capt-ūrus, -a, -um, G'v'e. capie-ndus, -a, -um, *about to take*.  
*necessary to be taken, or taking.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

**G.** capie-ndī, *of taking*.

**Ac.** capt-um, *to take*.

**D.** capie-ndō, *for taking*.

**Ab.** capt-ū, *to take*.

**Ac.** capie-ndum, *taking*.

**Ab.** capie-ndō, *by taking*.

a. Observe that verbs in -iō retain the -i wherever Fourth conjugation verbs have -i *followed by a vowel*.

Inflect in like manner, iaciō, *to throw*.

## 426.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT.

1. **Tanta erat tempestās ut nāvēs rēicerentur.**

*So great was the storm that the ships were driven back.*

2. **Erat adeō tardus, ut nōn effugeret.**

*He was so slow, that he did not escape.*

3. **Hic ūnus est quī nōn crēdat.**

*This is the only man who does not believe.*

4. **Accidit ut esset lūna plēna.**

*It happened that it was full moon.*

a. Observe that these dependent clauses introduced by *ut* and *quī* express *result*, and that their verbs are in the Subjunctive mood.

b. Notice that the negative in Result clauses is *nōn*. Compare the negative in Purpose clauses.

c. The dependent clause in example (3) *characterizes* the man to whom reference is made. Such clauses are

therefore sometimes said to contain a **Subjunctive of Characteristic**.

d. Notice that the dependent clause in example (4) is used as a substantive, being the subject of the verb *accidit*. Such clauses are therefore called **Substantive Clauses of Result**.

**427. Rule XL.** The Subjunctive is used with *ut*, *ut nōn*, or *a relative*, to express Result.

**VELLUS AUREUM.**

**428.** Dum saeva noverca Phrixum et Hellēn caedere parat, subitō ē nūbibus pennātus ariēs vellere aureō appāruit, atque liberōs abstulit. Tum tantus erat furor novercae, ut ex altā rūpe in mare sē dēmitteret. Intereā ariēs super mare terramque ad orientem volābat. Sed ēheu! ad ōram Āsiaē, tam dēfessa erat Hellē ut praeceps in pontum incideret. Cui aquae usque ad hōc tempus nōmen est *Hellēspontus*. Phrixus autem incolumis in Colchida pervēnit. Hīc, ariete caesō, vellus aureum in silvā sacrā Martī suspendit. Quō ex tempore vellus aureum ingentī dracōne terribilī speciē custōdiēbātur. Nēmō tam fortis inventus est, quī ad dracōnem accēdere audēret.

**429.** 1. They were so exhausted that they did not reach the coast. 2. The ram appeared in order that the children might not be slain by their step-mother. 3. So fierce was the dragon that they did not dare approach the wood. 4. Jason will fly to Colchis in order to slay the dragon. 5. No one is so brave as to approach the fierce ram.

*Sight Translation.* IĀSONIS SOCIĪ.

**430.** Iāsōn autem tam cupidus glōriæ erat ut etiam hōc negōtiō nōn refugeret. Prīmum in omnis partīs lēgātōs mīsit, quī clārissimīs virīs persuādērent ut hōc iter facerent. Ad hōc Iūnō erat māgnō auxiliō Iāsonī. Nam dea tantam cupiditatem glōriæ virīs iniēcit ut multī ex omnibus partibus Græciæ convenīrent. In hōc numerō erant frātrēs geminī, Castor et Pollūx, atque Herculēs, fortissimus omnium mortālium; Orpheus, quī carminibus saxa silvāsque mōvisse dīcitur; et Meleager et Thēseus, dē quibus ante dēmōnstrāvimus, et multī aliī clārī virī. Aderat quoque quīdam Argus, quī summam scientiam nauticārum rērum habēbat. Intereā Iāsōn omnia, quæ sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvīs, comportārī iusserat. Postquam omnēs virī convēnērunt, Argō præcipiente, nāvem longam aedificāvērunt, quam ex nōmine dūcis *Argō* appellāvērunt.

**431.** 1. Cūr liberī ā novercā nōn caesī sunt? 2. Quid deinde fēcit noverca? 3. Quō volāvit ariēs? 4. Quid accidit ad ōram Āsiæ? 5. Quid fēcit Phrixus, ubi in Colchida pervēnit? 6. Quid vellus aureum custōdiēbat? 7. Cūr Iāsōn hōc negōtiō nōn refūgit? 8. Quid prīmum fēcit? 9. Quō

re-fuglō, *shrink from.* (Ref- dē-mōnstrō, *mention.* (Dem-  
uge.) onstrate.)

cupiditās, *eagerness.* (Cu- scientia, *knowledge,* SCIENCE.  
pidity) nauticus, NAUTICAL.

in-iciō, *infuse.* (Inject.) armō, *equip.* (Arm.)

numerus, NUMBER. com-portō, *collect.*

præ-ci-piō, *direct.* (Precept.)

modo erat Iūnō auxiliō Iāsonī? 10. Quī ex omnibus partibus Graeciae convēnērunt? 11. Quid intereā Iāsōn iusserat? 12. Quid primum virī fēcērunt?

## QUESTIONS.

**432.** In what respect do verbs in *-iō* differ from other verbs of the Third conjugation? Rule for clauses of Result. What is the negative? What negative is used in clauses of Purpose? What is meant by the Subjunctive of Characteristic? What is a Substantive clause of Result? Give an example of the Hortatory Subjunctive.

## LESSON XLV.

## Deponent Verbs; Verbs of Fearing; Quin Clauses.

**433.** Deponent verbs are Passive in form but Active in meaning. They are inflected in all conjugations as follows:

## Principal Parts:

<b>hortor,</b>	<b>hortārī,</b>	<b>hortātus.</b>	<b>sequor,</b>	<b>sequī,</b>	<b>secūtus.</b>
<b>vereor,</b>	<b>verērī,</b>	<b>veritus.</b>	<b>potior,</b>	<b>potirī,</b>	<b>potitus.</b>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	potiris (-re)
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potitur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potimur
	hortāmini	verēmini	sequimini	potimini
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

IMP.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	verītus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus eram	verītus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	verītus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMP.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potirer
PERF.	hortātus sim	verītus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus essem	verītus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

•	hortāre, etc.	verēre, etc.	sequere, etc.	potire, etc.
---	---------------	--------------	---------------	--------------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	verītus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse

## PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
PERF.	hortātus	verītus	secūtus	potītus
G'V'E.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

## VERBAL NOUNS.

GER.	hortandi, etc.	verendi, etc.	sequendi, etc.	potiendi, etc.
SUP.	hortātum, -ū	veritum, -ū	secūtum, -ū	potitum, -ū

a. Notice that the Future Infinitive is Active in form as well as in meaning.

b. Observe that Deponent verbs have all four participles. These have the same meaning as in any regular verb, except the **Perfect participle**, which means **having**, (not *having been*), thus:

PRES. hortāns, *exhorting*.

FUT. hortātūrus, *about to exhort*.

PERF. hortātus, *having exhorted*.

G'V'E. hortandus, *necessary to be exhorted, or exhorting*.

After studying **hortor** and **vereor**, inflect in like manner **mīror** and **mereor**.

NOTE.—Four verbs which are Active in the Present system become Deponents in the Perfect, and are called *Semi-deponent*. They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus, dare.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus, rejoice.

fidō, fidere, fisus, trust.

soleō, solēre, solitus, be wont.

#### 434. PURPOSE CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING.

1. Vereor ut vincat. *I fear that he will not conquer.*

2. Vereor nē vincat. *I fear that he will conquer.*

Observe that after verbs of *fearing* **ut** means *that not*, while **nē** means *that*. In accordance with this rule, example (1) may also be written thus:

Vereor nē nōn vincat. *I fear that he will not conquer.*

435. Rule **XLI**. Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē nōn**, meaning *that not*, or by **nē**, meaning *that*.



## 436.

## RESULT CLAUSES WITH QUĪN.

1. *Nōn dubitō quīn veniat.* I do not doubt that he will come.

2. *Nōn multum āfuit quīn interficerētur.* Not much was lacking but that he was killed, i.e., he was very nearly killed.

Notice that the Result clauses introduced by *quīn* are dependent on clauses containing the negative *nōn*.

437. **Rule XLII.** The Subjunctive with *quīn* may be used to express Result when the main clause contains or implies a negation.

## ARGONAUTAE.

438. Omnibus rēbus parātīs, Iāsōn et ēius sociī nāvem dēdūcunt. Mox Argonautae (nam ita appellātī sunt) portū prōvehuntur, terraeque urbēsque recēdunt. Posterō diē Pēlion et Ossam praetervehuntur. Procul aperītur Olympī altum cacūmen nive candidum. Hinc cursum ad dextram advertunt. Mox Athon relinquunt, et altum mare petunt. Iam īnsula Lēmnos appāret. Hīc paucōs diēs morātī, iterum nāvem solvunt. Posterō diē per Hellēspontum in Propontida vēctī, ad urbem rēgis Cyzici accēdunt. Hīc verēbantur ut benīgnē acciperentur. Rēx enim, quod cum finitimīs gentibus bellum gerēbat, omnīs aliēnōs ab urbe prohibēbat. Ac primō quidem nōn dubitāvit quīn Argonautae hostēs essent. Sed tandem certior factus quam ob causam vēnissent, eōs nōn modo in urbem accēpit sed etiam dōnīs onerāvit.

439. 1. I did not doubt that you would be kindly received. 2. We were afraid that his companions were not ready. 3. O that I had been informed why they came! 4. They are afraid that the neighboring nations will wage war with them. 5. We do not doubt that he will be delayed a few days.

*Sight Translation.* ARGONAUTAE ET CYZICUS.

440. Tum nāvem cōnscendunt et portū prōvehuntur. Sed eādem nocte subitō tanta tempestās coorta est, ut nāvis, Argonautīs īnscentibus, in eundem portum rēicerētur. Ubi igitur hī urbem intrāre cōnābantur, cīvēs, nōn dubitantēs quīn hostēs essent, in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Nec multum āfuit quīn Argonautae vincerentur. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācritur. Tandem cīvēs, dēfessī vulneribus, intrā moenia urbis sē recēpērunt. Prīmā lūce omnēs āgnōscunt sē nocte dēceptōs esse. Sed ēheu! in acervīs cadāverum rēx ipse repertus est. Deinde Argonautae māgnō dolōre adfectī, ingentem rogum strūxērunt, quem pīctīs vestibus et fulgentibus armīs decorant. In altō rogō corpus rēgis locant. Tum Iāsōn āversus facem admovet. Flammae mox omnia cōnsūmunt. Quō factō Argonautae maestī ex urbe ad nāvem discēdunt.

co-orior, *arise.*  
cōnor, *try.*  
dē-cipiō, *DECEIVE.*  
acervus, *heap.*  
cadāver, *corpse.*  
rogus, *funeral pyre.*

pīctus, *embroidered.* (Picture.)  
fulgēs, *gleaming.* (Re-fulgent.)  
āversus, *turned away.*  
(Averse.)  
ad-moveō, *apply.*

**441.** 1. Cūr Iāsōn et ēius sociī Argonautae appellātī sunt? 2. Quōs montīs prīmum Argonautae vīdērunt? 3. Ubi paucōs diēs morābantur? 4. Cūr verēbantur ut ā Cyzicō benīgnē acciperentur? 5. Quid fēcīt rēx? 6. Quid eādem nocte eīs accidit? 7. Ubi urbem intrāre cōnābantur, quid cīvēs fēcērunt? 8. Quī vīcērunt? 9. Quid primā lūce omnēs āgnōscunt? 10. Ubi rēx repertus est? 11. Quid fēcērunt Argonautae?

#### QUESTIONS.

**442.** What are Deponent verbs? In what respect do they differ from regular verbs? Give all the participles, Latin and English, of *polliceor*, *I promise*. How do you translate *ut* and *nē* after verbs of Fearing? When may *quā* clauses be used?

---

### LESSON XLVI.

**Ablative with Deponents; Accusative of Extent; Simple Conditions.**

**443.** Study *sequor* and *potior* in the preceding lesson; then write out synopses of *ūtor* and *mōlior*.

**444.** ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS.

1. *Carne et lacte vescuntur.* *They live on flesh and milk.*

2. *Castrīs potītī sunt.* *They got possession of the camp.*

Observe that *vescuntur* and *potītī sunt* are followed by the Ablative.

**445. Rule XLIII.** The Deponents *ātor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,* and *their compounds,* govern the Ablative case.

**446. ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.**

*Fossa quīnque pedēs alta. A ditch five feet deep.*

Notice that *quīnque pedēs* is in the Accusative case, and is the *extent* of the depth. It is therefore called the Accusative of Extent.

**447. Rule XLIV.** Extent of space is expressed by the Accusative.

**448. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.**

INDICATIVE.

SIMPLE PRESENT.

1. *Si cēdit, ignāvus est. If he yields, he is a coward.*

SIMPLE PAST.

2. *Si cessit, ignāvus fuit. If he yielded, he was a coward.*

MORE VIVID FUTURE.

3. *Si cēdet (cesserit), ignāvus erit.* { *If he yields (lit., shall yield or shall have yielded), he will be a coward.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

LESS VIVID FUTURE.

4. *Si cēdat, ignāvus sit. If he should yield, he would be a coward.*

CONTRARY TO FACT PRESENT.

5. *Si cēderet, ignāvus esset. If he were yielding, he would be a coward.*

CONTRARY TO FACT PAST.

6. *Si cessisset, ignāvus fuisset. If he had yielded, he would have been a coward.*

a. Notice that these sentences contain a *condition*, on which a *conclusion* is based.

b. In the first three sentences, nothing is implied as to the *truth* or *falsity* of the condition; if the condition is a fact, the conclusion follows as a fact. Hence the Indicative is used. Now compare the last three sentences.

c. Example (4) refers to the future, and vaguely suggests the possibility of the person's yielding. Example (5) distinctly implies that he *is not yielding*, and example (6) that he *did not yield*. In these sentences therefore the Subjunctive is used, the Present tense to suggest *mere possibility*, the Imperfect to imply *impossibility in the present*, the Pluperfect to imply *impossibility in the past*. (Compare the tenses in the Subjunctive of Wish.)

d. The six Conditions may be grouped according to their names, as follows :

Simple,	{ <i>Present.</i>	Indicative Present.
	{ <i>Past.</i>	Indicative Past.
Future,	{ <i>More vivid.</i>	Indicative Future or Future Perfect.
	{ <i>Less vivid.</i>	Subjunctive Present.
Contrary to Fact,	{ <i>Present.</i>	Subjunctive Imperfect.
	{ <i>Past.</i>	Subjunctive Pluperfect.

e. Observe that in *More vivid future* conditions the Latin marks the time with far greater precision than the English, using the Future or Future Perfect where we less accurately use the Present.

NOTE. — In Simple past conditionals, the Imperfect Indicative may be used to denote continued time in the past, as: *Sī cōdō-*

*bat, ignāvus erat. If he was yielding, he was a coward.* So also the Perfect Subjunctive is occasionally used in the condition of Less vivid future sentences, as: *Sī cesserit, ignāvus sit. If he should have yielded, he would be a coward.*

**449. Rule XLVI.** Simple and More vivid future conditions take the *Indicative*; Less vivid future conditions take the *Present Subjunctive*; Contrary to fact conditions take the *Imperfect Subjunctive* when they refer to present time, and the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* when they refer to past time.

#### LŪDĪ CIRCĒNSĒS.

**450. Circus Māximus** Rōmae erat tria stadia longus et ūnum stadium lātus. Undique erant sedīlia, quōrum in prīmīs senātōrēs equitēsque sedēbant; cētera sedīlia cīvibus Rōmānīs grātuīta erant. In alterā extrēmā parte erant **carcerēs**, ex quibus quadrīgae ēmittēbantur. In mediō cursū erat mūrus humilis duodecim pedēs lātus, **spina** nōmine, quī statuīs et columnīs ōrnātus est. Utrimque in extrēmā parte spīnae erat mēta, quam septiēs circumīre necesse erat.

Ex omnibus spectāculīs, **lūdīs Circēnsibus** Rōmānī māximē fruēbantur. Nec occāsiō dēerat. Multīs fēstīs diēbus erant pūblicī lūdī. Sī imperātor bene rēs gessit, Rōmae triumphum lūdīs ēgit. Sī quis creātus est curūlis aedīlis, māgnificō mūnere fūctus est. Etiam fūnera ēgregiōrum virōrum lūdīs celebrābantur. Diē cōstitutā, prīmā lūce multitūdō plēbis ad Circum properābat ut sedīlia occupārent. Multō ante tempus spectāculī omne sedīle tenēbātur.

Tandem sonus tubārum exaudītur, et mox māgnifica pompa, cōnsule dūcente, portam intrat.

**451.** 1. It will be necessary to go round a low wall, which is one stade long and three feet wide. 2. If this is a feast day, the Romans are enjoying the games at the Circus. 3. If I am (shall have been) elected curule aedile, I will exhibit magnificent games. 4. Were the walls of the Circus Maximus three stades long? 5. If the sound of trumpets has been heard, the Senators have taken their seats.

*Sight Translation.* LŪDĪ CIRCĒNSĒS. — *Concluded.*

**452.** Dēnique, omnibus rēbus parātīs, cōnsul mappam dēmittit, et statim ex carceribus quattuor quadrigae ēmittuntur. Aurigae stantēs currū vehuntur, et colōre vestis et currūs facile discernuntur. Iterum atque iterum fervidīs rotīs mētā stringunt. Iam ūltimum spatium ad carcerēs dēcurrunt. Aurigae prōnī vōce verbereque equōs concitant. Plausū fre-

mappa, napkin.

auriga, charioteer.

dis-cernō, distinguish. (Dis-cern.)

fervidus, glowing. (Fervid.)

rota, wheel. (Rotate.)

stringō, graze.

prōnus, leaning forward. (Prone.)

verber, whip, lash. (Re-verberate.)

con-citō, urge on. (Ex-cite.)

plausus, ap-PLAUSE.

fremitus, shouting, roaring.

linea, LINE.

pugillatiō, boxing. (Pugilist.)

lanista, trainer.

Myrmillō, a kind of gladiator.

Rētiārius, net-fighter.

fuscina, trident.

rēte, net.

Thrāx, gladiator in Thracian armor.

sica, dagger.

pollex, thumb.

premō, PRESS down.

mitūque secundō trāns **albam lineam** volant et vīctor amplum praemium accipit.

Saepe erant alia certāmina, cursūs pedum, lūc-tātiō, pugillātiō. Valdē grāta plēbī erat **vēnātiō**, in quā leōnēs, elephantī et cēterae ferae aut inter sē aut cum hominibus pūgnābant. Māximē Rōmānī spectāculō **gladiātōrum** fruēbantur. Hī in lūdīs gladiātōriīs ā lanistīs exercēbantur. Multīs gene-ribus tēlōrum ūtēbantur. **Myrmillōnēs** Gallicīs tēlīs armābantur. **Rētiārī** fuscina et rēte, **Thrācēs** sicā clipeōque pūgnābant. Ubi gladiātor volnerātus est, multitūdō 'hōc habet' conclāmābat. Sī ille bene pūgnāverat, **pollicēs premēbant** atque ita eī parcēbant. Sed sī **pollicēs vertērunt**, gladiātor ferrum accēpit.

453. 1. Quot stadia longus erat, Circus Māximus?  
2. Ubi erant sedīlia senātōrum? 3. Quid erat spīna?  
4. Quotiēs utramque mētā circumīre necesse erat?  
5. Quibus lūdīs Rōmānī māximē fruēbantur?  
6. Cūr primā lūce plēbs ad Circum properābat?  
7. Quādo pompa portā intrat? 8. Cūr cōsul mappam dēmittit?  
9. Quō modo aurīgae discernuntur? 10. Quid erat vēnātiō?  
11. Quō modo gladiātōrēs exercēbantur? 12. Ubi gladiātor volnerātus est, quid multitūdō conclāmābat?  
13. Quid faciēbant, sī bene pūgnāverat? 14. Quid accidit, sī pollicēs vertērunt?

#### QUESTIONS.

454. What verbs govern the Ablative? Give an example of the Accusative of Extent? Name six kinds of conditions. What mood and tense is used in each and why?



## LESSON XLVII.

## Compounds of Sum; Conditionals.

**455.** *Possu*m, compounded of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*, is inflected as follows :

Principal Parts : *possum*, *posse*, *potui*, *be able*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<b>PRES.</b> <i>I am able, can, etc.</i>			
possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possis	possitis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
<b>IMP.</b> <i>I was able, could, etc.</i>			
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent
<b>FUT.</b> <i>I shall be able, etc.</i>			
poterō	poterimus		
<b>PERF.</b> <i>I have been able, could, etc.</i>			
potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
<b>PLUP.</b> <i>I had been able, could have, etc.</i>			
potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
<b>FUT. PERF.</b> <i>I shall have been able, etc.</i>			
potuerō	potuerimus		

## INFINITIVE.

**PRES.** *posse, to be able.*      **PERF.** *potuisse, to have been able.*

## PARTICIPLE.

**PRES.** *potēns, -entis*, (used as an adjective), *powerful*.

*a.* Notice that *t* is changed to *s* before *s*, and *f* is dropped after *t*.

NOTE. — In *prōsum*, *I benefit*, compounded of *prōd* (old form of *prō*), *for*, and *sum*, the *d* is retained only before *e*, thus: *prōsum*, *prōdes*, *prōdest*, *prōdessem*, *prōfui*. Other compounds of *sum* are inflected like *sum*.

#### 456. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Carefully review all that is given in the preceding lesson on Conditional sentences. Name and translate the following:

(Remember that you can easily determine to which of the six classes any condition belongs by observing the *mood* and *tense* of the verbs.)

**SI** laudārēris, beātus essēs; **SI** laudāberis, beātus eris: **SI** laudāris, beātus es; **SI** laudēris, beātus sis; **SI** laudātus essēs, beātus fuissēs; **SI** laudātus es, beātus fuisti. Translate the following conditions into Latin: *If you were being praised, you were happy; if you were praised, you would be happy; if you should be praised, you would be happy; if you had been praised, you would have been happy; if you are praised, you are happy; if you are praised, you will be happy.*

#### HERCULĒS ET HYLĀS.

457. Iam Argonautae ōram Mȳsiae praetervehēbantur. Paulō post, ventō adversō, proxima litora petivērunt, et in terram ēgressi sunt. Ibi Herculēs cum Hylā, puerō pulcherrimā fōrmā, in silvam vēnātum īvit. Mox Hylās cervum videt, quem prōtinus īnsequitur. Ea rēs fēliciter ēvēnisset, si Herculēs puerum secūtus esset. At ille longius in silvam prōgreditur. Hylās autem celerem cervum volnerāre nōn poterat, ac diū sōlus in silvā errābat. Dēnique

ad fontem vēnit, ubi bibendī causā substitit. Sed Nympha fontis puerum pulcherrimum videt, atque eum, manibus eius collō iniectīs, ad īnum fontem dētrahit. Iam Herculēs ad lītus reverterat, sed nusquam Hylam reperire poterat. Veritus nē puer errāret, in silvam rediit. Āmēns hūc atque illūc currit et semper longius in silvam penetrat, sed frūstrā.

Intereā ventus sē verterat. Iam diū Argonautae impatiētēs morae erant. Māximē Tīphys gubernātor sic querēbātur, “Sī Herculēs et Hylās adessent, prōtinus proficīscī possēmus.”

458. 1. If he had advanced farther into the forest, he would have come to a spring. 2. If the stag was pursued by Hercules, it was wounded. 3. If you were impatient of delay, you would be complaining. 4. If he stops, he will be dragged down to the bottom of the spring. 5. If they should go into the forest to hunt, they could see deer.

#### PHĪNEUS ET HARPŶIAE.

459. Sed nec Herculēs nec Hylās vēnit. Tōtam noctem Argonautae eōs exspectābant. Prīmā lūce Iāsōn sic dīxit: “Nisi nostrī comitēs mox redierint, sine eīs proficīscēmur.” Tum diū eōs in omnīs partīs Argonautae petēbant. Dēnique maestī nāvem cōnscedunt et proficīscuntur. Haud ita multō post, ad terram vēnērunt, cūius rēx, Phīneus nōmine, gravissimō suppliciō adficiēbātur. Nam, quod hominibus

oc-cultus, *hidden, concealed.* morior, *die.* (Mortal.)  
(Occult.)

quāsdam rēs occultās aperuerat, eum deī oculīs privāverant, atque nūper Harpyiās in ēius terram dēmiserant. Haec duo mōnstra, quae capita hūmāna sed corpora avium habēbant, semper ab ipsō ōre rēgis cibum ēripiēbant. Ubi igitur Phīneus, quī nōn multum āfuit quīn famē morerētur, audīvit quī aliēnī essent, eōs in rēgiam arcessīvit. Nam sic sēcum putābat: “Sī hī virī cum Harpyiīs dīmicient, fōrtē eōs vincere possint.” Cāsū accidit ut duo ex Argonautīs, Zētēs et Calais, ālās habērent. Ubi igitur hī dē Harpyiīs audīvērunt, statim dīxērunt sē rēgem liberātūrōs esse. Epulīs parātīs, omnēs mēnsīs acumbunt. Mox mōnstra appārent. Sed Zētēs et Calais in aurās ascendunt, et impetum in ea faciunt. Diū et ācritēr pūgnātum est. Tandem duo virī Harpyiās vincunt et fugant.

460. 1. Ubi iam Argonautae erant? 2. Cūr in terram ēgressī sunt? 3. Quī in silvam vēnātum ivērunt? 4. Quid Hylae accidit? 5. Quid fēcit Herculēs? 6. Quis māximē querēbātur, quod nec Herculēs nec Hylās aderat? 7. Quam diū Argonautae comitēs exspectābant? 8. Quid tandem fēcērunt? 9. Quō modo deī Phīnea pūnīverant? 10. Quālia mōnstra erant Harpyiae? 11. Quī Harpyiās fugāvērunt?

#### QUESTIONS.

461. Give a synopsis of **possum**. Give the Imperfect Subjunctive of **possum** in full. How do the letters change in **possum**? In **prōsum**? Translate the following: **possis, potuisse, potueram, potuistis, potuerim, poterāmus**; *you (sing.) might be able, they are able, we might have been able, to be able, you (plur.) will have been able, they will be able.*

## LESSON XLVIII.

**Active and Passive Periphrastic Conjugations;  
Dative of Agent; Objective Genitive.**

**462.** The **Active Periphrastic** conjugation is made up of the *Future Active participle* and forms of the verb **sum**, as:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	amātūrus <b>sum</b> , <i>I am about to love.</i>	amātūrus <b>sim</b> .
IMP.	amātūrus <b>eram</b> , <i>I was about to love.</i>	amātūrus <b>essem</b> .
FUT.	amātūrus <b>erō</b> , <i>I shall be about to love.</i>	
PERF.	amātūrus <b>fui</b> , <i>I was about to love.</i>	amātūrus <b>fuerim</b> .
PLUP.	amātūrus <b>fueram</b> , <i>I had been about to love.</i>	amātūrus <b>fuissem</b> .
F. P.	amātūrus <b>fuerō</b> , <i>I shall have been about to love (rare).</i>	

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	amātūrus <b>esse</b> , <i>to be about to love.</i>	PERF.	amātūrus <b>fuisse</b> , <i>to have been about to love.</i>
-------	--	-------	---

**463.** The **Passive Periphrastic** conjugation is made up of the *Gerundive* and forms of the verb **sum**, as:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	amandus <b>sum</b> , <i>I ought to be loved.</i>	amandus <b>sim</b> .
IMP.	amandus <b>eram</b> , <i>I ought to have been loved.</i>	amandus <b>essem</b> .
FUT.	amandus <b>erō</b> , <i>it will be necessary that I be loved.</i>	
PERF.	amandus <b>fui</b> , <i>I ought to have been loved.</i>	amandus <b>fuerim</b> .

PLUP. *amandus fueram, it had been necessary that I be loved.*      *amandus fuisset.*

F. P. *amandus fuerō, it will have been necessary that I be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. *amandus esse, to be necessary to be loved.*      PERF. *amandus fuisse, to have been necessary to be loved.*

NOTE. — The difficulty of translating some tenses of the Passive Periphrastic conjugation arises from the fact that the English verb *ought* is defective. The student can always obtain the sense by using the meaning *necessary to be*, — as: *Hōc negotium suscipiendum fuit*, (lit., *this task was necessary to be undertaken*), *This task had to be undertaken.*

## 464.

## DATIVE OF AGENT.

1. *Hōc mihi faciendum est. This must be done by me.*

2. *Caesarī omnia erant agenda. Everything had to be done by Caesar.*

Observe that the Dative is used to denote the person on whom the necessity rests.

465. Rule XLVII. The Dative is used with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation to denote the person by whom the action is to be done. ♥

## 466.

## OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

1. *Amor patriae. Love of country.*

2. *Spēs salūtis. Hope of safety.*

Observe that the Genitives *patriae* and *salūtis* are objects of the feeling expressed by *amor* and *spēs* respectively. Hence the name Objective Genitive.

**467. Rule XLVIII.** Nouns of *action* and *feeling* are followed by the Objective Genitive.

**SYMPLEGADES.**

**468.** Argonautae, fugātis Harpȳiis, eō diē apud Phīnea mānsērunt. Rēx, grātus prō tantō beneficiō, Iāsonī dē periculīs, quae eī subeunda essent, multa praedixit. Posterō diē, nactī idōneam tempestātem ad nāvigandum, nāvem solvunt, et mox Pontum Euxīnum intrant. Hīc primum māgnus timor mentis omnium occupāvit. “Eheu!” dīxērunt “quantum aequor nōbīs lūstrandum est! At, eā rē bene gestā, nōn dubium est quīn in multō graviōra perīcula ventūrī sīmus. Nam etiam sī incolumēs in Colchida pervēnerimus, nūlla spēs erit nōbīs mōnstrī vincendī, quod nēmō adhūc etiam aggredī ausus sit.” Dum sīc queruntur, subitō terribilem fragōrem exaudiunt. Mox procul duās rūpīs ingentī māgnitūdine cernunt, quae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant. Tum sīc dīxit Iāson: “Illae sunt Symplēgades, dē quibus Phīneus mē praemonuit. Quae, sī quid in medium spatium venit, prōtinus incrēdibilī celeritātē concurrunt.”

**469.** 1. He will forewarn them about the monster, which must be conquered by Jason. 2. The Argonauts said that they would remain with the king that day. 3. If we had obtained suitable weather, we would have set sail. 4. We shall have to undergo this danger, if we intend to (are about to) arrive in Colchis. 5. There was no hope of sailing on the following day.

*Sight Translation.* SYMPLĒGADES. — *Concluded.*

470. Quā rē audītā, Argonautae perterriti sunt. Nec quidem multum āfuit quīn domum repetere cōstituerent. Quōs autem Iāsōn sic increpuit: “Ubi nunc, socii, est iste amor glōriae? Nōne incolumēs per tot perīcula cursum tenuimus? Revo-cāte animōs. Certē Iūnō in tantō discrīmine nōbīs nōn dēerit.” Vix dīcendī finem fēcerat, cum columbam in medium spātium intrāre vident. Prōtinus ingentēs rūpēs concurrunt. Sed tantā celeritāte columba volāvit, ut incolumis, caudā amīssā, ēvāderet. Tum Argonautae nōn dubitantēs quīn dea ipsa viam mōnstrāret, rēmīs incumbunt. Citius Notō volucrīque sagittā volat Argō in angustum fretum. Ingēns mōns aquae sequēns eōs obruere minātur. Iam utrimque rūpēs terribilī celeritāte concurrunt. Tum Argonautae summā contentiōne rēmīs prōcum-bunt. Prōsilit Argō per reliquum spatium atque intāctus in altum mare ēvādit.

471. 1. Quō modo Phīneus probāvit sē Argonautīs grātum esse? 2. Quandō māgnus timor mentīs

**in-crepō**, *chide, rebuke.*

**dis-crimen, crisis.** (*Discrimination.*)

**columba**, *dove.*

**cauda**, *tail.* (*Caudal.*)

**rēmus**, *oar.*

**in-cumbō**, *bend.* (*Incumbent.*)

**cito**, *quickly.*

**Notus**, *the south wind.*

**volucer, fleet, swift.**

**fretum**, *strait, channel.*

**minor**, *threaten.*

**ob-ruō**, *overwhelm.*

**con-tentiō**, *effort, exertion.*

(*Contention.*)

**prō-cumbō**, *bend forward.*

**prō-siliō**, *leap forward.*

**in-tāctus**, *untouched, INTACT.*



Argonautārum occupāvit? 3. Quid m̄ximē timēbant? 4. Quid subitō exaudiunt? 5. Quid mox cernunt? 6. Quid accidit, sī quid inter rūpīs vēnit? 7. Quis sōlus ex Argonautīs Symplēgadas nōn timuit? 8. Quam iam in medium spatium intrāre vident? 9. Quid deinde accidit? 10. Num Argonautae in angustum fretum intrāre audent? 11. Quid ēvēnit?

### QUESTIONS.

472. Of what does the Active Periphrastic conjugation consist? What is the Passive Periphrastic conjugation? What case is used to denote the agent with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation? How is the agent usually expressed with Passive verbs? Give an example of the Objective Genitive. Why is it so called?

## LESSON XLIX.

Irregular Verb *Eō*; Cum Temporal, Causal, and Concessive.

473. Principal Parts: *Eō*, *ire*, *ivī* or *ii*, *itūrus*, *go*.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	<i>eō</i>	<i>imus</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>eāmus</i>
	<i>is</i>	<i>itis</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eātis</i>
	<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>eant</i>
IMP.	<i>ibam</i>		<i>irem</i>	
FUT.	<i>ibō</i>			
PERF.	<i>ivī</i> or <i>ii</i>		<i>iverim</i> or <i>ierim</i>	
PLUP.	<i>iveram</i> or <i>ieram</i>		<i>ivissem</i> or <i>issem</i>	
F. P.	<i>iverō</i> or <i>ierō</i>			

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	ī            ite	PRES.	ire
FUT.	itō           itōte	PERF.	ivisse, or isse
	itō           euntō	FUT.	itūrus esse
PARTICIPLES.		GERUND.	
PRES.	iēns, euntis	eundī, eundō, eundum, eundō	
FUT.	itūrus		
PERF.	itum <sup>1</sup>	SUPINE.	
G'V'E.	eundus	Ac.	itum           Ab. itū

474.

CUM TEMPORAL.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<b>Nam in cēteris rēbus, cum venit calamitās, tum dēt- rimentum accipitur. For in everything else, the damage is received at the time when the disaster comes.</b>	<b>Cum Athēnis essem, Zēnō- nem audiēbam. I used to hear Zeno, when I was at Athens.</b>
<b>Cum Caesar vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Haedui. At the time when Caesar came, the Haedui were leaders of one faction.</b>	<b>Cum in fugā traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem incidit. While he was being dragged along in flight, he happened upon Caesar him- self.</b>
<b>Cum rosam viderat, tum incipere vēr arbitrābātur. When he had seen a rose, then did he think spring was commencing.</b>	<b>Cum pervēnisset, ea cōg- nōvit. When he had ar- rived, he ascertained these facts.</b>
	<b>Haec cum dixisset, prō- cēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs. After saying this, he pro- ceeded outside the fortifica- tions.</b>

a. In clauses introduced by *cum*, meaning *when*, if the writer wishes to emphasize *merely the time when*

<sup>1</sup> Used only impersonally.

an action is done, he uses the Indicative. If, however, he wishes to suggest further that one action *depends* on another, he uses the Subjunctive. Thus, in the first example above in the right hand column, the writer not only states that he heard Zeno *when* he was at Athens, but, by using the Subjunctive, he further suggests that his hearing Zeno *depended* on his being at Athens.

b. Since, however, *in narrating past events*, it is natural for a person to think of the *dependence* of one action on another, the Subjunctive is generally used in the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses, as seen in the examples above.

**475. Rule XLIX.** *In narration, cum, meaning when, is followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

**476.**

## CUM CAUSAL.

1. *Quae cum ita sint, discēdāmus.* Since these things are so, let us depart.

2. *Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī, obsidēs imperat.* Caesar, since he had decided to winter on the continent, ordered hostages to be provided.

## CUM CONCESSIVE.

3. *Cum cōsiliū tuū probārem, nihil prōficiēbam.* Although I approved your plan, I was accomplishing nothing.

4. *Cum primī ordinēs concidissent, tamen ācerriemē reliqui resistēbant.* Although the first ranks had fallen, still the rest resisted most fiercely.

Observe that in the first two examples, *cum*, meaning *since*, is followed by the Subjunctive. Likewise in the last two, *cum*, meaning *although*, is followed by the Subjunctive.

**477. Rule I.** *Cum causal* or *concessive* is followed by the Subjunctive.

### IĀSŌN ET MĒDĒA.

**478.** Multōs diēs Argonautae ad orientem prōvehēbantur. Tandem procul summa cacūmina Caucāsī cernunt. Prīmā vigiliā subeunt ōstia flūminis Phāsidos, quī per finīs Colchōrum fluit. Hīc, cum ad finem cursūs pervēnissent, tamen māgnō timōre adficiēbantur. Nam ad urbem māgnī rēgis appropinquābant. Māne Iāsōn, cum novem comitēs dēlēgisset, ad urbem profectus est. Quō ipsō tempore, fōrte Mēdēa, filia rēgis, catervā virginum comitante, sacrificandī causā ad lūcum Hecatēs ibat. Cuī igitur Iāsōn obviam īvit. Ille autem, cum incertus esset, quō via dūceret, ā Mēdēa viam ad rēgiā quaesivīt. Cuī Mēdēa moenia urbis mōnstrāvīt. Cum autem aliēnī discessissent, Mēdēa mīrābātur unde hī viri vēnissent, et māximē quis dux esset. Nam Iāsōn erat vir ēgregiā speciē, et reliquōs comitēs altīs umerīs superēminēbat.

**479.** 1. Since you are a stranger, I will show you the way. 2. Although they had entered the mouth of the river, they had not reached the end of their voyage. 3. When Medea was going toward the river, she met Jason. 4. Nine comrades must be selected by the leader, to accompany him to the palace. 5. On meeting him (when he had met him), he inquired where he was going.

## PERFIDUS RĒX.

480. Intereā Argonautae in rēgiam pervēnērunt, atque sine morā ad rēgem Aeētam admīssī sunt. Tum rēgī Iāsōn dīxit quam ob causam Argonautae in Colchida vēnissent. Rēx, cum rē vērā valdē irātus esset, tamen callidē respondit: ante omnia bellum cum frātre Persē sibi gerendum esse; hōc cōfectō, sē vellus aureum Argonautīs libenter trāditūrum esse. Iāsōn, cum hōc audīvisset, pollicitus est sē rēgī ad id bellum auxilium datūrum esse. Sine morā rēx cum suō frātre bellum gerere incipit. Omnibus in locīs Argonautae ingentem clādem hostium faciunt. Tandem Persēs, omnī spē rēgnī potiendī dēpositā, ē finibus rēgis exiit. Inde Iāsōn, cum bellum cōfectum esset, postulāvit ut vellus aureum sibi trāderetur. Cū sic respondit rēx: “Nōn iam tē morābor. Audī; tibi ostendam quae facienda sint. In finitimō campō sunt duo aripedēs et flammiferī taurī. Hī tibi prīmum iungendī sunt. Deinde, campō arātō, dentēs dracōnis serendī sunt.”

481. 1. Ad quod flūmen tandem Argonautae veniunt? 2. Cūr māgnō timōre adficiēbantur? 3. Quis posterō diē ad urbem profectus est? 4. Cū obviam īvit? 5. Quid Iāsōn ā Mēdēā quaesīvit? 6. Quid Mēdēā mīrābātur? 7. Nōne rēx irātus erat, cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent? 8. Quid rēx dīxit? 9. Fuēruntne

rē vērā, *in fact.*

polliceor, *promise.*

aeri-pēs, *bronze-footed.*

flammi-fer, *fire-breathing.*

arō, *plough. (Arable.)*

serō, *sow.*

Argonautae auxiliō rēgī in bellō? 10. Quid postulāvit Iāsōn, cum bellum cōfectum esset? 11. Quid respondit rēx?

## QUESTIONS.

482. Write out a synopsis of *ferō*, giving the Present Indicative and Subjunctive in full. Explain the use of moods with *cum* meaning *when*. Rule for *cum* in *narration*. Rule for *cum* *causal* and *concessive*. Translate the following: *ivērunt, eāmus, ī, eunt, ivisse, ibat, ivissētis*; *to go, he may have gone, they will go, you (singular) are going, I might go, we had gone*.

## LESSON L.

Irregular Verb *Ferō*; *Dum, Dōneco, and Quoad*; *Antequam* and *Priusquam*.

483. Principal Parts: *Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry*.

	ACTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		PASSIVE.
PRES.	<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>		<i>ferimur</i>
	<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris</i> or <i>-re</i>		<i>ferimini</i>
	<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>		<i>feruntur</i>
IMP.	<i>ferēbam</i>		<i>ferēbar</i>		
FUT.	<i>feram</i>		<i>ferar</i>		
PERF.	<i>tuli</i>		<i>lātus sum</i>		
PLUP.	<i>tuleram</i>		<i>lātus eram</i>		
F. P.	<i>tulerō</i>		<i>lātus erō</i>		

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>
IMP.	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferrer</i>
PERF.	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>
PLUP.	<i>tulissem</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fer <sup>1</sup>	fer <del>te</del>	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	———
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns	PERF.	lātus
FUT.	lātūrus	G'V'E.	ferendus

## GERUND.

G.	ferendī	Ac.	ferendum
D.	ferendō	Ab.	ferendō

## SUPINE.

Ac.	lātum
Ab.	lātū

## 484. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH DUM, DŌNEC, AND QUOAD.

## INDICATIVE.

*Dum haec geruntur, reliqui discesserunt. While these things were going on, the rest departed.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Rūsticus exspectat, dum dēfluat amnis. The countryman is waiting (lit. until the river shall flow by) for the river to flow by.*

a. Notice that when *dum* means *while*, and simply marks the fact that one action happens *during* another, the Indicative is used. The Present tense is preferred.

b. Observe, however, that when *dum* means *until*, and implies *purpose*, *doubt*, or *futurity*, it takes the Subjunctive.

NOTE. — *Dōnec* and *quoad* are used, though less frequently, in the same way.

<sup>1</sup> Four verbs drop final *-e* in the imperative; viz., *dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō*.

**485. Rule LI.** *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, implying *purpose*, *doubt*, or *futurity*, take the Subjunctive, otherwise the Indicative.

**486. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH ANTEQUAM AND PRIUS-  
QUAM.**

INDICATIVE.

*Neque prius* fugere dēstī-  
tērunt *quam* ad flūmen  
Rhēnum *pervēnērunt*.  
*They did not cease fleeing*  
*before they came to the*  
*river Rhine.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Priusquam* sē hostēs ex  
terrōre *reciperent*, in  
finis Suessiōnum exerci-  
tum dūxit. *Before the*  
*enemy could recover from*  
*fright, he led his army into the*  
*territory of the Suessiones.*

a. Notice that the Indicative is used with *priusquam* to denote simply that one action happened *before* another. (*Priusquam* may be separated by intervening words as in the example illustrating the use of the Indicative.)

b. Notice that the Subjunctive is used with *priusquam*, when any *further relation* exists. Thus in the example above there is an idea of *possibility*, as well as of *priority of time*.

**487. Rule LII.** With *antequam* and *priusquam* the Indicative is used to express mere *priority of time*, the Subjunctive to express any *further relation*.

POTENTISSIMUM UNGUENTUM.

**488.** Iāsōn, cum tyrannī verba audīvisset, irātus sic respondit: "Praeclāram vērō grātiam, Aeēta, nōbīs refers prō nostrīs tantīs beneficiīs! Ego tamen nōn sum is, quī perīculum vītet. Priusquam sōl



crāstinus occidet, aut tua iūssa cōnfēcerō, aut perierō.” Hīs verbīs discessit, et maestus ad sociōs sē contulit. Rēx autem valdē gāvīsus est, quod crēdidit nūllum mortālem flammiferōs taurōs domāre posse. Intereā Mēdēa incerta erat, quid faceret. Scīvit enim Iāsonem sine auxiliō perītūrum esse. Diū haerēbat. Tandem eī clam auxilium ferre dēcrēvit. Exspectāvit dum omnēs somnō sē darent. Tum priusquam vigiliae eam caperent, ex rēgiā ēvāsit, et ad flūmen pervēnit. Hīc subsistit incerta quid faciat. Subitō Iāsonem ipsum cernit. Ille enim quiēscere nōn potuerat, atque sōlus in rīpā vagābātur. Quem Mēdēa sic breviter appellat: “ Nē timē, Iāsōn. Ego sum Mēdēa, fīlia rēgis, quae vēnī ut tibi auxilium feram.” Hīs verbīs eī potentissimum unguentum dat, quod ipsa composuerat. Nam summam scientiam medicāmentōrum habēbat. Tum Mēdēa, cum Iāsonī explicuisset quō modo unguentō ūterētur, et quid deinde faciendum esset, ad rēgiam rediit.

489. 1. To-morrow's sun will set before you can subdue the fire-breathing bulls. 2. While she was escaping from the palace, the guards seized her. 3. They had come to bring her assistance. 4. His comrades departed before he could execute the king's commands. 5. She waited until Jason should bring her assistance.

*Sight Translation.* FLAMMIFERĪ TAURĪ.

490. Māne Iāsōn nūntium ad rēgem mīsīt, quī dracōnis dentīs referret. Deinde, cum suum corpus

armaque unguentō unxisset, cum Argonautīs ad campum proficiscitur. Hīc duōs ingentīs taurōs ex stabulīs ēmergere vident. Mox illī aliēnōs cernunt. Parumper stant, dum terram aereīs pedibus pulsant et flammās ē nārībūs expīrant. Tum horribilī mūgītū accēdunt. Iāsōn intrepidus stat, dum reliquī Argonautae sē in tūtiōrem locum recipiunt. Iam ferōcēs taurī in Iāsōnem invādunt. Subitō, mīrābile dictū! sistunt atque sē convertunt. Sed, priusquam effugerent, Iāsōn prōsilit, atque eōs comprehendit. Neque hī, cum summīs vīrībūs nīterentur, ēiūs manūs excutere poterant. Tandem perdomitī, sē iungī patiuntur. Deinde Iāsōn campum arat, ac draconīs dentīs sulcīs committit. Ex quibus venit mīra segēs armātōrum virōrum. Dē hīs autem Mēdēa Iāsōnem praemonuerat. Ille igitur sine morā in mediōs virōs suam galeam iniēcit. Quō factō, virī inter sē pūgnāre incēpērunt, atque mox ad ūnum caesī sunt.

491. 1. Recūsāvitne Iāsōn iūssa rēgis? 2. Cūr rēx gāvīsus est? 3. Cūr diū haerēbat Mēdēa? 4. Quid tandem fēcīt? 5. Quem in rīpā cernit? 6. Quid Iāsōnī dat? 7. Quid deinde Mēdēa facit? 8. Quō modo Iāsōn unguentō ūsus est? 9. Quid fēcērunt taurī, cum Argonautās cernerent? 10. Cūr

stabulum, stall, STABLE.

parum-per, for a little while.

pulsō, paw, beat. (Pulse.)

nārīs, nostril. (Nasal.)

ex-spirō, breathe out. (Ex-spire.)

sistō, stop. (De-sist.)

nītor, struggle.

patior, suffer, allow. (Patient.)

sulcus, furrow.

segēs, crop.

taurī sistunt priusquam ad Iāsonem pervenirent?  
 11. Quālis seges venit ex sulcīs? 12. Quō modo  
 Iāsōn armātōs virōs superat?

#### QUESTIONS.

492. Give a synopsis of *ferō*, Active and Passive, writing the Present Indicative of both voices in full. What tense of the Subjunctive of *ferō* is irregular? How does *dum* differ in meaning when used with the Indicative or the Subjunctive? When do *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad* take the Subjunctive? When do *antequam* and *priusquam* take the Subjunctive? Translate the following: *ferāmus, tulisse, ferēbāris, lātī essētis, ferrent, ferri, tulerit, feruntō, fert*; *I might have carried, you (plural) had been carried, to be about to be carried, we shall carry, he was carried, you (singular) may have been carried, to have been carried, thou shalt be carried.*

### LESSON LI.

Irregular Verbs *Volō, Nōlō, Mālō*; Subjunctive  
 in Indirect Discourse.

#### 493. Principal Parts:

**Volō, velle, volui, be willing, wish.**

**Nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling.**

**Mālō, mālle, mālui be more willing, prefer.**

#### INDICATIVE.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
	volt (vult)	nōn volt (nōn vult)	māvolt (māvult)
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	voltis	nōn voltis	māvoltis
	(vultis)	(nōn vultis)	(māvultis)
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

# IRREGULAR VERBS VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ. 195

IMP.	volēbam	nolēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nolam	mālam
PERF.	voluī	noluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nolueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	noluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nolim	mālim
	velis	nolis	mālis
	velit	nolit	mālit
	velimus	nolimus	mālimus
	velitis	nolitis	mālitis
	velint	nolint	mālint
IMP.	vellem	nollem	māllem
	vellēs	nollēs	māllēs
	vellet	nollet	māllet
	vellēmus	nollēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nollētis	māllētis
	vellent	nollent	māl lent
PERF.	voluerim	noluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	noluissem	māluissem

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	_____	nōlī	_____
	_____	nōlīte	_____
FUT.	_____	nōlītō, etc.	_____

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nolle	mälle
PERF.	voluisse	noluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nolēns	_____
-------	--------	--------	-------

a. NŌlō is compounded of the negative nē + volō.  
Mālō = mage (more) + volō.

## 494.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

The student will recall the general rule that verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving* are followed by the Infinitive with a subject-accusative. Examine the following examples:

## a. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

## DIRECT.

**Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, inter sē obsidēs dant.** *The Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, are exchanging hostages.*

## INDIRECT.

**Dicit Germānōs, qui trāns Rhēnum incolant, inter sē obsidēs dare.** *He says that the Germans, who dwell across the Rhine, are exchanging hostages.*

**Dixit Germānōs, qui trāns Rhēnum incolerent, inter sē obsidēs dare.** *He said that the Germans, who dwelt across the Rhine, were exchanging hostages.*

Observe that, in the Subordinate clause introduced by **qui**, the verb — which is in the Indicative mood in the Direct Discourse — becomes Subjunctive in the Indirect. Notice also that the rule for Sequence of Tenses holds good in Indirect Discourse.

## b. COMMANDS.

## DIRECT.

**Veni ad mē, si potes.** *Come to me, if you can.*

## INDIRECT.

**Respondet veniat ad sē, si possit.** *He replies that he may come to him, if he can.*

**Respondit veniret ad sē, si posset.** *He replied that he might come to him, if he could.*

Observe that the Imperative in the Direct Discourse is changed to the Subjunctive in the Indirect.

*Mild commands* with the *Hortatory Subjunctive* in Direct Discourse retain the Subjunctive in the Indirect, thus :

DIRECT.

*Redeat ad mē, cum volet.* Let him return to me, when he pleases.

INDIRECT.

<i>Respondet redeat ad sē, cum velit.</i> He replies that he may return to him, when he pleases.	<i>Respondit rediret ad sē, cum vellet.</i> He replied that he might return to him, when he pleased.
--	--

Notice that the First and Second persons in the Direct Discourse are usually changed to the Third person in the Indirect.

c. QUESTIONS.

DIRECT.

*Quid agam?* What am I to do?

INDIRECT.

<i>Respondet: Quid agat?</i> He replies: What is he to do?	<i>Respondit: Quid ageret?</i> He replied: What was he to do?
--	---

Most questions in connected speeches are *rhetorical*, i.e., they are asked for effect, and imply their own answer. They often suggest *a doubt*, and take the Subjunctive even in Direct Discourse, as in the example given above. In Indirect Discourse, such questions generally take the Subjunctive.

The conclusions to be drawn from the foregoing illustrations may be summarized as follows :

**495. Rule LIII.** In Indirect Discourse, the Subjunctive is used in **commands, questions, and in all subordinate clauses.**

#### MĒDĒAE FUGA.

**496.** Iāsōn, omnibus labōribus cōfectīs, cum sociīs ad nāvem rediit. Rēx autem, cum Iāsonem negōtium cōnfēcisse audīvisset, prīmum obstupuit, deinde in suam filiā saevīre coepit. Scīvit enim Mēdēam ūnam esse quae Iāsonī auxilium ferre potuisset. Cum tamen iam nox esset, statuit diem sibi expectandum esse. Dīxit autem sē prīmā lūce in perfidam filiā animadversūrum esse, quae suum patrem aliēnis prōdere voluisset.

Mēdēa, hīs minīs audītīs, vehementer commōta est. Scīvit enim Aeētā hominem esse barbarum et irācundum. Quid faceret? Nōn dubium esse quīn, sī in regiā manēret, sua vīta māgnō in periculō esset. Praetereā nisi Iāsōn dē cōnsiliīs rēgis certior faceretur, illum cum omnibus sociīs peritūrum esse.

Tālia in animō volvēns, diū incerta erat. Tandem fugere dēcrēvit. Iterum ē regiā ēlapsa ad rīpam flūminis pervēnit. Hīc Iāsonem invēnit. Ille enim eius adventum expectābat. Tum Mēdēa docuit ūnam esse spem salutis sī fugam experirentur; rēgem prīmā lūce cum omnibus cōpiīs ventūrum esse; sine morā in nāvem cōnscenderent et fugerent.

NOTE. — Before translating the following sentences into Latin, change the English into the Latin form. Thus the first sentence will read: *Medea knew Jason her arrival to be about to await.*

497. 1. Medea knew that Jason would await her arrival. 2. The king said that they might remain in the palace if they wished. 3. Jason knew that the king would be very angry, when he heard this. 4. They reply: What are they to do? If they remain, their lives will be in great danger. 5. Jason knows that Medea is the only (person) who can bring him assistance.

*Sight Translation.* MĒDĒA ET DRACŌ.

498. At Iāsōn respondit: Sē hōc modō nōlle discēdere. Num ad patriam sine vellere aureō, propter quod et ipse et fortēs sociī tot labōrēs pertulissent, redīre posset? Sē mālle morī quam, rē infectā, ex Colchide discēdere.

Inde Mēdēa Iāsonem sequī iussit; sē eum ad vellus aureum ductūram esse. Prōtinus virgō rapidō passū in dēnsam silvam penetrāvit. Iāsōn ducem subsequitur. Subitō Iāsōn ingentem flammam cōn-

**in-fectus**, unaccomplished.

**passus**, step, PACE.

**sub-sequor**, follow closely.

**vibrō**, gleam. (**Vibrate**.)

**rubor**, redness. (**Ruby**.)

**sanguineus**, blood-red.

**crista**, CREST.

**am-plector**, encircle.

**sibila**, hissings. (**Sibilant**.)

**horreō**, bristle.

**offa**, cake.

**mel**, honey.

**medicātus**, magic.

**sopōrātus**, sleep-causing.

**guttur**, throat. (**Guttural**.)

**pandō**, open, ex-PAND.

**humī**, on the ground.

**iaceō**, lie. (**Ad-jacent**.)



spicit. Tenebrae saevā lūce vibrant. Tum quaerit Iāsōn, “Quid est ille rubor? Quid tam subitō refulsit.” Cuī Mēdēa respondet eum dracōnis oculōs cōnspicere; illum sanguineīs cristīs sīc fulgēre. Brevī posteā Iāsōn ipse dracōnem cernere potest. Ille immēnsīs orbibus arborem amplexus, iam caput tollit et horrenda sībila ēmittit. Cuī Mēdēa, vidēns collum iam horrēre, offam melle et medicātīs frūgibus sopōrātam obicit. Ille ingēns guttur pandēns, offam corripit. Iamque mōnstrī altae cristae cadunt, atque caput et ingēns cervīx humī iacent.

499. 1. Quam rēx culpāvit, cum Iāsonem negotium cōnfēcisse audīvisset? 2. Quid dīxit rēx, sē primā lūce factūrum esse? 3. Quālis homō erat Aeēta? 4. Quid Mēdēa facere dēcrēvit? 5. Quem ad rīpam flūminis invēnit? 6. Quae Argonautīs erat ūna spēs salūtis? 7. Cūr Iāsōn hōc modō discēdere nōluit? 8. Ubi Mēdēa Iāsonem dūcit? 9. Quid subitō Iāsōn cōnspicit? 10. Iāsonī dē hōc rubōre quaerentī quid Mēdēa respondet? 11. Quid facit dracō, ubi Iāsonem cernit? 12. Quō modo Mēdēa effēcit ut dracō dormīret?

#### QUESTIONS.

500. In what clause is the Infinitive with Subject-Accusative used in Indirect Discourse? What mood is used in Subordinate clauses? How are *commands* and *questions* expressed? Give synopses of *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*, writing the Indicative Present in full. Translate the following: *nōluissētis, māvolt, volēmus, nōllēs, māluerint, voluisse, nōn vis, mālimus, nōlle*; *we were unwilling, you (singular) had wished, they might prefer, be ye unwilling, I preferred, you (plural) will have wished, to prefer, they will wish, they may wish, they might wish.*

## LESSON LII.

## Irregular Verb FĪŌ.

501. Principal Parts: FĪŌ, fierī, factus, *be made, become.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	fiō      fimus	fiam      fiāmus	
	fis      fitis	fiās      fiātis	
	fit      fiunt	fiat      fiant	
IMP.	fiēbam	fierem	
FUT.	fiam		
PERF.	factus sum	factus sim	
PLUP.	factus eram	factus essem	
F. P.	factus erō		

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	fī      fite	PRES.	fieri
FUT.	fitō      fitōte	PERF.	factus esse
	fiŋtō      fiuntō	FUT.	factum iri

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	factus	G'v'E.	faciendus
-------	--------	--------	-----------

a. FĪŌ is used as the Passive of faciō. Notice that the -ī is long, except before -er.

## VELLUS AUREUM.

502. Iāsōn, cum dēnique dracōnem dormīre vīdiset, māgnam arborem, sub quā ingēns mōnstrum extenditur, aspicit. Per rāmōs aurī fulgōrem cōspicit. Tum eī quaerentī viam, quā sē ad caput arboris ferret, Mēdēa respondet necesse esse eī arborem ascendere, sī praemiō potūrī velit. Nec mora fit. Sine ūllō sonitū dormientem dracōnem trānsilit, atque ad caput arboris ascendit. Iam avidus manum por-

rigit et vellus optātum corripit. Tum celeriter ex arbore dēscendit. Tacitī ipse et Mēdēa ab locō discēdunt, et per silvam vestīgia repetunt. Ubi vērō sociīs, quī anxio animō ducem exspectābant, per tenebrās aureus fulgor appāret, māgnus clāmor in caelum surgit. Iāsōn gaudēns ad rīpam incēdit, atque prius vellus aureum in puppim mittit. Deinde Mēdēae persuādet ut patriam relinquat et sēcum ad Thraciam proficiscātur. Prīmum virgō ire nōluit. Tandem autem Iāsōnī spondentī sē eam in mātrimonium ductūrum esse, cum prīmum in tūtum locum pervēnissent, concēdit. Tum laetī Argonautae nāvem solvunt et prīmā lūce ad ōstia flūminis appropinquābant.

503. 1. The Argonauts rejoiced when they saw the gleam of the golden fleece. 2. It will be necessary for you to go to the river, if you wish this to be done. 3. Jason replied that he could see the fleece in the branches of the tree, under which the dragon was sleeping. 4. Did Jason persuade Medea to leave her country? 5. You must climb the tree, if you wish to obtain the golden fleece.

#### REDITUS ARGONAUTĀRUM.

504. Intereā māne rūmor Argonautās discessisse per urbem volat atque mox ad aurīs rēgis venit. Ille suspicāns id quod erat, Mēdēam per rēgiam quaerit, sed nēquiquam. Inde furēns ad flūmen fertur. Iam rīpae cīvibus complentur, quī omnēs ūnam in partem spectant. Procul Aeēta puppim

nāvis cernit, quae iam ē cōspectū ēvehitur. Brevī posteā nūntius rēgem certiōrem fēcit, Argonautās cum Mēdēā et vellere aureō ex ēius manibus effūgissee.

Intereā Argonautae secundō ventō diem noctemque per undās volant. Cum tandem ad ōstia Histri pervēnissent, in terram ēgrediuntur et laetissimās nūptiās celebrant. Tum iterum nāvem solvunt. Per variōs cāsūs, per multa perīcula cursum tenent, et dēnique cum vellere aureō in portum Iōlcī invehuntur.

Multae aliae rēs ā Latīnīs scrīptōribus dē Iāsone et Mēdēā narrantur. Quās rēs autem discipulus ipse nunc Latīnē legere potest.

505. 1. Quid per rāmōs arboris Iāsōn cōspicit?  
2. Quid necesse erat eī facere ut vellere aureō potirētur? 3. Quid faciunt sociī ubi aureum fulgōrem cernunt? 4. Quid Iāsōn Mēdēae persuādet ut faciat? 5. Nōne Mēdēā ire volt? 6. Ubi primā lūce erant Argonautae? 7. Quī rūmor māne ad aurīs rēgis vēnit? 8. Quid fēcit rēx? 9. Dē quō mox certior factus est? 10. Ubi Argonautae nūptiās celebrant? 11. In quem portum dēnique invehuntur? 12. Ubi nunc discipulus ipse dē Iāsone et Mēdēā multās aliās rēs legere potest?

#### QUESTIONS.

506. How is *fiō* used? When is the -i of *fiō* long? Give a synopsis of *fiō*, writing the Present Indicative and Subjunctive in full. Translate the following: *factum erit, fieri, fiētis, facta essent, fi*; it may be done, to be about to be done, they might be done, having been done.

**auris**, ear. (**Aural**.)  
**Hister**, Danube river.

**Latīnē**, in **LATIN**.  
**legō**, read. (**Lecture**.)

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

507.

STEM.	I.		II.		III.			IV.		V.
	-a		M.	-o	Consonant	-i		-u		-ē
SINGULAR.	F.				M. & F.	N.		M.	N.	F.
	-a		-us, -er, and -ir	-um	-a <sup>1</sup> or —	—	—	-us	-ū	-ēs
	-ae		-i		-is			-ūs		-ēi
	-ae		-ō		-i			-ūi (-u)	-ū	-ēi
	-am		-um		-em	Nom.	-im (-em) Nom.	-um	-ū	-em
PLURAL.	-ā		-ō		-e		-i (-e)	-ū		-ē
	-i		-i		-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	-ārum		-ōrum		-um	-ium		-uum		-ērum
	-is		-is		-ibus	-ibus		-ibus		-ēbus
	-ās		-is		-a	-is (-ēs)	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	-is				-ibus			-ibus		-ēbus

## MODEL NOUNS.

STEM.	I.		II.		III.			IV.		V.
	-a		M.	-o	Consonant	-i		-u		-ē
SINGULAR.	F.				M. & F.	N.		M.	N.	F.
	-a		-us, -er, and -ir	-um	-a <sup>1</sup> or —	—	—	-us	-ū	-ēs
	-ae		-i		-is			-ūs		-ēi
	-ae		-ō		-i			-ūi (-u)	-ū	-ēi
	-am		-um		-em	Nom.	-im (-em) Nom.	-um	-ū	-em
PLURAL.	-ā		-ō		-e		-i (-e)	-ū		-ē
	-i		-i		-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	-ārum		-ōrum		-um	-ium		-uum		-ērum
	-is		-is		-ibus	-ibus		-ibus		-ēbus
	-ās		-is		-a	-is (-ēs)	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	-is				-ibus			-ibus		-ēbus

<sup>1</sup> Usually with euphonic changes.<sup>2</sup> Wanting, and stem usually undergoes euphonic changes.

TABLES  
OF  
DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

---

508.

## NOUNS.

## FIRST DECLENSION.—A STEMS.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. porta, <i>a gate.</i>	portae, <i>gates.</i>
G. portae, <i>of a gate, or, a gate's.</i>	portārum, <i>of gates, or, gates'.</i>
D. portae, <i>to or for a gate.</i>	portis, <i>to or for gates.</i>
Ac. portam, <i>a gate.</i>	portās, <i>gates.</i>
Ab. portā, <i>from, with, or by a gate.</i>	portis, <i>from, with, or by gates.</i>

509.

## SECOND DECLENSION.—O STEMS.

*slave (m.)   boy (m.)   field (m.)   man (m.)   temple (n.)*

## SINGULAR.

N. servus	puer	ager	vir	templum
G. servi	pueri	agri	virī	templī
D. servō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
Ac. servum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
Ab. servō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

## PLURAL.

N. servi	pueri	agri	virī	templa
G. servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
D. servis	pueris	agris	virīs	templis
Ac. servōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
Ab. servis	pueris	agris	virīs	templis

NOTE. — The Vocative Singular of Second Declension nouns in -us ends in -e, as : serve.

510. *fillus*, son (m.) -*auxilium*, aid (n.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	<i>fillus</i>	<i>filii</i>		<i>auxilium</i>	<i>auxilia</i>
G.	<i>filii</i> , -i	<i>filiorum</i>		<i>auxili</i> , -i	<i>auxiliorum</i>
D.	<i>filio</i>	<i> filiis</i>		<i>auxilio</i>	<i>auxiliis</i>
Ac.	<i>fillum</i>	<i>filios</i>		<i>auxilium</i>	<i>auxilia</i>
Ab.	<i>filio</i>	<i>filiis</i>		<i>auxilio</i>	<i>auxiliis</i>

NOTE. — The Vocative Singular of *fillus* is *filii*.

## 511. THIRD DECLENSION. — LIQUID STEMS.

*consul* (m.)    *legion* (f.)    *maiden* (f.)    *river* (n.)

## SINGULAR.

N.	<i>cōsul</i>	<i>legiō</i>	<i>virgō</i>	<i>flūmen</i>
G.	<i>cōsulis</i>	<i>legiōnis</i>	<i>virginis</i>	<i>flūminis</i>
D.	<i>cōsuli</i>	<i>legiōni</i>	<i>virgini</i>	<i>flūmini</i>
Ac.	<i>cōsulem</i>	<i>legiōnem</i>	<i>virginem</i>	<i>flūmen</i>
Ab.	<i>cōsule</i>	<i>legiōne</i>	<i>virgine</i>	<i>flūmine</i>

## PLURAL.

N.	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>legiōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
G.	<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>legiōnum</i>	<i>virginum</i>	<i>flūminum</i>
D.	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>legiōnibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>
Ac.	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>legiōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
Ab.	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>legiōnibus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>

512. *labor* (m.)    *father* (m.)    *body* (n.)    *race* (n.)

## SINGULAR.

N.	<i>labor</i>	<i>pater</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>genus</i>
G.	<i>labōris</i>	<i>patris</i>	<i>corporis</i>	<i>generis</i>
D.	<i>labōri</i>	<i>patri</i>	<i>corpori</i>	<i>generi</i>
Ac.	<i>labōrem</i>	<i>patrem</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>genus</i>
Ab.	<i>labōre</i>	<i>patre</i>	<i>corpore</i>	<i>genere</i>

## PLURAL.

N. labōrēs	patrēs	corpora	genera
G. labōrum	patrum	corporum	generum
D. labōribus	patribus	corporibus	generibus
Ac. labōrēs	patrēs	corpora	genera
Ab. labōribus	patribus	corporibus	generibus

## 513.

## MUTE STEMS.

<i>chief</i> (m.)	<i>king</i> (m.)	<i>judge</i> (m.)
SINGULAR.		
N. princeps	rēx	iūdex
G. principis	rēgis	iūdicis
D. principī	rēgī	iūdicī
Ac. principem	rēgem	iūdicem
Ab. principe	rēge	iūdice

## PLURAL.

N. principēs	rēgēs	iūdicēs
G. principum	rēgum	iūdicum
D. principibus	rēgibus	iūdicibus
Ac. principēs	rēgēs	iūdicēs
Ab. principibus	rēgibus	iūdicibus

514. *soldier* (m.)*guard* (m.)*head* (m.)

## SINGULAR.

N. miles	custōs	caput
G. militis	custōdis	capitis
D. militi	custōdī	capiti
Ac. militem	custōdem	caput
Ab. milite	custōde	capite

## PLURAL.

N. milītēs	custōdēs	capita
G. militum	custōdum	capitum
D. militibus	custōdibus	capitibus
Ac. milītēs	custōdēs	capita
Ab. militibus	custōdibus	capitibus



## 515.

## I STEMS.

## a. Masculines and Feminines in -is and -ēs.

*cough* (f.) *ship* (f.)      *fire* (m.)    *enemy* (m.) *cloud* (f.)

## SINGULAR.

N.	tussis	nāvis	ignis	hostis	nūbēs
G.	tussis	nāvis	ignis	hostis	nūbis
D.	tussi	nāvi	igni	hosti	nūbi
Ac.	tussim	nāvem (-im)	ignem	hostem	nūbem
Ab.	tussi	nāvi (-e)	igni (-e)	hoste	nūbe

## PLURAL.

N.	tussēs	nāvēs	ignēs	hostēs	nūbēs
G.	tussium	nāvium	ignium	hostium	nūbium
D.	tussibus	nāvibus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus
Ac.	tussis (-ēs)	nāvis (-ēs)	ignis (-ēs)	hostis (-ēs)	nūbis (-ēs)
Ab.	tussibus	nāvibus	ignibus	hostibus	nūbibus

## b. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

*sea* (n.)                      *animal* (n.)                      *spur* (n.)

## SINGULAR.

N.	mare	animal	calcar
G.	maris	animālis	calcāris
D.	marī	animālī	calcārī
Ac.	mare	animal	calcar
Ab.	marī	animālī	calcārī

## PLURAL.

N.	maria	animālia	calcāria
G.	marium	animālium	calcārium
D.	maribus	animālībus	calcārībus
Ac.	maria	animālia	calcāria
Ab.	maribus	animālībus	calcārībus

516.

## MIXED STEMS.

*city* (f.)      *citadel* (f.)      *bridge* (m.)      *age* (f.)

## SINGULAR.

N.	<i>urbs</i>	<i>arx</i>	<i>pōns</i>	<i>aetās</i>
G.	<i>urbis</i>	<i>arcis</i>	<i>pontis</i>	<i>aetātis</i>
D.	<i>urbī</i>	<i>arci</i>	<i>pontī</i>	<i>aetātī</i>
Ac.	<i>urbem</i>	<i>arcem</i>	<i>pontem</i>	<i>aetātem</i>
Ab.	<i>urbe</i>	<i>arce</i>	<i>ponte</i>	<i>aetāte</i>

## PLURAL.

N.	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>arcēs</i>	<i>pontēs</i>	<i>aetātēs</i>
G.	<i>urbium</i>	<i>arcium</i>	<i>pontium</i>	<i>aetātium</i> (-um)
D.	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>arcibus</i>	<i>pontibus</i>	<i>aetātibus</i>
Ac.	<i>urbis</i> (-ēs)	<i>arcis</i> (-ēs)	<i>pontis</i> (-ēs)	<i>aetātis</i> (-ēs)
Ab.	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>arcibus</i>	<i>pontibus</i>	<i>aetātibus</i>

517.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.—U STEMS.

*exercitus, army* (m.)*cornū, horn* (n.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	<i>exercitus</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
G.	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>exercituum</i>	<i>cornūs</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
D.	<i>exercitūī</i> (-ū)	<i>exercitibus</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
Ac.	<i>exercitum</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
Ab.	<i>exercitū</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

518.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.—E STEMS.

*diēs, day* (m.)*rēs, thing* (f.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
G.	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
D.	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
Ac.	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
Ab.	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

## 519.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

<i>god (m.)</i>	<i>house (f.)</i>	<i>strength (f.)</i>
SINGULAR.		
N. <i>deus</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>vis</i>
G. <i>dei</i>	<i>domūs (-ī, loc.)</i>	<i>vis</i>
D. <i>deō</i>	<i>domui (-ō)</i>	<i>vi</i>
Ac. <i>deum</i>	<i>domum</i>	<i>vim</i>
Ab. <i>deō</i>	<i>domō (-ū)</i>	<i>vi</i>
PLURAL.		
N. <i>dei, dii, di</i>	<i>domūs</i>	<i>virēs</i>
G. <i>deōrum, deūm</i>	<i>domuum (-ōrum)</i>	<i>virium</i>
D. <i>deīs, diis, diis</i>	<i>domibus</i>	<i>viribus</i>
Ac. <i>deōs</i>	<i>domōs (-ūs)</i>	<i>virēs</i>
Ab. <i>deīs, diis, diis</i>	<i>domibus</i>	<i>viribus</i>

## 520.

## GREEK NOUNS.

NOTE. — *These are given for reference only. All the irregular forms of Greek nouns occurring in the text will be found in the Vocabulary.*

DEC. I.	DECLENSION II.	DEC. III.
SINGULAR.		
N. <i>Hellē</i>	<i>Naxos</i>	<i>Perseus</i>
G. <i>Hellēs</i>	<i>Naxī</i>	<i>Persei (-eos)</i>
D. <i>Hellae</i>	<i>Naxō</i>	<i>Propontidis (-idos)</i>
Ac. <i>Hellēn</i>	<i>Naxon (-um)</i>	<i>Propontidi</i>
Ab. <i>Hellē (-ā)</i>	<i>Naxō</i>	<i>Propontida</i>
		<i>Propontide</i>

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.

SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
M.	F.	M.	F.	M.	F.
bonus	bona	miser	miserā	rubr	rubra
boni	bonae	miseri	miseræ	rubri	rubrae
bonō	bonae	miserū	miseræ	rubrō	rubrae
bonum	bonam	miserū	miseram	rubrum	rubram
bonō	bonā	miserō	miserā	rubrō	rubrā
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.
boni	bonae	miseri	miseræ	rubri	rubrae
bonorum	bonarum	miserorum	miserarum	rubrorum	rubrarum
bonis	bonis	miseris	miseris	rubris	rubris
bonās	bonās	miserōs	miserās	rubrōs	rubrās
bonis	bonis	miseris	miseris	rubris	rubris

The following nine adjectives have -ius in the Genitive Singular in all genders, and -i in the Dative: alius, solus, totus, unus, nullus, nullus, alter, uter, neuter.

## THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.

Three Terminations.		Two Terminations.		One Termination.	
SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
M.	F.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
acer	acris	fortis	forte	mellior	prūdēns
	acris	fortis	forti	mellioris	prudentis
	acri	forti	forti	melliori	prudenti
acrem	acrem	fortem	forte	mellorem	prudentem
	acri	forti	forti	mellōre (-i)	prudenti (-e)
	PLURAL.		PLURAL.		PLURAL.
acerēs	acerēs	fortēs	fortia	mellōrēs	prudentēs
	acrum	fortium	fortibus	mellōrum	prudentium
	acribus	fortibus	fortibus	mellōribus	prudentibus
acris (-ēs)	acris (-ēs)	fortis (-ēs)	fortia	mellōrēs (-is)	prudentis (-ēs)
	acribus	fortibus	fortibus	mellōribus	prudentibus

## ADJECTIVES.

522.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

**bonus, bona, bonum, good.**

## SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. bonus	bona	bonum
G. bonī	bonae	bonī
D. bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac. bonum	bonam	bonum
Ab. bonō	bonā	bonō

## PLURAL.

N. bonī	bonae	bona
G. bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D. bonis	bonis	bonis
Ac. bonos	bonas	bona
Ab. bonis	bonis	bonis

**miser, misera, miserum, wretched.**

## SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. miser	misera	miserum
G. miserī	miserae	miserī
D. miserō	miserae	miserō
Ac. miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab. miserō	miserā	miserō

## PLURAL.

N. miserī	miserae	misera
G. miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D. miseris	miseris	miseris
Ac. miseros	miserās	misera
Ab. miseris	miseris	miseris

**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful.**

SINGULAR.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G. pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D. pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac. pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab. pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

  

PLURAL.		
N. pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G. pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D. pulchrīs	pulchris	pulchris
Ac. pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab. pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

523.

THIRD DECLENSION.—I STEMS.

**ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris			ācrium	
D.	ācrī			ācribus	
Ac. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
Ab.	ācrī			ācribus	

**fortis, forte, brave.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.	
N. fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia	
G.	fortis		fortium	
D.	forti		fortibus	
Ac. fortem	forte	fortīs (-ēs)	fortia	
Ab.	forti		fortibus	

## 524.

## CONSONANT STEMS.

*audāx, daring.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.	
N. <i>audāx</i>		<i>audācēs</i>		<i>audācia</i>
G. <i>audācis</i>			<i>audācium</i>	
D. <i>audāci</i>			<i>audācibus</i>	
Ac. <i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācis (-ēs)</i>		<i>audācia</i>
Ab. <i>audāci (-e)</i>			<i>audācibus</i>	

*prūdēns, prudent.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.	
N. <i>prūdēns</i>		<i>prudentēs</i>		<i>prudentia</i>
G. <i>prudentis</i>			<i>prudentium</i>	
D. <i>prudenti</i>			<i>prudentibus</i>	
Ac. <i>prudentem</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prudentis (-ēs)</i>		<i>prudentia</i>
Ab. <i>prudenti (-e)</i>			<i>prudentibus</i>	

## 525.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

*alius, alia, aliud, another.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. <i>alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>aliae</i>	<i>alia</i>
G. <i>alius</i>			<i>aliōrum</i>	<i>aliārum</i>	<i>aliōrum</i>
D. <i>alii</i>			<i>aliīs</i>		
Ac. <i>alium</i>	<i>aliam</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>aliōs</i>	<i>aliās</i>	<i>alia</i>
Ab. <i>aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>aliīs</i>		

*ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one.**tōtus, tōta, tōtum, whole.*

SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N. <i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
G. <i>ūnius</i>			<i>tōtius</i>		
D. <i>ūni</i>			<i>tōtī</i>		
Ac. <i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>tōtam</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
Ab. <i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtō</i>

duo, duae, duo, *two*.trēs, tria, *three*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	N.
N.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum		trium
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus		tribus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trīs (trēs)	tria
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus		tribus

## 526. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

lātior, lātius, *wider*.plūs, *more*.

## SINGULAR.

	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
N.	lātior	lātius	—	plūs
G.	lātiōris		—	plūris
D.	lātiōrī		—	—
Ac.	lātiōrem	lātius	—	plūs
Ab.	lātiōre or -ī		—	plūre

## PLURAL.

N.	lātiōrēs	lātiōra	plūrēs	plūra
G.	lātiōrum		plūrium	
D.	lātiōribus		plūribus	
Ac.	lātiōrēs (-īs)	lātiōra	plūris (-ēs)	plūra
Ab.	lātiōribus		plūribus	

## 527. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

## ADJECTIVES IN -lis.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	facilior, -ius.	facillimus, -a, -um.
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> .	difficilior, -ius.	difficillimus, -a, -um.
similis, -e, <i>like</i> .	similior, -ius.	simillimus, -a, -um.
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior, -ius.	dissimillimus, -a, -um.
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior, -ius.	gracillimus, -a, -um.
humilis, -e, <i>low</i> .	humilior, -ius.	humillimus, -a, -um.



## ADJECTIVES WITH DOUBLE SUPERLATIVE.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>exterus,</b> <i>outward.</i>	<b>exterior,</b> <i>outer.</i>	<b>extrēmus, extimus,</b> <i>outmost.</i>
<b>inferus,</b> <i>low.</i>	<b>inferior,</b> <i>lower.</i>	<b>īnīmus, īmus,</b> <i>lowest.</i>
<b>posterus,</b> <i>following.</i>	<b>posterior,</b> <i>later.</i>	<b>postrēmus, postumus,</b> <i>last.</i>
<b>superus,</b> <i>upper.</i>	<b>superior,</b> <i>higher.</i>	<b>suprēmus, summus,</b> <i>top of, highest.</i>

## ADJECTIVES WITH NO POSITIVE.

[ <b>cis, citrā,</b> adv., <i>on this side.</i> ]	<b>citerior,</b> <i>hither.</i>	<b>citimus,</b> <i>hithermost.</i>
[ <b>in, intrā,</b> prep., <i>in, within.</i> ]	<b>interior,</b> <i>inner.</i>	<b>intimus,</b> <i>inmost.</i>
[ <b>prae, prō,</b> prep., <i>before.</i> ]	<b>prior, former.</b>	<b>primus, first.</b>
[ <b>prope,</b> adv., <i>near.</i> ]	<b>propior, nearer.</b>	<b>proximus, next.</b>
[ <b>ultrā,</b> adv., <i>beyond.</i> ]	<b>ulterior, farther.</b>	<b>ūltimus, farthest.</b>

## ADJECTIVES IRREGULAR THROUGHOUT.

<b>bonus, good.</b>	<b>melior, better.</b>	<b>optimus, best.</b>
<b>malus, bad.</b>	<b>pēior, worse.</b>	<b>pessimus, worst.</b>
<b>māgnus, great.</b>	<b>māior, greater.</b>	<b>māximus, greatest.</b>
<b>parvus, small.</b>	<b>minor, smaller.</b>	<b>minimus, smallest.</b>
<b>multus, much.</b>	——, <b>plūs, more.</b>	<b>plūrimus, most.</b>
<b>multi, many.</b>	<b>plūrēs, more.</b>	<b>plūrimī, most.</b>

## 528.

## NUMERALS.

## CARDINALS.

1. **ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one.**
2. **duo, duae, duo, two.**
3. **trēs, tria, three.**
4. **quattuor**
5. **quīque**
6. **sex**
7. **septem**

## ORDINALS.

- prīmus, first.**
- secundus, second.**
- tertius, third.**
- quartus**
- quīntus**
- sextus**
- septimus**

## CARDINALS.

8. octō  
 9. novem  
 10. decem  
 11. ūndecim  
 12. duodecim  
 13. tredecim  
 14. quattuordecim  
 15. quīndecim  
 16. sēdecim  
 17. septendecim  
 18. duodēvigintī  
 19. ūndēvigintī  
 20. vīgintī  
 21. vīgintī ūnus or  
     ūnus et vīgintī  
 28. duodētrīgintā  
 29. ūndētrīgintā  
 30. trīgintā  
 40. quadrāgintā  
 50. quīnquāgintā  
 60. sexāgintā  
 70. septuāgintā  
 80. octōgintā  
 90. nōnāgintā  
 100. centum  
 101. centum ūnus or  
     centum et ūnus  
 200. ducentī, -ae, -a  
 300. trecentī, -ae, -a  
 400. quadringentī, -ae, -a  
 500. quīngentī, -ae, -a  
 600. sēscentī, -ae, -a  
 700. septingentī, -ae, -a  
 800. octingentī, -ae, -a  
 900. nōngentī, -ae, -a  
 1,000. mīlle  
 2,000. duo mīlia  
 100,000. centum mīlia  
 1,000,000. deciēs centēna mīlia

## ORDINALS.

- octāvus  
 nōnus  
 decimus  
 ūndecimus  
 duodecimus  
 tertius decimus  
 quartus decimus  
 quīntus decimus  
 sextus decimus  
 septimus decimus  
 duodēvigēsīmus  
 ūndēvigēsīmus  
 vigēsīmus  
 vigēsīmus prīmus or  
     ūnus et vigēsīmus  
 duodētrīgēsīmus  
 ūndētrīgēsīmus  
 trīgēsīmus  
 quadrāgēsīmus  
 quīnquāgēsīmus  
 sexāgēsīmus  
 septuāgēsīmus  
 octōgēsīmus  
 nōnāgēsīmus  
 centēsīmus  
 centēsīmus prīmus or  
     ūnus et centēsīmus  
 ducentēsīmus  
 trecentēsīmus  
 quadringentēsīmus  
 quīngentēsīmus  
 sēscentēsīmus  
 septingentēsīmus  
 octingentēsīmus  
 nōngentēsīmus  
 mīllēsīmus  
 bis mīllēsīmus  
 centiēs mīllēsīmus  
 deciēs centiēs mīllēsīmus

## 529.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

FIRST PERSON.		SECOND PERSON.	REFLEXIVE.
		SINGULAR.	
N.	ego	tū	_____
G.	meī	tui	sui
D.	mihi	tibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	tē	sē or sēsē
Ab.	mē	tē	sē or sēsē
		PLURAL.	
N.	nōs	vōs	_____
G.	nostrum or nostri	vestrum or vestri	sui
D.	nōbis	vōbis	sibi
Ac.	nōs	vōs	sē or sēsē
Ab.	nōbis	vōbis	sē or sēsē

## 530.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

hic, this.					
SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae
G.		hūius		hōrum	hārum
D.		huic			his
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc		his
ille, that.					
N.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae
G.		illius		illōrum	illārum
D.		illi			illis
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās
Ab.	illō	illā	illō		illis
is, this, that.					
N.	is	ea	id	eī (ī)	eae
G.		ēius		eōrum	eārum
D.		eī			eīs (īs)

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
Ac. eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab. eō	eā	eō		eis (iis)	

*idem, the same.*

N. idem	eadem	idem	eidem (iīdem)	eaedem	eadem
G.	eīusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eidem			eisdem (iisdem)	
Ac. eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab. eōdem	eādem	eōdem		eisdem (iisdem)	

*ipse, self.*

N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsius		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsi			ipsis	
Ac. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		ipsis	

### 531. RELATIVE PRONOUN.

*quī, who, which.*

N. quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui			quibus	
Ac. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab. quō	quā	quō		quibus	

### 532. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

N. { quis	quae { quid	quī	quae	quae
qui	quod			
G.	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui		quibus	
Ac. quem	quam { quid	quōs	quās	quae
	quod			
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quibus	

## 533.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*aliquis, some one.*

## SINGULAR.

N.	<b>aliquis (-qui)</b>	<b>aliqua</b>	<b>aliquid (-quod)</b>
G.		<b>alicūius</b>	
D.		<b>alicui</b>	
Ac.	<b>aliquem</b>	<b>aliquam</b>	<b>aliquid (-quod)</b>
Ab.	<b>aliquō</b>	<b>aliquā</b>	<b>aliquō</b>

## PLURAL.

N.	<b>aliqui</b>	<b>aliquae</b>	<b>aliqua</b>
G.	<b>aliquōrum</b>	<b>aliquārum</b>	<b>aliquōrum</b>
D.		<b>ali'quibus</b>	
Ac.	<b>aliquōs</b>	<b>aliquās</b>	<b>aliqua</b>
Ab.		<b>ali'quibus</b>	

*quidam, certain one.*

## SINGULAR.

N.	<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quiddam (quoddam)</b>
G.		<b>cūius'dam</b>	
D.		<b>cuidam</b>	
Ac.	<b>quendam</b>	<b>quandam</b>	<b>quiddam (quoddam)</b>
Ab.	<b>quōdam</b>	<b>quādam</b>	<b>quōdam</b>

## PLURAL.

N.	<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>
G.	<b>quōrun'dam</b>	<b>quārun'dam</b>	<b>quōrun'dam</b>
D.		<b>quibus'dam</b>	
Ac.	<b>quōsdam</b>	<b>quāsdam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>
Ab.		<b>quibus'dam</b>	

## REGULAR VERBS.

## First Conjugation.

534. Principal Parts : amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.

*Stem amā-*.

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT.

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.**I am loved, etc.*

amō	amāmus	amor	amāmur
amās	amātis	amāris or -re	amāminī
amat	amant	amātur	amantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

amābam	amābāmus	amābar	amābāmur
amābās	amābātis	amābāris or -re	amābāminī
amābat	amābant	amābātur	amābantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall love, etc.**I shall be loved, etc.*

amābō	amābimus	amābor	amābimur
amābis	amābitis	amāberis or -re	amābiminī
amābit	amābunt	amābitur	amābuntur

## PERFECT.

*I loved, have loved, etc.**I was or have been loved, etc.*

amāvī	amāvimus	amātus {	sum	amāti {	sumus
amāvisti	amāvistis		es		estis
amāvit	amāvērunt (-re)		est		sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I had loved, etc.*

amāveram	amāverāmus
amāverās	amāverātis
amāverat	amāverant

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I had been loved, etc.*

amātus	{ eram	amāti	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō	amāverimus	amātus	{ erō	amāti	{ erimus
amāveris	amāveritis		{ eris		{ eritis
amāverit	amāverint		{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

amem	amēmus	amer	amēmur
amēs	amētis	amēris or -re	amēmini
amet	ament	amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

amārem	amārēmus	amārer	amārēmur
amārēs	amārētis	amārēris or -re	amārēmini
amāret	amārent	amārētur	amārentur

## PERFECT.

amāverim	amāverimus	amātus	{ sim	amāti	{ simus
amāveris	amāveritis		{ sis		{ sitis
amāverit	amāverint		{ sit		{ sint

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvīissem	amāvīissēmus	amātus	{ essem	amāti	{ essēmus
amāvīissēs	amāvīissētis		{ essēs		{ essētis
amāvīisset	amāvīissent		{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*amāre, *be thou loved.*amāte, *love ye.*amāmini, *be ye loved.*

## FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*amātō, *he shall love.*amātor, *he shall be loved.*amātōte, *ye shall love.*amantō, *they shall love.*amantor, *they shall be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.*amārī, *to be loved.*PERF. amāvissē, *to have loved.*amātus, -a, -um esse, *to have been loved.*FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um esse, *to be about to love.*amātum irī, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *having been loved.*FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*G'V'E. amandus, -a, -um, *necessary to be loved, or loving.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

G. amandī, *of loving.*Ac. amātum, *to love.*D. amandō, *for loving.*Ab. amātū, *to love.*Ac. amandum, *loving.*Ab. amandō, *by loving.*



## 535. Second Conjugation.

Principal Parts : moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, warn.

Stem monē-.

ACTIVE VOICE.		INDICATIVE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
		PRESENT.	
<i>I warn, etc.</i>		<i>I am warned, etc.</i>	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris or -re	monēmini
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

## IMPERFECT.

<i>I warned, was warning, etc.</i>		<i>I was warned, etc.</i>	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris or -re	monēbāmini
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

## FUTURE.

<i>I shall warn, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be warned, etc.</i>	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis or -re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

## PERFECT.

<i>I warned, have warned, etc.</i>		<i>I was or have been warned, etc.</i>	
monuī	monuimus	monitus {	moniti {
monuisti	monuistis		
monuit	monuērunt (-re)		
		sum	sumus
		es	estis
		est	sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

<i>I had warned, etc.</i>		<i>I had been warned, etc.</i>	
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus {	moniti {
monuerās	monuerātis		
monuerat	monuerant		
		eram	erāmus
		erās	erātis
		erat	erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I shall have warned, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I shall have been warned, etc.*

monitus	{ erō	moniti	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris or -re	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

## IMPERFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris or -re	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

## PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus	{ sim	moniti	{ simus
monueris	monueritis		{ sis		{ sitis
monuerit	monuerint		{ sit		{ sint

## PLUPERFECT.

monuissē	monuissēmus	monitus	{ essem	moniti	{ essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		{ essēs		{ essētis
monuisset	monuissent		{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

monē, warn thou.	monēre, be thou warned.
monēte, warn ye.	monēmini, be ye warned.

ACTIVE VOICE.		FUTURE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
monētō, <i>thou shalt warn.</i>		monētor, <i>thou shalt be warned.</i>	
monētō, <i>he shall warn.</i>		monētor, <i>he shall be warned.</i>	
monētōte, <i>ye shall warn.</i>		—	
monentō, <i>they shall warn.</i>		monentor, <i>they shall be warned.</i>	

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, <i>to warn.</i>	monērī, <i>to be warned.</i>
PERF. monuisse, <i>to have warned.</i>	monitus, -a, -um esse, <i>to have been warned.</i>
FUT. monitūrus, a-, -um esse, <i>to be about to warn.</i>	monitum irī, <i>to be about to be warned.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, <i>warning.</i>	PERF. monitus, -a, -um, <i>having been warned.</i>
FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to warn.</i>	G'v'e. monendus, -a, -um, <i>necessary to be warned, or warning.</i>

## GERUND.

G. monendī, <i>of warning.</i>
D. monendō, <i>for warning.</i>
Ac. monendum, <i>warning.</i>
Ab. monendō, <i>by warning.</i>

## SUPINE.

Ac. monitum, <i>to warn.</i>
Ab. monitū, <i>to warn.</i>

## 536.

## Third Conjugation.

Principal Parts: *regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus, rule.*

*Stem rege-.*

ACTIVE VOICE.		INDICATIVE.		PASSIVE VOICE.
		PRESENT.		
<i>I rule, etc.</i>				<i>I am ruled, etc.</i>
regō	regimus	regor		regimur
regis	regitis	regeris or -re		regimini
regit	regunt	regitur		reguntur

ACTIVE VOICE.

*I ruled, was ruling, etc.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

IMPERFECT.

PASSIVE VOICE.

*I was ruled, etc.*

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris or -re	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

*I shall rule, etc.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

FUTURE.

*I shall be ruled, etc.*

regar	regēmur
regēris or -re	regēmini
regētur	regentur

PERFECT.

*I ruled, have ruled, etc.*

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt (-re)

*I was or have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ sum	rēctī	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

*I had ruled, etc.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ eram	rēctī	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have ruled, etc.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

*I shall have been ruled, etc.*

rēctus	{ erō	rēctī	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

regam	regāmus
regās	regātis
regat	regant

regar	regāris or -re
regātur	

regāmur	regāmini
regantur	

## IMPERFECT.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

regerem	regerēmus
regerēs	regerētis
regeret	regerent

## PASSIVE VOICE.

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris or -re	regerēmini
regerētur	regerentur

## PERFECT.

rēxerim	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

rēctus	{	sim	rēcti	{	simus
		sis			sitis
		sit			sint

## PLUPERFECT.

rēxissem	rēxissemus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis
rēxisset	rēxissent

rēctus	{	essem	rēcti	{	essēmus
		essēs			essētis
		esset			essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

rege, rule thou.  
regite, rule ye.

regere, be thou ruled.  
regimini, be ye ruled.

## FUTURE.

regitō, thou shalt rule.  
regitō, he shall rule.  
regitōte, ye shall rule.  
reguntō, they shall rule.

regitor, thou shalt be ruled.  
regitor, he shall be ruled.  
———  
reguntor, they shall be ruled.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, to rule.

regī, to be ruled.

PERF. rēxisse, to have ruled.

rēctus, -a, -um esse, to have  
been ruled.

FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um  
esse, to be about  
to rule.

rēctum irī, to be about to be  
ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

PRES.	regēns, -entis, ruling.	PERF.	rēctus, -a, -um, having been ruled.
FUT.	rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule.	G'V'E.	regendus, -a, -um, necessary to be ruled, or ruling.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

G.	regendī, of ruling.	Ac.	rēctum, to rule.
D.	regendō, for ruling.	Ab.	rēctū, to rule,
Ac.	regendum, ruling.		
Ab.	regendō, by ruling.		

## 537. Fourth Conjugation.

Principal Parts: audiō, audire, audivī, auditus, hear.

Stem audi-.

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT.

*I hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō	audimus	audior	audimur
audis	auditis	audiris or -re	audimini
audit	audiunt	auditur	audiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

*I heard, was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris or -re	audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris or -re	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

## PERFECT.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*I heard, have heard, etc.*

audivi	audivimus
audivisti	audivistis
audivit	audivērunt (-re)

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*I was or have been heard, etc.*

auditus	{ sum	auditi	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard, etc.*

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

*I had been heard, etc.*

auditus	{ eram	auditi	{ erāmus
	{ erās		{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have heard, etc.*

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

*I shall have been heard, etc.*

auditus	{ erō	auditi	{ erimus
	{ eris		{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris or -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

## IMPERFECT.

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris or -re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

## PERFECT.

audiverim	audiverimus	auditus	{ sim	auditi	{ simus
audiveris	audiveritis		{ sis		{ sitis
audiverit	audiverint		{ sit.		{ sint

## PLUPERFECT.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

audivissem audivissēmus  
 audivissēs audivissētis  
 audivisset audivissent

## PASSIVE VOICE.

	auditus	{	essem	{	essēmus	
			essēs		auditi	essētis
			esset			essent

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

audi, hear thou.	audire, be thou heard.
audite, hear ye.	audimini, be ye heard.

## FUTURE.

auditō, thou shalt hear.	auditor, thou shalt be heard.
auditō, he shall hear.	auditor, he shall be heard.
auditōte, ye shall hear.	—
audiuntō, they shall hear.	audiuntor, they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. audire, to hear.	audiri, to be heard.
PERF. audivisse, to have heard.	auditus, -a, -um esse, to have been heard.
FUT. auditūrūs, -a, -um esse, auditum iri, to be about to be to be about to hear.	heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, hearing.	PERF. auditus, -a, -um, having been heard.
FUT. auditūrūs, -a, -um, about to hear.	G'y'E. audiendus, -a, -um, necessary to be heard, or hearing.

## GERUND.

G. audiendī, of hearing.  
 D. audiendō, for hearing.  
 Ac. audiendum, hearing.  
 Ab. audiendō, by hearing.

## SUPINE.

Ac. auditum, to hear.  
 Ab. auditū, to hear.



## 538. THIRD CONJUGATION.—VERBS IN -IŌ.

*Capiō, take.*Principal Parts : *capiō, capere, cēpi, captus.*

## INDICATIVE.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PRESENT.

*I take, etc.**I am taken, etc.**capiō capimus**capior**capimur**capiis capitis**caperis or -re**capimini**capit capiunt**capitur**capiuntur*

## IMPERFECT.

*I was taking, etc.**I was taken, etc.**capiebam capiebāmus**capiebar**capiebāmur**capiebās capiebātis**capiebāris or -re**capiebāmini**capiebat capiebant**capiebātur**capiebantur*

## FUTURE.

*I shall take, etc.**I shall be taken, etc.**capiam capiēmus**capiar**capiemur**capies capiētis**capieris or -re**capiemini**capiet capient**capietur**capientur*

## PERFECT.

*I took, or have taken, etc.**I was or have been taken, etc.**cēpi, etc.**captus, -a, -um sum, etc.*

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had taken, etc.**I had been taken, etc.**cēperam, etc.**captus, -a, -um eram, etc.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have taken, etc.**I shall have been taken, etc.**cēperō, etc.**captus, -a, -um erō, etc.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*capiam, capiās, etc.**capiar, capiāris or -re, etc.*

## IMPERFECT.

caperem, etc.

caperer, etc.

## PERFECT.

cēperim, etc.

captus, -a, -um sim, etc.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpisse, etc.

captus, -a, -um essem, etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

cape, take thou.

capere, be thou taken.

capite, take ye.

capimini, be ye taken.

## FUTURE.

capitō, thou shalt take.

capitor, thou shalt be taken.

capitō, he shall take.

capitor, he shall be taken.

capitōte, ye shall take.

capiuntō, they shall take.

capiuntor, they shall be taken.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. capere, to take.

capī, to be taken.

PERF. cēpisse, to have taken.

captus, -a, -um esse, to have

FUT. captūrus, -a, -um

been taken.

esse, to be about  
to take.captum iri, to be about to be  
taken.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES. capiēns, -entis, tak-  
ing.PERF. captus, -a, -um, having  
been taken.FUT. captūrus, -a, -um,  
about to take.G'V'E. capiendus, -a, -um, ne-  
cessary to be taken,  
or taking.

## GERUND.

G. capiendī, of taking.

D. capiendō, for taking.

Ac. capiendum, taking.

Ab. capiendō, by taking.

## SUPINE.

Ac. captum, to take.

Ab. captū, to take.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

539.

**Sum, be,**Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fui, futūrus.**

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

**sum, I am.****es, you are.****est, he, (she, it) is.**

## PLURAL.

**sumus, we are.****estis, you are.****sunt, they are.**

## IMPERFECT.

**eram, I was.****erās, you were.****erat, he was.****erāmus, we were.****erātis, you were.****erant, they were.**

## FUTURE.

**erō, I shall be.****eris, you will be.****erit, he will be.****erimus, we shall be.****eritis, you will be.****erunt, they will be.**

## PERFECT.

**fui, { I was.  
          { I have been.****fuisti, { you were.  
          { you have been.****fuit, { he was.  
          { he has been.****fuimus, { we were.  
          { we have been.****fuistis, { you were.  
          { you have been.****fuērunt { they were.  
or fuēre, { they have been.**

## PLUPERFECT.

**fueram, I had been.****fuerās, you had been.****fuerat, he had been.****fuerāmus, we had been.****fuerātis, you had been.****fuerant, they had been.**

FUTURE PERFECT.

**fuerō, I shall have been.**

**fueris, you will have been.**

**fuerit, he will have been.**

**fuerimus, we shall have been.**

**fueritis, you will have been.**

**fuerint, they will have been.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

IMPERFECT.

PERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

SINGULAR.

**sim**

**essem**

**fuerim**

**fuissē**

**sis**

**essēs**

**fueris**

**fuissēs**

**sit**

**esset**

**fuerit**

**fuisset**

PLURAL.

**simus**

**essēmus**

**fuerimus**

**fuissēmus**

**sitis**

**essētis**

**fueritis**

**fuissētis**

**sint**

**essent**

**fuerint**

**fuissent**

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

**es, be thou.**

PLURAL.

**este, be ye.**

FUTURE.

**estō, thou shalt be.**

**estō, he shall be.**

**estōte, ye shall be.**

**sunto, they shall be.**

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

**PRES. esse, to be.**

**PERF. fuisse, to have been.**

**FUT. futūrus, -a, -um esse, futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.  
to be about to be.**

**540.**

**Possum, be able.**

**Principal Parts: possum, posse, potui.**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possimus
	potes	potestis	possis	possitis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
	poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
	poterat	poterant	posset	possent
FUT.	poterō	poterimus		
PERF.	potui	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus		

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. posse	potēns, -entis
PERF. potuisse	

541.

*Prōsum, benefi.*Principal Parts : *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus.*

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsimus
	prōdes	prōdestis	prōsis	prōsitis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
IMP.	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prōdessēmus
FUT.	prōderō	prōderimus		
PERF.	prōfui	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerimus
PLUP.	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F. P.	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus		

IMPERATIVE.			
PRES.	prōdes      prōdeste	FUT.	prōdestō      prōdestōte

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. prōdesse	
PERF. prōfuisse	
FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse	prōfutūrus, -a, -um

542.

**Eō, go.**

Principal Parts : eō, ire, ivi or ii, itūrus.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	eō	imus	eam	eāmus
	is	itis	eās	eātis
	it	eunt	eat	eant
IMP.	ibam		irem	
FUT.	ibō			
PERF.	ivi or ii		iverim or ierim	
PLUP.	iveram or ieram		ivissem or issem	
F. P.	iverō or ierō			

	IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	ī	ite	PRES. ire	
FUT.	itō	itōte	PERF. ivisse or isse	
	itō	euntō	FUT. itūrus, -a, -um esse	

	PARTICIPLES.	GERUND.
PRES.	lēns, euntis	eundi, eundō, eundum eundō
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um	
PERF.	itum	SUPINE.
G'V'E.	eundus, -a, -um	Ac. itum      Ab. itū

543.

**Ferō, bear.**

Principal Parts: ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDICATIVE.			
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris or -re	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMP.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus, -a, -um sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus, -a, -um eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus, -a, -um erō	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMP.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus, -a, -um sum
PLUP.	tulíssem	lātus, -a, -um essem

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fer	fer̄te	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	_____
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulísse	lātus, -a, -um esse
FUT.	lātūrus, -a, -um esse	lātum iri

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns, -entis	PERF.	lātus, -a, -um
FUT.	lātūrus, -a, -um	G'v'm.	ferendus, -a, -um

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

G. ferendi	Ac. ferendum	Ac. lātum
D. ferendō	Ab. ferendō	Ab. lātū

## 544.

## Volō, Nōlō, Mālō.

## Principal Parts:

**Volō, velle, voluī, be willing, wish.**

**Nōlō, nolle, nōluī, be unwilling.**

**Mālō, malle, māluī, be more willing, prefer.**

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vis	nōn vis	māvis
	volt	nōn volt	māvolt
	(vult)	(nōn vult)	(māvult)
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	voltis	nōn voltis	māvoltis
	(vultis)	(nōn vultis)	(māvultis)
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

IMP.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	volui	nōlui	mālui
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMP.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	_____	nōlī	_____
	_____	nōlīte	_____
FUT.	_____	nōlītō, etc.	_____

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	_____
-------	--------	--------	-------



545.

*Fiō, be made, become.*Principal Parts : *fiō, fieri, factus.*

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	<i>fiō</i>	<i>fimus</i>	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
	<i>fis</i>	<i>fitis</i>	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>
IMP.	<i>fiēbam</i>		<i>fierem</i>	
FUT.	<i>fiam, fiēs, etc.</i>			
PERF.	<i>factus, -a, -um sum</i>		<i>factus, -a, -um sim</i>	
PLUP.	<i>factus, -a, -um eram</i>		<i>factus, -a, -um essem</i>	
F. P.	<i>factus, -a, -um erō</i>			

	IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	<i>fi</i>	<i>fite</i>	PRES.	<i>fieri</i>
FUT.	<i>fitō</i>	<i>fitōte</i>	PERF.	<i>factus, -a, -um esse</i>
	<i>fitō</i>	<i>fiuntō</i>	FUT.	<i>factum iri</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	<i>factus, -a, -um</i>	G'V'E.	<i>faciendus, -a, -um</i>
-------	------------------------	--------	---------------------------

## VOCABULARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

---

abl. . . = <i>ablative.</i>	inter. . . = <i>interrogative.</i>
acc. . . = <i>accusative.</i>	loc. . . = <i>locative.</i>
adj. . . = <i>adjective.</i>	m. . . . = <i>masculine.</i>
cf. (cōnfer) = <i>compare.</i>	n. . . . = <i>neuter.</i>
comp. . . = <i>comparative.</i>	num. . . = <i>numeral.</i>
conj. . . = <i>conjunction.</i>	part. . . = <i>participle.</i>
dat. . . = <i>dative.</i>	pass. . . = <i>passive.</i>
def. . . = <i>defective.</i>	plur. . . = <i>plural.</i>
dem. . . = <i>demonstrative.</i>	poss. . . = <i>possessive.</i>
f. . . . = <i>feminine.</i>	prep. . . = <i>preposition.</i>
gen. . . = <i>genitive.</i>	pron. . . = <i>pronoun.</i>
impers. . = <i>impersonal.</i>	pronom. . = <i>pronominal.</i>
indecl. . = <i>indeclinable.</i>	refl. . . = <i>reflexive.</i>
indef. . . = <i>indefinite.</i>	rel. . . . = <i>relative.</i>
interj. . = <i>interjection.</i>	sup. . . . = <i>superlative.</i>

Direct and indirect derivatives from the Latin (as well as cognate words), which are also definitions, are printed in SMALL CAPITALS. Derivatives and cognates which are not definitions are printed in *Gothic Italic*, and included within parentheses.

# VOCABULARY.

## A

**A.**, abbreviation of **Aulus**.  
**ā**, **ab**, or **abs**, prep. with **abl.**, *from*,  
*by*, *on*.  
**ab-eō**, **-ire**, **-ivī** or **-ī**, **-itūrus**, *go*  
*away*. Cf. **discēdō**, **exēdō**.  
**ab-ruptus**, **-a**, **-um**, **adj.**, [**rumpō**,  
*break*], (broken off), *steep*, *pre-*  
*cipitous*. (**Abrupt**.)  
**abs-cidō**, **-ere**, **-cidi**, **-cīsus**, [**cae-**  
**dō**], *cut off*.  
**abs-tulī**, see **au-ferō**.  
**ab-sum**, **-esse**, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, *be*  
*absent*, *be distant*, *be lacking*.  
**āc**, see **atque**.  
**ac-cēdō**, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**,  
**[ad]**, *draw near*, *approach*. (**Access**.)  
Cf. **appropinquō**.  
**ac-cendō**, **-ere**, **-cendi**, **-cēnsus**,  
**[ad + -cendō**, *kindle*], *kindle*,  
*set on fire*, *light*. Cf. **incendō**.  
**ac-cidō**, **-ere**, **-cidi**, —, **[ad +**  
**cadō]**, *fall upon*, *happen*. (**Ac-**  
*cident*.) Cf. **incidō**, **eveniō**.  
**ac-cipiō**, **-ere**, **-cēpi**, **-ceptus**, [**ad**  
**+ capiō]**, **ACCEPT**, *receive*, *en-*  
*tertain*. Cf. **recipiō**.  
**ac-commodō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**,  
**[ad + commodō**, *fit*], *fit to*. (**Ac-**  
*commodate*.)  
**ac-cumbō**, **-ere**, **-cubui**, **-cubi-**  
**tus**, [**ad + -cumbō**, *lie*], *recline*  
*(at the table)*.  
**ac-cūsō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, [**ad +**  
**causa]**, (call to account), **AC-**  
**CUSE**.

**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, **adj.**, *sharp*, *spir-*  
*ited*, *fierce*. (**Acrīd**.)  
**acervus**, **-ī**, **m.**, *pile*, *heap*.  
**ācritēr**, **adv.**, [**ācer**], *sharply*,  
*fiercely*.  
**ad**, prep. with **acc.**, *to*, *toward*, *for*, *at*.  
**ad-aperiō**, **-ire**, **-erui**, **-ertus**,  
*throw open*.  
**ad-ducō**, **-ere**, **-dūxi**, **-ductus**,  
*lead to*, **in-DUCE**, *influence*.  
**ad-eō**, **adv.**, *to this*, *so far*, *so*.  
**ad-ficiō**, **-ere**, **-fēci**, **-fectus**, [**fa-**  
**ciō]**, (do to), *treat*, **AFFECT**.  
**ad-haereō**, **-ēre**, —, —, *cling*  
*to*, **stick to**, **ADHERE**.  
**ad-hūc**, **adv.**, *hitherto*, *still*.  
**ad-iaceō**, **-ēre**, **-cui**, —, *lie near*,  
*be ADJACENT*.  
**ad-itus**, **-ūs**, **m.**, [**eō]**, (a going to),  
*approach*, *access*, *entrance*.  
**ad-ligō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, *bind to*,  
*fasten to*. Cf. **adnectō**.  
**ad-mirātiō**, **-ōnis**, **f.**, [**miror**], **AD-**  
**MIRATION**.  
**ad-mittō**, **-ere**, **-misi**, **-missus**,  
*(send to, let go, let come)*, **ADMIT**.  
**ad-moveō**, **-ēre**, **-mōvi**, **-mōtus**,  
*move to*, **apply**.  
**ad-nectō**, **-ere**, **-nēxui**, **-nēxus**,  
*tie to*. (**Annex**.) Cf. **adligō**.  
**ad-nuō**, **-ere**, **-nuī**, —, *nod to*,  
*assent*.  
**ad-siduus**, **-a**, **-um**, **adj.**, [**sedeō**],  
*constant*, *steady*. (**Assiduous**.)  
**ad-sum**, **-esse**, **-fui**, **-futūrus**, *be*  
*present*, *be at hand*, *come*.

ad-ulēscēns, -entis, m. and f., [olēscō, *grow*], *youth, young man or woman*. Cf. *luvenis*.

ad-vena, -ae, m. and f., [veniō], *stranger*.

ad-ventus, -ūs, m., [veniō], *arrival*. (*Advent*.)

ad-versus, -a, -um, adj., [vertō], (turned towards, facing), *ADVERSE, unfavorable*.

ad-versus or ad-versum, prep. with acc., [vertō], *against*.

ad-vertō, -ere, -verti, -versus, *turn to or towards*.

ad-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, summon*. (*Advocate*.) Cf. *arcessō*.

aedi-ficiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aedi + faciō], *build*. (*Edifica*.)

aedilis, -is, m., [aedis], *commissioner of buildings, AEDILE*.

aedis or aedēs, -is, f., *temple, room; plur., house*. Cf. *domus*.

Aeēta, -ae, m., *king of Colchis*.

Aegaeus, -a, -um, adj., *AEGEAN*.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *ill, sick*.

Aegeus, -ei (acc., -ea), m., *father of Theseus and king of Athens*.

aēneūs, -a, -um, adj., [aes, *bronze*], *of bronze, bronze*.

aequor, -oris, n., (level surface), *sea, ocean*. Cf. *mare*.

āēr, āeris (acc., āera), m., *the AIR*.

aereus, -a, -um, adj., [aes, *bronze*], *of bronze, bronze*.

aeri-pēs, -pedis, adj., [aes, *bronze*], *with feet of bronze, bronze-footed*.

Aeson, -onis, m., *prince of Thesaly*.

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer*.

aetās, -ātis, f., *age*.

Aethiopia, -ae, f., *ETHIOPIA*.

Aethra, -ae, f., *mother of Theseus*.

Āfrica, -ae, f., *AFRICA*.

ā-fui, see *ab-sum*.

ager, -grī, m., *field*. (*Agri-culture*.)

ag-gredior, -gredi, -gressus, [ad + gradior, *step*], *approach, attack*. (*Aggressive*.) Cf. *invādō*.

āgmen, -inis, n., [agō], (that which is driven), *line, army*. Cf. *exercitus*.

āg-nōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, [ad + (g)nōscō, *know*], *recognize, acknowledge*. Cf. *oñgnōscō*.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, lead, ACT, do, perform, celebrate; grātiās agō, give thanks*. Cf. *dūcō*.

agri-cola, -ae, m., [ager + colō], *farmer*. (*Agriculture*.)

āla, -ae, f., *wing*. Cf. *penna*.

Alba [Longa], -ae, f., [albus], *ancient city in Latium*.

Albānus, -a, -um, adj., [Alba], *of ALBA, ALBAN*.

albeō, -ēre, —, —, [albus], *be white*.

Albertus, -i, m., *ALBERT*.

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*. Cf. *candidus*.

aliēnus, -i, m., [alius], *stranger, foreigner*. (*Alien*.)

ali-quandō, adv., [alius], (at some time or other), *once*.

ali-quis (quī), ali-qua, ali-quid (quod), indef. pron., [alius], *some one, any one, some, any*.

alius, -a, -ud, (gen., alius, dat., alii), adj., *other, another; alius . . . alius, one . . . another*. Cf. *alter*.

alō, -ere, alui, altus or alitus, *nourish*.

Alphēus, -i, m., *god of the river ALPHEUS in Arcadia*.

alter, -era, -erum (gen., alterius, dat., alteri), adj., *one (of two), the other (of two); alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other*. Cf. *alius*.

Althaea, -ae, f., *ALTHEA, mother of Meleager*.

altitūdō, -inis, f., [altus], *height, depth*. (*Altitude*.)

altus, -a, -um, adj., [alō], *high, lofty, deep*. Cf. *velsus, prōcūsus*.

**amat**, (he) *loves, likes*.

**amb-, am-, an-**, inseparable participle meaning *around, round about*.

**ambāgēs**, -um, plur. f., [amb- + agō], *windings. (Ambiguous.)*

**amb-iō**, -ire, -ivi or -iī, -ītus [eō], *go around*.

**ambulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *walk. (Amble.)*

**ā-mēns**, -entis, adj., (out of one's mind), *mad, frantic*.

**Americānus**, -a, -um, adj., [America], *AMERICAN*.

**amicus**, -a, -um, adj., [amō], *friendly. (Amicable.)*

**amicus**, -i, m., [amō], *friend*.

**ā-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, (send away, let go), *lose*.

**amnis**, -is, m., *river. Cf. flūmen, fluvius*.

**amō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *love, like*.

**amor**, -ōris, m., [amō], *love*.

**am-plector**, -plecti, -plexus, [plectō], *twine, embrace*.

**amplus**, -a, -um, adj., *AMPLE*.

**Anaurus**, -i, m., *river in Thessaly*.

**Androgeus**, -i, m., son of Mīnōs, king of Crete.

**Andromeda**, -ae, f., daughter of Cēpheus, king of Ethiopia.

**anguis**, -is, m. and f., *snake. Cf. serpēs*.

**angustiae**, -arum, plur. f., [angustus], *narrows, strait*.

**angustus**, -a, -um, adj., *narrow*.

**anim-ad-vertō**, -ere, -verti, -versus, [animus], (turn one's mind to), *attend to, punish*.

**animal**, -ālis, n., [anima, breath], (living being), *ANIMAL*.

**animus**, -i, m., *mind, spirit, courage*; in animō esse, *to intend. Cf. mēns*.

**annus**, -i, m., *year. (Annual.)*

**ante**, prep. with acc., and adv., *before*.

**ante-cellō**, -ere, —, —, *ex-CEL.*

**ante-hāc**, adv., *before this*.

**ante-quam**, conj., *before*.

**antiquitās**, -ātis, f., [antiquus], *ANTIQUITY*.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, adj., [ante], *old, ancient. (Antique.)*

**anus**, -ūs, f., *old woman*.

**anxius**, -a, -um, adj., *ANXIOUS*.

**aper**, **apri**, m., *wild boar*.

**aperiō**, -ire, -erui, -ertus, *open, become visible, disclose, reveal*.

**apertus**, -a, -um, adj., [aperiō], *open. (Aperture.)*

**Apollō**, -inis, m., god of the sun, of divination and oracles, of poetry and music.

**ap-pāreō**, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, [ad], *APPEAR*.

**ap-pellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, [ad], (drive to), *land*.

**ap-pellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad], *call, name, accost, address, proclaim. (Appeal.) Cf. vocō*.

**ap-pōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positus, [ad], *place near, place or set before. (Apposition.)*

**ap-propinquat**, (he) *approaches*.

**ap-propinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad + prope], (come near to), *approach. Cf. accēdō*.

**aptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *fit, adapt*.

**apud**, prep. with acc., *among, with, at the house of, at*.

**aqua**, -ae, f., *water. (Aquatic.)*

**aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle*.

**āra**, -ae, f., *altar*.

**arbitrium**, -i, n., [arbitrator, judge], *choice*.

**arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus, [arbitrator, judge], *judge, believe, think. (Arbitration.) Cf. putō, sentiō*.

**arbor**, -oris, f., *tree. (Arbor.)*

**ar-cessō**, -ere, -ivi, -ītus, [accēdō], *summon, fetch. Cf. advocō*.

**ārdeō**, -ēre, ārsi, ārsus, *be on fire, burn, blaze. (Arson.)*

**arduus**, -a, -um, adj., *steep, difficult, ARDUOUS*.

**argentāria**, -ae, f., [argentum, *silver*], *bank*.

**Argō**, -ūs, f., the **ARGO**, Jason's ship.

**Argolicus**, -a, -um, adj., of **ARGO-LIS**, a district in the Peloponnesus.

**Argonauta**, -ae, m., an **ARGONAUT**, one of the crew of the **ARGO**.

**Argus**, -i, m., the builder of the **ARGO**.

**Ariadnē**, -ēs, (acc., **Ariadnēn**, abl., **Ariadnē**), f., daughter of **Mīnōs**, king of Crete.

**Ariadneus**, -a, -um, adj., [**Ariadnē**], of **ARIADNE**.

**ariēs**, -ietis, m., *ram*.

**Ariōn**, -onis, m., a Lesbian bard.

**arma**, -ōrum, plur. n., **ARMS**, *weapons*. Cf. **tēlum**.

**armātus**, -a, -um, adj., [**armō**], **ARMED**.

**armō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**arma**], **ARM**, *equip*.

**arō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *plough, till*. (*Arabis*.)

**ars**, artis, f., **ART**.

**arx**, arcis, f., *citadel*.

**a-scendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, [ad + **scandō**, *climb*], *climb, mount, ASCEND, embark on*. Cf. **cōnscendō**.

**Asia**, -ae, f., **ASIA Minor**.

**a-spectus**, -ūs, m., [**aspiciō**], *sight, appearance, ASPECT*. Cf. **cōn-spectus**.

**asper**, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, harsh*.

**a-spiciō**, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, [ad + **speciō**, *look*], *look at*. Cf. **cōnspiciō**.

**at**, conj., *but* (introducing a contrast to what precedes). Cf. **sed**, **autem**.

**Atalanta**, -ae, f., daughter of **Schoeneus**.

**āter**, ātra, ātrum, adj., *black*.

**Athamās**, -antis, m., father of **Phrixus** and **Hellē**.

**Athēnae**, -ārum, plur. f., **ATHENS**, capital of Attica.

**Athēniēnsis**, -e, adj., [**Athēnae**], **ATHENIAN**.

**Athōs**, —, (acc., **Athon**), m., mountain in Macedonia.

**at-que**, conj. (used before vowels and consonants; āc, before consonants only), [ad + **-que**], *and too, and also, and*. Cf. **et**, **-que**.

**ātrium**, -i, n., [**āter**], *fore-court*. **atrōx**, -ōcis, adj., [**āter**], *savage, fierce, ATROCIOUS*. Cf. **ferōx**, **saevus**.

**Attica**, -ae, f., district in central Greece.

**at-tollō**, -ere, —, —, [ad], *lift up*. (*Ex-tol.*)

**at-tonitus**, -a, -um, adj., [ad + **tonō**, *thunder*], (thunderstruck), **ASTONISHED**.

**audācia**, -ae, f., [**audāx**], *daring, AUDACITY, recklessness*.

**audācter**, adv., [**audāx**], *boldly, courageously, AUDACIOUSLY*.

**audāx**, -cis, adj., [**audeō**], *daring, bold, AUDACIOUS*.

**audeō**, -ēre, ausus, semi-deponent, *dare*.

**audiō**, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, *hear, listen to*. (*Audience*.)

**au-ferō**, -ferre, ab-**tuli**, ab-**lātus**, [ab], *bear away, carry off*.

**augeō**, -ēre, auxi, auctus, (transitive verb), *increase*. Cf. **crēscō**.

**Aulus**, -i, m., see **Postumius**.

**aura**, -ae, f., *breeze, air*; often plur., *air*. Cf. **ventus**.

**aureus**, -a, -ūm, adj., [**aurum**], *of gold, golden*.

**auriga**, -ae, m. and f., *charioteer*.

**auris**, -is, f., **EAR**.

**aurum**, -i, n., *gold*.

**au-spīcium**, -i, n., [**avis** + **speciō**, *look*], *divination* (by the flight of birds), **AUSPICES**.

**aut**, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.

autem, post-positive conj., *but, however, moreover, now*. Cf. at, sed.

auxilium, -i, n., [augeō], *help, aid, assistance*. (Auxiliary.)

avārus, -a, -um, adj., *AVARICIOUS*.

ā-vellō, -ere, -velli, -volsus, *tear away*. (Con-vulsion.) Cf. ēriplō.

ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn away*. AVERT.

avidus, -a, -um, adj., *desirous, eager*. (Avidity.) Cf. cupidus.

avis, -is, f., *bird*. (Aviary.)

ā-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *fly away*.

avunculus, -ī, m., [avus], *maternal UNCLE*.

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather*.

## B

Bacchus, -ī, m., *god of wine*.

baculum, -ī, n., *stick, staff, cane*.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, strange*, BARBAROUS.

basilica, -ae, f., *portico, BASILICA*, building used for merchants' exchange and for the courts.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy, blessed*. (Beatitude.) Cf. fēlix.

Belga, -ae, m., *BELGIAN*, man of a tribe in northern Gaul.

bellum, -ī, n., *war*.

bēlua, -ae, f., *beast, wild beast, monster*. Cf. fera, monstrum.

bene, adv., [bonus], *well*.

bene-ficiū, -ī, n., [faciō], *favor, BENEFIT*.

benignē, adv., [bene + genus], *in a kindly manner, graciously*.

bibō, -ere, bibi, —, *drink*. (Im-bibe.)

blandus, -a, -um, adj., *flattering*. (Bland.)

Boeōtia, -ae, f., *district in central Greece*.

bonum, -ī, n., [bonus], *(good thing), treasure, blessing*.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good*.

bracchium, -ī, n., *arm*. (Bracket.)  
brevi, adv., [brevis], *in a short time, shortly, soon*.

brevis, -e, adj., *short, BRIEF*.

breviter, adv., [brevis], *BRIEFLY*.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *L. Junius BRUTUS*, who expelled the Tarquins.

## C

C., abbreviation for Gāius.

cacūmen, -inis, n., *point, peak*.

cadāver, -eris, n., [cadō], *corpse, carcass*. Cf. corpus.

cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsūrus, *fall, fall down, fall prostrate, droop*.

caecus, -a, -um, adj., *blind*.

caedēs, -is, f., [caedō], *murder, slaughter*.

caedō, -ere, cecidi, caesus, *cut, beat, kill, slay, sacrifice*. Cf. interficiō, necō.

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven, the heavens*. (Celestial.)

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *CEREMONY*.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Julius CAESAR*.

Calais, —, m., *one of the Argonauts*.

calamitās, -ātis, f., *CALAMITY, disaster*. Cf. clādēs.

calcar, -āris, n., *spur*.

calceus, -ī, m., *shoe*. Cf. solea.

caleō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be warm*.

calēscō, -ere, —, —, *grow warm*.

callidē, adv., [callidus], *shrewdly, cunningly*.

callidus, -a, -um, adj., *shrewd, cunning, crafty*.

Calydōnius, -a, -um, adj., *CALYDONIAN*.

Camillus, -ī, m., *M. Furius CAMILLUS*, dictator, who commanded the Romans at the siege of Vēii.

campus, -ī, m., *plain, field*; *Campus Mārtius*, a grassy plain in Rome along the Tiber, dedicated to Mārs.

candēlabrum, -ī, n., *lamp-stand, CANDELABRUM*.



**candidus**, -a, -um, adj., *shining white, bright, shining, glittering.* (Candid.) Cf. **albus**.  
**canō**, -ere, **cecini**, —, *sing, play, prophesy, foretell.*  
**cantor**, -ōris, m., [canō], *singer.*  
**cantus**, -ūs, m., [canō], *song, singing.* (Chant.)  
**capiō**, -ere, **cēpi**, **captus**, *take, seize, CAPTURE, adopt.* Cf. **rapio**.  
**Capitolium**, -i, n., [caput], *the hill in Rome on which the CAPITOL stood; the CAPITOLINE.*  
**captat**, (he) *seizes, takes prisoner.*  
**captiva**, -ae, f., [capiō], (female) **CAPTIVE, prisoner.**  
**captivus**, -i, m., [capiō], (male) **CAPTIVE, prisoner.**  
**capulus**, -i, m., [capiō], *that which is grasped, hilt.*  
**caput**, -itis, n., *head, life, top.* (Capital.)  
**carcer**, -eris, m., *prison, jail; barrier, starting place* (in a race course). (In-carcerate.)  
**carmen**, -inis, n., *song, CHARM, religious formula, prayer.*  
**carō**, **carnis**, f., *flesh.* (Carnal.)  
**Carolus**, -i, m., **CHARLES.**  
**carpō**, -ere, -psi, -ptus, *pick, pluck, gather.*  
**cārus**, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious.*  
**casa**, -ae, f., *cottage, hut.*  
**Castor**, -oris, m., *twin brother of Pollux.*  
**castra**, -ōrum, plur. n., *camp.*  
**cāsus**, -ūs, m., [cadō], *accident, chance, experience.* (Casual.)  
**catēna**, -ae, f., *chain, fetter.* Cf. **vinculum**.  
**caterva**, -ae, f., *crowd, throng.* Cf. **turba**.  
**cathedra**, -ae, f., *easy chair, arm chair.* Cf. **sella**.  
**Caucasus**, -i, m., *the CAUCASIAN mountains in Asia.*  
**cauda**, -ae, f., *tail.* (Caudal.)

**causa**, -ae, f., **CAUSE**; abl., **causā** followed by the gen., *for the sake of, on account of.*  
**caveō**, -ēre, **cāvī**, **cautus**, *beware.* (Caution.)  
**cecini**, see **canō**.  
**cēdō**, -ere, **cessi**, **cessus**, *go from, withdraw, yield.* (Cede.)  
**celebrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *frequent, CELEBRATE.*  
**celer**, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, fleet, quick.* Cf. **rapidus**.  
**celeritās**, -ātis, f., [celer], *swiftness, quickness, CELERTY.*  
**celeriter**, adv., [celer], *swiftly, quickly.*  
**celerrimus**, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of celer], *swiftest, fleetest.*  
**cella**, -ae, f., *store-room.* (Cell.)  
**celsus**, -a, -um, adj., (raised), *high.* (Ex-celsior.) Cf. **altus**, **prōcerus**.  
**centaurus**, -i, m., **CENTAUR.**  
**centēni**, -ae, -a, num. adj., [centum], *one hundred each.*  
**Cēpheus**, -ei, m., *king of Ethiopia and father of Andromeda.*  
**Cēphissus**, -i, m., *river on the west side of Athens.*  
**cēpi**, see **capiō**.  
**cēra**, -ae, f., *wax.*  
**Cercyon**, -onis, m., *robber in Attica.*  
**Cerēs**, -eris, f., *goddess of agriculture.*  
**cernō**, -ere, **crēvi**, **certus**, *discern, make out, catch sight of, perceive.*  
**certāmen**, -inis, n., [certō, *strive*], *struggle, contest, race; certāmen pedum, foot-race.*  
**certē**, adv., [certus], *assuredly, CERTAINLY.*  
**certus**, -a, -um, adj., [cernō], *fixed, settled, CERTAIN, sure; certior faciō, (make certain), inform.*  
**cervical**, -ālis, n., [cervix], *pillow, bolster.*

cervīx, -īcis, f., *neck*. Cf. collum.  
cervus, -ī, m., *stag, deer*.

cēterus, -a, -um, adj., *the other, the rest*. Cf. reliquus.

Chirōn, -ōnis, m., a centaur.

cibus, -ī, m., *food*.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., M. Tullius CICE-RO, the famous Roman orator.

Circēnsis, -e, adj., *of the CIRCUS*.

circum, adv., and prep. with acc., [circus], *around*.

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, place around, surround; with acc. and dat.

circum-eō, -īre, -īvī or īi, -itus, go around. (Circuit.)

circum-ībant, (they) went around.

circum-spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [-speciō, look], look around. (Circumspect.)

circus, -ī, m., (CIRCLE), enclosure for races, athletic games, and contests; Circus Māximus, an oval CIRCUS between the Palatine and Aventine hills, with room for one hundred thousand spectators.

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side*.

citerior, -ius, comp. adj., [cis, cit-rā], *hither*.

cito, adv., [citus, quick], quickly, swiftly.

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side*.

cīvis, -is, m. and f., citizen. (Civic.)

civitās, -ātis, f., [civis], state. (City.)

clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, disaster, loss, injury*. Cf. calamitās.

clam, adv., and prep. with abl., secretly.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [clāmō], cry aloud, keep shouting.

clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call to, call upon, shout to.

clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, cry, CLAMOR.

clārissimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of clārus], most celebrated, most famous.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., CLEAR, bright, famous, celebrated, illustrious. Cf. ēgregius, insignis.

classis, -is, f., fleet. (Class.)

claudō, -ere, clausi, clausus, shut up, CLOSE.

clāva, -ae, f., club.

cliēns, -entis, m., dependant, CLIENT.

clipeus, -ī, m., round shield of metal. Cf. scūtum.

cloāca, -ae, f., sewer; Cloāca Māxima, the great sewer built by Tarquinius Priscus.

Clūsium, -ī, n., ancient city of Etruria.

Coclēs, -itis, m., Horātius COCLĒS, who defended the Pōns Subclivus.

coepī, -isse, coeptus, def., begin.

cōgnōmen, -inis, n., [com- + nō-men], surname.

cō-gnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī, -gnitus, become acquainted with, ascertain, re-COGNIZE, know. Cf. āgnōscō.

cō-gō, -ere, co-ēgī, co-āctus, [com- + agō], (drive together), force, compel. (Cogent.)

Colchis, -idis, (acc. Colchida), f., province of Asia east of the Black Sea.

Colchus, -ī, m., [Colchis], COL-CHIAN.

collis, -is, m., hill. Cf. mōns.

collum, -ī, n., neck. Cf. cervīx.

colō, -ere, colui, cultus, CULTIVATE, inhabit.

color, -ōris, m., COLOR.

columba, -ae, f., dove, pigeon.

columna, -ae, f., COLUMN.

com-, (primitive form of cum, used in compounds, and changed to col-, con-, cor-, or co-, before certain consonants), (1) together with; (2) thoroughly, completely.

coma, -ae, f., hair. Cf. crīnis.

com-es, -itis, m. and f., [eō], companion, comrade.

**com-itiūm**, -i, n., [eō], the **COMITIUM**, a place in the Forum where certain elections were held; plur., **comitia**, *assemblies* (of the Roman people), *elections*.

**comitor**, -ārī, -ātus, [comes], *accompany, attend*.

**com-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, **COMMIT**, *intrust*.

**com-mōtus**, -a, -um, adj., [part. of commoveō], (MOVED), *excited, alarmed*. (*Commotion*.)

**com-moveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, **MOVE** *violently, alarm, arouse, excite*.

**com-pleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill up*. (*Complete*.) Cf. **expleō**, *impleō*.

**com-plexus**, -ūs, m., [plectō, *twine*], (surrounding), *embrace*.

**com-plūrēs**, -a, (more than one), *several*.

**com-pōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positus, (place together), *mix, compound*. (*Component*.)

**com-portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry or bring together*. (*Import*.) Cf. **cōnferō**.

**com-prehendō**, -ere, -endi, -ēnsus, (take hold of), *seize*. Cf. **corripō**.

**con-**, see **com-**.

**con-cēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, *yield, grant*, **CONCEDE**.

**con-cidō**, -ere, -cidi, —, [cadō], (fall together), *fall down, fall*.

**con-ciliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *procure, obtain, win*, **CONCILIATE**.

**con-citō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [citus, *quick*], *urge on, ex-cite*.

**con-clāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, (cry out together), *shout out*. (*Exclamation*.)

**con-cordia**, -ae, f., [cors, *heart*], **CONCORD**; **Templum Concordiae**, **TEMPLE OF CONCORD** in the Forum.

**con-currō**, -ere, -curri or cucurri, -cursus, *run or rush together, collide*. (*Concourse*.)

**con-diciō**, -ōnis, f., [dicō], **CONDITION**, *terms*.

**con-discipulus**, -i, m., [discō], *schoolmate*. (*Disciple*.)

**con-dō**, -dere, -didi, -ditus, (put away), *store up, bury*.

**con-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *draw together, assemble, collect*. (*Conduct*.) Cf. **congregō**, *convēnīō*, *convocō*.

**cōn-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, (bring together), *bear*; with **sē**, *betake one's self, go*. Cf. **com-portō**.

**cōn-ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [faciō], *complete, accomplish, finish, wear out*.

**con-gregō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [grex], *collect, assemble*. (*Congregation*.) Cf. **conducō**, *convēnīō*, *convocō*.

**con-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *throw*; in **vincula coniciō**, *imprison*.

**con-iugium**, -i, n., [iungō], *marriage*. Cf. **mātrimōnium**.

**con-iunx**, -iugis, m. and f., (married person), *husband, wife*. (*Conjugal*.)

**con-iūrātiō**, -ōnis, f., [coniūrō], *conspiracy*.

**con-iūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūrō, *swear*], (swear together), *conspire*. (*Conjure*.)

**con-laudo**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *praise highly*.

**con-locō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arrange*. Cf. **pōnō**.

**con-loquium**, -i, n., [loquor], *conversation*. (*Colloquy*.)

**cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus, *attempt, try*. Cf. **experior**, *temptō*.

**cōn-scendō**, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsus, [scandō, *climb*], *mount, embark on*. Cf. **ascendō**.

cōn-sidō, -ere, -sēdi, -sessus, *sit down*.  
 cōn-silium, -ī, n., *plan, COUNSEL*.  
 cōn-sōbrinus, -ī, m., [soror], (son of a mother's sister), *first-cousin*.  
 cōn-spectus, -ūs, m., [cōnspiciō], *sight*. Cf. aspectus.  
 cōn-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, [-speciō, look], *look at attentively, get sight of, see*. Cf. aspiciō.  
 cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [statuō], *fix, appoint, determine, CONSTITUTE*. Cf. dēcernō.  
 cōn-sul, -ulis, m., [cōnsulō], CONSUL, chief Roman magistrate.  
 cōn-sulō, -ere, -lui, -ltus, [saliō, leap], (meet and consider), CONSULT.  
 cōn-sultō, adv., [cōnsulō], *on purpose, designedly*.  
 cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus, (use up), CONSUME, *burn up, destroy*.  
 con-tendō, -ere, -di, -tus, (aim for), CONTEND, *hasten*. Cf. festinō, properō.  
 con-tentiō, -ōnis, f., [tendō], *effort, CONTENTION*.  
 con-tinēns, -entis, f., [teneō], *mainland, CONTINENT*.  
 con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, [teneō], *hold together, comprise, CONTAIN*.  
 con-tingō, -ere, -tigi, -tāctus, [tangō], *touch*. (Contact.)  
 con-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, *come together, assemble, CON-VENE*. Cf. conducō, congregō, convoco.  
 con-ventus, -ūs, m., [veniō], (assembly), *court*.  
 con-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn round, turn*. (Convert.)  
 con-viva, -ae, m. and f., [vivō], (table companion), *guest*. (Convivial.) Cf. hospes.

con-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call together, assemble, CONVOKE*. Cf. conducō, congregō, conveniō.  
 co-, see com-.  
 co-orior, -iri, -ortus, *rise*.  
 cōpia, -ae, f., [com- + ops], *abundance, plenty, supply; plur., troops, forces*. (Coplous.)  
 cor-, see com-.  
 cōram, prep. with abl., *in the presence of*.  
 Corinthus, -ī, f., CORINTH, a city of Greece.  
 cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing*.  
 corōna, -ae, f., CROWN, *wreath, garland*.  
 corpus, -oris, n., *body* (living or lifeless), CORPSE. Cf. cadāver.  
 cor-rigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [regō], (set RIGHT), *make up for, CORRECT*.  
 cor-ripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptus, [rapiō], *snatch up, seize*. Cf. comprehendō.  
 cor-rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptus, *ruin, CORRUPT*.  
 crās, adv., *to-morrow*.  
 Crassus, -ī, m., a very wealthy Roman.  
 crāstinus, -a, -um, adj., [crās], *of to-morrow, to-morrow's*.  
 crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *believe, trust*. (Credit.)  
 creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *make, CREATE, choose, elect*.  
 crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētus, *intransitive verb, rise, grow, in-CREASE*. Cf. augeō.  
 Crēta, -ae, f., CRETE, a large island in the Mediterranean.  
 crēvi, see cernō and crēscō.  
 crīmen, -inis, n., *charge, CRIME, offence*. Cf. scelus.  
 crīnis, -is, m., *hair, lock of hair*. Cf. coma.  
 crista, -ae, f., CREST.  
 crūdēlis, -e, adj., [crūdus], CRUEL.

crūdēliter, adv., [crūdēlis], CRUELLY.  
 crūdus, -a, -um, adj., raw, CRUDE, rough, cruel.  
 cubiculāria, -e, adj., [cubiculum], of a sleeping chamber.  
 cubiculum, -i, n., [-cumbō, recline], sleeping chamber, bedroom.  
 cubile, -is, n., [-cumbō, recline], couch, bed.  
 cui, [dat. of quī], to whom.  
 culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault. (Culpable.)  
 culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [culpa], blame, reproach.  
 culter, -tri, m., knife.  
 cum, conj., when; as, since; though, although; cum . . . tum, both . . . and.  
 cum, prep. with abl., with.  
 cumulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, heap, load, ac-CUMULATE.  
 cūctus, -a, -um, adj., [co-iūctus], all together, the whole. Cf. omnis, tōtus.  
 cuniculus, -i, m., underground passage, mine.  
 cupiditās, -ātis, f., [cupidus], desire, eagerness, CUPIDITY.  
 cupidō, -inis, f., [cupidus], desire, wish, eagerness.  
 cupidus, -a, -um, adj., [cupiō], eager, desirous, anxious.  
 cupiō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, long for, desire, wish.  
 cūr, adv., [quī + rēs], why: Inter., why?  
 cūra, -ae, f., care, anxiety.  
 cūrat, (he) cares for, takes care of.  
 Curēs, -ium, m. and f., the chief town of the Sabines.  
 cūria, -ae, f., senate house; in Rome, the senate usually met in the Cūria Hostilia, built by Tullus Hostilius.  
 currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus, run. (Current.)

currus, -ūs, m., [currō], chariot.  
 cursor, -ōris, m., [currō], runner, racer. (Cursory.)  
 cursus, -ūs, m., [currō], running, course, voyage.  
 Curtius, -i, m., Mettius CURTIUS, the Roman hero who leaped into an abyss in the Forum.  
 curūlis, -e, adj., [currus], CURULE; sella curūlis, the CURULE chair, occupied only by the higher Roman magistrates.  
 curvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [curvus], bend, CURVE.  
 curvus, -a, -um, adj., bent, CURVED, crooked. Cf. falcatus.  
 cuspis, -idis, f., point.  
 custōdiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [custōs], watch, guard, keep.  
 custōs, -ōdis, m. and f., guard, keeper, CUSTODIAN.  
 cŷgnus, -i, m., swan.  
 Cyprus, -i, f., island near the coast of Asia Minor.  
 Cyzicus, -i, m., king of a town of the same name in Mysia.

## D.

Daedalus, -i, m., an Athenian architect, the contriver of the labyrinth.  
 Danaē, -ēs, (acc. Danaēn), mother of Perseus.  
 dat, (he) gives.  
 dē, prep. with abl., from, of, about, concerning.  
 dea, -ae, (dat. and abl. plur., deābus), f., goddess.  
 decem, indecl. num. adj., ten. (Decl-mal.)  
 dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus, decide, DECEE. Cf. cōstituō.  
 dē-cidō, -ere, -cidi, —, [cadō], fall down. (Deciduous.)  
 deciēs, num. adv., [decem], ten times.

dē-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [capio], DECEIVE.

dē-clinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *turn aside*. (Decline.)

decorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [decus, *beauty*], *adorn*, DECORATE. Cf. ōrnō.

dē-currō, -ere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursus, *run down*.

dē-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, [quatiō, *shake*], *shake off*. Cf. excutiō.

dedi, see dō.

dē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead away, lead down, launch*. (Deduce.)

dē-fendō, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsus, [-fendō, *ward off*], DEFEND, *protect*.

dē-fessus, -a, -um, adj., *worn out, exhausted*.

dē-fluō, -ere, -fluxi, -fluxus, *flow down or by*. (In-flux.)

dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *hurl down or off, cast down*. (Dejection.)

de-inde, adv., [dē], *then, next, afterwards*.

dē-lectat, (he) DELIGHTS, *pleases*.

dē-lectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, DELIGHT, *please*.

dē-lēctus, -a, -um, adj., [dēligō], *picked, chosen, choice*.

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgi, -lēctus, *choose, pick out, se-LECT*.

Delphī, -ōrum, plur. m., *city in Greece, famed for its oracle of Apollō*.

Delphicus, -a, -um, adj., [Delphī], DELPHIC, *of DELPHI*.

delphinus, -i, m., DOLPHIN.

dē-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send down, drop, throw, cast*.

dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *point out, show*, DEMONSTRATE. Cf. ostendō.

dēnique, adv., *at last, at length, finally*. Cf. tandem.

dēns, dentis, m., *tooth*. (Dentist.)

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *thick*, DENSE.

dē-pendeō, -ēre, —, —, *hang from*, DEPEND.

dē-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, *lay aside, give up, abandon*. (Deposit.)

dē-rigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [regō], DIRECT.

dē-scendō, -ere, -scendi, -scēnsus, [scandō, *climb*], DESCEND, *dismount, disembark*. Cf. expōnō.

dē-serō, -ere, -rui, -rtus, DESERT, *abandon*. Cf. relinquō.

dē-sertus, -a, -um, adj., [dēserō], DESERTED, *abandoned*.

dē-siliō, -ire, -ilui, -ultus, [saliō, *leap*], *leap down, jump down*.

dē-sistō, -ere, -stiti, -stitus, *leave off, stop*, DESIST.

dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *fail, be wanting, be lacking*.

dē-tineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus, [teneō], *keep back*, DETAIN, *reserve*.

dē-trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractus, *draw off, drag down, drag*. (Deduct.)

dē-trimentum, -i, n., [terō, *rub*], *damage*, DETRIMENT.

Deucaliōn, -ōnis, m., *a survivor of the flood*. See Pyrrha.

deus, -i, (plur., nom., dei, dii, di, gen., deōrum or deūm, dat. and abl., deīs, diīs, dis), m., *god*, DEITY.

dē-vorant, (they) DEVOUR.

dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [vorō, *swallow whole*], DEVOUR, *destroy*.

dextra, -ae, f., *right hand*. (Dexterous.)

di-, see dis-.

Diālis, -e, adj., *of Jupiter*; Flāmen Diālis, *priest of Jove*.

(diciō), -ōnis, f., [dicō], *sway, control*.

**dicō, (he) says.**

**dicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, de-DICATE,**  
*consecrate, devote.*

**dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, say, tell.**  
*(Diction.)*

**dictātor, -ōris, m., [dicō], DICTA-**  
**TOR,** a chief magistrate with  
unlimited powers, appointed in  
great emergencies to govern for  
six months.

**diēs, -ēi, m. and f., day.**

**difficilis, -e, adj., [dis- + facilis],**  
**DIFFICULT.**

**difficultās, -ātis, f., [difficilis],**  
**DIFFICULTY.**

**diligēns, -entis, adj., [diligō], DIL-**  
**IGENT, careful.**

**diligenter, adv., [diligēns], DILI-**  
**GENTLY, carefully.**

**diligentia, -ae, f., [diligēns], DILI-**  
**GENCE.**

**diligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [legō],**  
*single out, love.*

**dimicātiō, -ōnis, f., [dimicō],**  
*fight, struggle. Cf. pūna, proel-*  
*lum.*

**dimicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, fight,**  
*struggle. Cf. pūnō.*

**dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,**  
*(send apart), DISMISS.*

**dirus, -a, -um, adj., [frightful, fear-**  
**ful, DIRE. Cf. terribilis.**

**dis-, di-, inseparable particle mean-**  
**ing asunder, apart, in different**  
**directions.**

**discedō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus,**  
*depart. Cf. abeō, excedō.*

**discernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētus,**  
*(set apart), distinguish, DISCERN.*

**discipulus, -i, m., [discō], (learner),**  
*scholar, pupil.*

**discō, -ere, didici, —, learn.**

**dis-crimen, -inis, n., crisis.**

**dis-similis, -e, adj., unlike, DIS-**  
**SIMILAR.**

**dis-tendō, -ere, -di, -tus, stretch**  
**apart, stretch, DISTEND. Cf.**  
**extendō.**

**ditissimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of**  
**dives], richest, wealthiest.**

**diū, adv., long, for a long time.**

**diurnus, -a, -um, adj., [diēs], for**  
**the day, day. (Diurnal.)**

**di-vellō, -ere, -velli, -volsus,**  
**[vellō, tear], tear apart.**

**dives, -itis, adj., rich.**

**di-vidō, -ere, -visi, -visus, [vi-**  
**deō], DIVIDE.**

**divitior, -ius, comp. of dives.**

**dō, dare, dedi, datus, give, offer.**  
*Cf. dōnō.*

**doceō, -ēre, -cui, -ctus, teach,**  
*show, inform, tell. (Doctor.)*

**dolor, -ōris, m., [doleō, grieve],**  
*grief, pain. (Dolorous.)*

**dolus, -i, m., deceit, cunning. Cf.**  
**fraus.**

**dominus, -i, m., [domō], master.**

**domō, -āre, -ui, -itus, subdue, con-**  
**quer. (In-domitāble.)**

**domus, -ūs, f., house; domi, loc.,**  
*at home.*

**dōnec, conj., as long as, while; un-**  
**til.**

**dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dōnum],**  
*present, give. Cf. dō.*

**dōnum, -i, n., [dō], present, gift.**  
*(Donation.) Cf. mōnus.*

**dormiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, sleep.**  
*(Dormitory.)*

**dracō, ōnis, m., DRAGON.**

**dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dubius,**  
**doubtful], hesitate, DOUBT.**

**dubium, -i, n., [dubius, doubtful],**  
*uncertainty, DOUBT.*

**dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus, lead,**  
*draw; in mātirimōnium dūcō,*  
*marry (a wife). (Duct.) Cf. agō.*

**dulcedō, -inis, f., [dulcis, sweet],**  
*sweetness. (Dulcet.)*

**dum, conj., with Indic., while, as**  
**long as; with Subj., until.**

**duo, duae, duo, num. adj., two.**  
*(Duet.)*

**duo-decim, indecl. num. adj., [de-**  
**cem], twelve. (Duodecimal.)**

dŭrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard*. (Endure.)

dux, ducis, m. and f., [dŭcō], *leader, general*. (Duke.) Cf. imperātor.

## E

ē, see ex.

eburneus, -a, -um, adj., [ebur, IVORY], of IVORY, IVORY.

ecce, interj., *lo! see! behold! there! look!*

ē-ducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [dux], *bring up, rear, EDUCATE*.

ē-dŭcō, -ere, -dŭxi, -ductus, *lead out*.

ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex + faciō], *make, cause, accomplish, EFFECT*.

ef-fugiō, -ere, -fŭgī, —, [ex + fugiō], (flee away), *escape*. Cf. ēvādō.

ēgī, see agō.

ego, mei, pers. pron., *I*.

ē-gredior, -gredi, -gressus, [gradior, step], *go out, disembark*. (Egress.) Cf. expōnō.

ē-gregiē, adv., [ēgregius], *excellently, admirably, remarkably*.

ē-gregius, -a, -um, adj., [grex], *distinguished, eminent*. (Egregious.) Cf. clārus, insignis.

ēheu, interj., *alas!*

ē-lābor, -ī, -lapsus, *slip away, glide out, escape*. (Elapse.)

elephantus, -ī, m., ELEPHANT.

ē-luō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *wash out, wash*. Cf. lavō.

ē-mergō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *come forth, EMERGE*.

ē-micō, -āre, -uī, -ātus, *dart forth*.

ē-mineō, -ēre, -uī, —, [-mineō, tower], *stand out, project*. (Eminent.)

ē-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send out, EMIT, let out; pass., start*.

emō, -ere, ēmi, ēemptus, *buy; gain, obtain*.

enim, conj., (post positive), *for*. Cf. nam.

eō, ire, ivi or ii, itŭrus, *go*.

Epidaurus, -ī, f., city in Argolis.

epistula, -ae, f., *letter, EPISTLE*.

epulae, -ārum, plur. f., (viands), *feast, banquet*.

eques, -itis, m., [equus], *horseman, cavalryman, knight*: one of the EQUESTRIAN Order ranking between the Senate and the Plebs.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., [eques], EQUESTRIAN.

equinus, -a, -um, adj., [equus], *of a horse, EQUINE*.

equitābant, (they) *used to ride*.

equitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [eques], *ride*.

equus, -ī, m., *horse*.

erant, (they) *were*.

erat, (he) *was*.

ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [rapiō], *snatch away, save, rescue*. Cf. āvellō.

errābant, (they) *used to roam, wander*.

errat, (he) *strays, wanders*.

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *stray, wander, rove, roam*. (Err.)

ē-rumpō, -ere, -rŭpi, -ruptus, *burst out. (Eruption)*.

est, (he) *is*.

et, conj., *and*; et . . . et, *both . . . and*. Cf. atque, -que.

et-iam, adv., *also, even, still*. Cf. quoque.

Euxinus, -a, -um, adj., Pontus Euxinus, *the Black Sea*.

ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *go forth, escape, EVADE*. Cf. effugiō.

ē-vānēscō, -ere, -vānuī, —, VANISH away.

ē-vehō, -ere, -vēxi, -vēctus, *carry away; pass., sail away*.

ē-veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus, (come forth), *happen, result*. (Event.) Cf. accidō.



**ex** or **ē**, prep. with abl., *out of, of, from, on, according to*.  
**ex-audiō**, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *hear* (from afar).  
**ex-cēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, *depart*; **ē** vitā **ex-cēdō**, *die*. (*Excess.*) Cf. **abeō**, **discēdō**.  
**ex-citō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [**cieō**, *arouse*], *rouse, awaken, excite*.  
**ex-cutio**, -ere, -cussi, -cussus, [**quatiō**, *shake*], *shake off, strike away*. (*Per-cussion.*) Cf. **dēcutiō**.  
**exemplar**, -āris, n., *copy*, **EX-AMPLE**.  
**exemplum**, -ī, n., **EX-AMPLE**.  
**ex-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itus, *go out, depart, withdraw*. (*Exit.*)  
**ex-erceō**, -ēre, -cui, -citus, [**arceō**, *keep*], *keep at work, keep busy, engage, train, EXERCISE, drill*.  
**ex-ercitātus**, -a, -um, adj., [**exerceō**], *well EXERCISED, drilled, or disciplined*.  
**ex-ercitus**, -ūs, m., [**exerceō**], (*disciplined body of men*), *army*. Cf. **āgmen**.  
**ex-iguus**, -a, -um, adj., *scanty, small, inconsiderable*. Cf. **parvus**.  
**ex-inde**, adv., *thereafter, then*.  
**ex-ōrnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *fit out, equip, ad-ORN*.  
**ex-pellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, *drive out, EXPEL*.  
**ex-perior**, -iri, -pertus, *try, prove, EXPERIENCE*. Cf. **cōnor**, **temptō**.  
**ex-pleō**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, *fill up, fill full*. Cf. **compleō**, **impleō**.  
**ex-plicō**, -āre, -āvi or -ui, -ātus or -itus, [**plicō**, *fold*], *unfold, explain*.  
**ex-pōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positus, *set forth, set on shore, disembark*. (*Expose.*) Cf. **dēscendō**.  
**ex-pūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *take by assault, storm, capture*. Cf. **oppūgnō**.

**ex-silium**, -ī, n., [**exsul**], *banishment, EXILE*.  
**ex-spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, **EXPECT**, *await, wait for, wait*.  
**ex-spirō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *breathe out, EXPIRE*. Cf. **morior**.  
**ex-stō**, -āre, —, —, *exist, be EXTANT*.  
**ex-sul**, -ulis, m. and f., [**saliō**, *leap*], **EXILE**.  
**exta**, -ōrum, plur. n., (*chief internal organs of the body*), *entrails*.  
**ex-tendō**, -ere, -tendi, -tentus or -tēnsus, *stretch out, EXTEND*. Cf. **distendō**.  
**ex-ternus**, -a, -um, adj., [**exterus**], (**EXTERNAL**), *foreign*.  
**ex-terus**, -a, -um, adj., [**ex**], *outward*.  
**ex-torqueō**, -ēre, -torsī, -tortus, *twist out, wrench away*. (*Extort.*)  
**extrā**, adv., and prep. with acc., [**exterus**], *outside*. Cf. **intrā**.  
**extrēmus**, -a, -um, adj., [**sup.** of **exterus**], *farthest, last, EXTREME*.

## F

**fābula**, -ae, f., [**fāri**, *speak*], *story, tale*. (*Fable.*)  
**faciōbant**, (they) *were doing*.  
**facile**, adv., [**facilis**], *easily*.  
**facilis**, -e, adj., [**faciō**], (*easy to do*), *easy*. (*Facile.*)  
**faciō**, -ere, **fēci**, **factus**, *make, construct, do, perform*; **certior faciō**, *make more certain, inform*.  
**facit**, (he) *does*.  
**faciunt**, (they) *do*.  
**factiō**, -ōnis, f., [**faciō**], **FACTION**.  
**factum**, -ī, n., [**faciō**], *deed, act*. (*Fact.*)  
**faenum**, -ī, n., *hay*.  
**falcātus**, -a, -um, adj., [**falx**, *sickle*], *hooked, curved*. Cf. **curvus**.

famēs, -is, (abl., famō), *f., hunger, FAMINE.*

familia, -ae, *f., FAMILY.*

familiāris, -e, *adj., of the FAMILY.*

fātum, -ī, *n., [fāri, speak], destiny, FATE.*

faucēs, -ium, *f., (throat, jaws), narrow passage.*

faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fautūrus, *FAVOR.*

favor, -ōris, *m., [faveō], FAVOR.*

fax, facis, *f., torch, firebrand.*

fēcērunt, (they) *did do.*

fēcīt, (he) *did do.*

fēliciter, *adv., [fēlix], luckily, happily; fēliciter dicō, offer congratulations.*

fēlix, -icis, *adj., lucky, happy, fortunate. (Felicity.) Cf. beātus.*

fēmina, -ae, *f., woman. (Feminine.)*

fera, -ae, *f., [ferus], wild beast.*

feriō, -ire, —, —, *strike, smite, wound.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bring, carry. Cf. portō, vehō.*

ferōx, -ōcis, *adj., [ferus], fierce, savage, FEROCIOUS. Cf. ferus, saevus.*

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj., [ferrum], of iron, iron.*

ferrum, -ī, *n., iron, sword.*

ferus, -a, -um, *adj., wild, untamed, FIERCE. Cf. ferōx, saevus.*

fervidus, -a, -um, *adj., [ferveō, boil], glowing. (Fervid.)*

fessus, -a, -um, *adj., tired.*

festinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *hasten. Cf. properō.*

fēstus, -a, -um, *adj., FESTAL.*

fictilis, -e, *adj., of clay or pottery.*

fidēlis, -e, *adj., [fidēs], faithful. (Fidelity.) Cf. fidus.*

fidēs, -ei, *f., [fidō, trust], trust, faith, honor.*

fidō, -ere, fisus, *semi-deponent, trust, con-FIDE.*

fidus, -a, -um, *adj., [fidō], faithful. Cf. fidēlis.*

figūra, -ae, *f., form, FIGURE. Cf. fōrma.*

filia, -ae, (dat. and abl. plur., filiābus), *f., daughter.*

filius, -ī, (voc. sing., fili), *m., son. (Filial.)*

filum, -ī, *n., thread, string.*

finiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [finis], *end, FINISH. (Finite.)*

finis, -is, *m., end, boundary; plur., territory, country, land. (Final.)*

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj., [finis], neighboring, near.*

fiō, fieri, factus, (pass. of faciō), *be made, be done, become.*

firmus, -a, -um, *adj., strong, stout, FIRM.*

flāmen, -inis, *n., priest, FLAMEN.*

flamma, -ae, *f., FLAME. Cf. ignis.*

flammeum, -ī, *n., bridal veil.*

flammi-fer, -fera, -ferum, [flamma + ferō], *FLAME-bearing, fire-breathing.*

Flōra, -ae, *f., [flōs], FLORA.*

Flōrus, -ī, *m., [flōs], FLORUS.*

flōs, -ōris, *m., flower. (Floral.)*

flūmen, -inis, *n., [fluō], stream, river. Cf. amnis, fluvius.*

fluō, -ere, flūxi, fluxus, *flow. (Fluent.)*

fluvius, -ī, *m., [fluō], river. Cf. amnis, flūmen.*

focus, -ī, *m., fireplace, hearth.*

foedus, -eris, *n., treaty, agreement; ex foedere, according to agreement.*

fōns, fontis, *m., spring, FOUNTAIN, source.*

fore, for futūrus esse.

fōrma, -ae, *f., FORM, figure. Cf. figūra.*

fōr-sit-an, *adv., [fōrs sit an, it may be that], perhaps. Cf. fōrte.*

fōrte, *adv., [abl. of fōrs, chance], by chance.*

fortis, -e, *adj., brave, strong. Cf. validus.*

**förtūna**, -ae, f., [fōrs, chance],  
FORTUNE, good or bad FORTUNE.  
**forum**, -i, n., *market-place*; Forum  
(Rōmānum), the FORUM (in  
Rome).

**fossa**, -ae, f., [fodiō, dig], *ditch*,  
*trench*. (Fosse.)

**fragor**, -ōris, m., *crash, noise, din*.  
Cf. sonus.

**frāter**, -tris, m., BROTHER. (Fra-  
ternal.)

**fraus**, fraudis, f., *deceit*, FRAUD,  
*cheat, trickery*. Cf. dolus.

**fremitus**, -ūs, m., [fremō, roar],  
*roaring, shouting*.

**fretum**, -i, n., *strait, sound, chan-  
nel*.

**frūgēs**, see frūx.

**frumentum**, -i, n., [fruor], *corn*,  
*grain*.

**fruor**, -i, fructus, *enjoy*.

**frustrā**, adv., *in vain*.

(frūx), frūgis, f., *fruit*; plur., *fruits*,  
*produce*.

**fuga**, -ae, f., [fugiō], *flight*.

**fugat**, (he) *puts to flight*.

**fugiō**, -ere, fūgi, —, *flee, fly*.  
(Fugitivus.)

**fugō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [fuga],  
*put to flight*.

**fulgēs**, -entis, adj., [fulgeō],  
*gleaming*. (Re-fulgent.)

**fulgeō**, -ēre, fulsi, —, *gleam*,  
*shine*.

**fulgor**, -ōris, m., [fulgeō], *gleam*,  
*flash*.

**fundus**, -i, m., *farm*.

**fungor**, -i, fūnetus, (busy one's  
self), *perform, exhibit, celebrate*.

**fūnus**, -eris, n., FUNERAL rites,  
*burial*, FUNERAL.

**Furius**, -i, m., see Camillus.

**furō**, -ere, —, —, *rage, rave*.  
(Fury.)

**furor**, -ōris, m., [furō], *madness*,  
*frenzy*.

**fūrtim**, adv., [fūr, thief], *stealthily*.  
(Furtively.)

**fuscina**, -ae, f., *three-pronged spear*,  
*trident*.

**futūrus**, -a, -um, fut. part. of sum.

## G

**Gabii**, -ōrum, plur. m., city of  
Latium.

**Gabinus**, -a, -um, adj., [Gabiī],  
*citizen of GABII*.

**Gāius**, -i, m., GAIUS or CAIUS, a  
Roman name.

**galea**, -ae, f., *helmet*.

**Gallicus**, -a, -um, adj., [Gallia,  
GAUL], GALLIC.

**gaudeō**, -ēre, gāvisus, *rejoice*.

**gaudium**, -i, n., [gaudeō], *joy*.  
Cf. laetitia.

**geminus**, -a, -um, adj., *twin-born*,  
*twin*.

**gener**, -erī, m., *son-in-law*.

**genius**, -i, m., GENIUS (of a place).

**gēns**, gentis, f., *race, nation*.  
(Gentry.)

**genū**, -ūs, n., *knee*.

**genus**, -eris, n., *race, family, kind*.  
(Gender.)

**Germānus**, -i, m., GERMAN.

**gerō**, -ere, gessi, gestus, *wear*;  
*manage, carry on, wage; do*.

**gladiātor**, -ōris, m., [gladius],  
*(swordsmen)*, GLADIATOR.

**gladiātōrius**, -a, -um, adj., [glad-  
iātor], of GLADIATORS, GLADI-  
ATORIAL.

**gladius**, -i, m., *sword*.

**glōria**, -ae, f., GLORY, *fame, re-  
nown*.

**Gorgō**, -onis, f., GORGON, one of  
three frightful sisters having  
snakes instead of hair; see  
Medūsa.

**gracilis**, -e, adj., *slender, graceful*.

**Graecae**, -ārum, plur. f., three hor-  
rible old women who had but one  
eye and one tooth among them.

**Graecia**, -ae, f., GREECE.

**grandō**, -inis, f., *hail*.

**grātia**, -ae, f., *favor*, GRACE; **grātias agō**, *give thanks*; **grātiām referō**, *return thanks*.

**grātuitus**, -a, -um, adj., [grātia], (without pay), *free*, GRATUITOUS.

**grātus**, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable, pleasing, agreeable*, GRATEFUL.

**gravis**, -e, adj., *heavy*, GRAVE, *serious, formidable*.

**graviter**, adv., [gravis], *heavily, exceedingly*.

**grex**, gregis, m., *flock*. (Gregarious.)

**gubernātor**, -ōris, m., [gubernō, *steer*], *steersman*. (Gubernatorial.)

**gustō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *taste, enjoy*.

**guttur**, -uris, n., *throat*. (Guttural.)

## H

**habēbat**, (he) *had, owned, possessed*.

**habēō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *HAVE, hold, pronounce, deliver*. Cf. teneō.

**habitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [habēō], *dwelt, live, in*. HABIT. Cf. incolō.

**Haedui**, -ōrum, plur. m., *a people of Gaul*.

**haereō**, -ēre, haesī, haesūrus, (stick), *hesitate*.

**hāmus**, -ī, m., *hook*.

**harēna**, -ae, f., *sand*. (Arena.)

**Harpē**, -ēs, (acc., Harpēn), *sickle-shaped sword*.

**Harpyia**, -ae, f., *HARPY*, half bird and half woman.

**harū-spex**, -icis, m., [harū, *entrails*, + -speciō, *look*], *soothsayer*, (inspector of the entrails of victims).

**hasta**, -ae, f., *spear*. Cf. tēlum.

**haud**, adv., *not, not at all*. Cf. nōn.

**Hecātē**, -ēs, f., *goddess of enchantment*.

**Hellō**, -ēs, (acc., Hellēn), f., *daughter of Athamās*.

**Hellēs-pontus**, -ī, m., (sea of Hellē), *HELLESPONT*.

**herba**, -ae, f., *grass, plant*, HERB.

**Herculēs**, -is, m., *a hero of great strength, one of the Argonauts*.

**heri**, adv., *yesterday*.

**Hermīnius**, -ī, m., *Titus Hermīnius*, who helped Horātius Coclēas defend the bridge.

**Hesperides**, -um, plur. f., *guardians of the garden with golden apples*.

**hic**, adv., *here, on this side*.

**hic**, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this*; pers. pron., *he, she, it*; ille . . . hic, *the former . . . the latter*.

**hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [hiems, *winter*], *winter*.

**hinc**, adv., [hic], *from this place, hence, on this side*.

**Hippomenēs**, -ae, m., *successful suitor of Atalanta*.

**Hister**, -tri, m., *the river Danube*.

**ho-diē**, adv., [hōc + diē], *to-day*.

**homō**, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man*. Cf. vir.

**honor** or **honōs**, -ōris, m., *HONOR, office*.

**honōrat**, (he) *HONORS, respects*.

**hōra**, -ae, f., *hour*.

**Horātius**, -ī, m., *see Coclēas*.

**horrendus**, -a, -um, adj., [horreō], *dreadful*. Cf. horribilis.

**horreō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *bristle; shudder*.

**horreum**, -ī, n., *barn*.

**horribilis**, -e, adj., [horreō], *fearful, HORRIBLE*. Cf. horrendus.

**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus, *cheer, exhort*.

**hortus**, -ī, m., *garden*. (Horticulture.)

**hospes**, -itis, m. and f., *HOST, guest*.

**hospitium**, -ī, n., [hospes], *HOSPITALITY*.

**hostia**, -ae, f., *victim, sacrifice*.

**hostilis**, -e, adj., [hostis], *HOSTILE*.

**Hostilius**, -a, -um, adj., *of an HOSTILIUS*; **Cūria Hostilia**, *senate-house built by Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome*.

**hostis**, -is, m. and f., *enemy*.

**hūc**, adv. [for old form hōc], *hither, to this side*.

**hūmānus**, -a, -um, adj., [homō], *HUMAN*.

**humilis**, -e, adj., [humus], *low, lowly, HUMBLE*.

**humus**, -i, f., *ground*; **humī**, loc., *on the ground*.

**Hylās**, -ae, m., one of the Argonauts, companion of Hercules.

## I

**iaceō**, -ēre, -cui, —, *lie*.

**iaciō**, -ere, iēcī, *iactus*, *throw, cast*.

**iactō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iaciō], *throw, cast, hurl*.

**iaculum**, -i, n., [iaciō], *dart, javelin*. Cf. *hasta, telum*.

**iam**, adv., *already, now*; **nōn iam**, *no longer*. Cf. *nunc*.

**Iāniculum**, -i, n., [Iānus], one of the hills of Rome sacred to Janus.

**iānus**, -ae, f., *door*. Cf. *ostium*.

**Iāsōn**, -onis, m., JASON, leader of the Argonauts.

**ibant**, (they) *used to go*.

**ibi**, adv., [is], *there, in that place*.

**Icarus**, -i, m., son of Daedalus.

**idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, pron., [is + dem], *the same, also, likewise*. (*Identity*.)

**idōneus**, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable*.

**igitur**, conj. and adv., *therefore*. Cf. *itaque*.

**ignāvus**, -a, -um, adj., [in + (g)nāvus, *busy*], *idle, spiritless, cowardly*.

**ignis**, -is, m., *fire*. (*Ignite*.) Cf. *flamma*.

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in + gnārus, *knowing*], *not know, be IGNORANT of*. Cf. *nesciō*.

**ignōscō**, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus, [in + (g)nōscō, *know*], *pardon*.

**ignōtus**, -a, -um, adj., [in + (g)nōtus], *unknown, untried, unfamiliar*.

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, dem. pron., *that*; pers. pron., *he, she, it*; *ille . . . hic*, *the former . . . the latter*.

**illūc**, adv., [ille], *thither, there*.

**im-**, see *in-*.

**imber**, -bris, m., *rain, rain-storm, heavy rain*. Cf. *pluvia*.

**im-memor**, -oris, adj., [memor, *mindful*], *unmindful, forgetful*. (*Immemorial*.)

**im-mēnsus**, -a, -um, adj., [metior, *measure*], *vast, IMMENSE*.

**im-molō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [mola, *sacrificial meal*], *sacrifice, offer*. (*Immolate*.)

**im-mortālis**, -e, adj., *IMMORTAL*.

**im-patiēns**, -entis, adj., [patior], *IMPATIENT*.

**im-perātor**, -ōris, m., [imperō], *commander, general*. (*Emperor*.) Cf. *dux*.

**im-perium**, -i, n., [imperō], *command, power, authority, rule, EMPIRE*.

**im-perō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [parō], *command, order, order to provide*. (*Imperative*.) Cf. *iubeō*.

**im-petrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [patrō, *effect*], *obtain one's request, gain one's end*.

**im-petus**, -ūs, m., [petō], *attack, rush*. (*Impetuous*.)

**im-pietās**, -tātis, f., *IMPIETY*.

**im-piger**, -gra, -grum, adj., *active*.

**im-pleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *fill up*. Cf. *compleō, expleō*.

**im-plōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [plōrō, *wail*], *beseech, beg, IM-PLORE*.

**im-pluvium**, -i, n., [pluvia], *pool in the atrium, into which the rain fell through the opening in the roof*.

**im-pōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positus, *place upon, put into, IMPOSE*.

**im-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, bring in, IMPORT.**

**im-pudentia, -ae, f., [pudēns, modest], shamelessness, IMPUDENCE.**

**imus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of inferus], lowest, bottom of.**

**in, prep., (1) with acc., into, to, against; (2) with abl., in, on, upon, among.**

**in-, prefix, (changing to im- before b, m, and p), (1) with verbs, in, into, on, against; (2) with adjectives, not, un-, IN-.**

**inānis, -e, adj., empty. (Inane.)**

**in-cautus, -a, -um, adj., [caveō], INCAUTIOUS, unwary.**

**in-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, march, advance, walk. Cf. prōgredior.**

**in-cendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus, [-cendō, kindle], set on fire, rouse, excite, INCENSE. Cf. accendō.**

**in-certus, -a, -um, adj., UNCERTAIN.**

**in-cidō, -ere, -cidi, —, [cadō], fall in or into, fall upon, happen upon. (Incident.)**

**in-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [capiō], (take in hand), begin. (Inception.) Cf. coepl.**

**in-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [cieō, arouse], urge on, spur on, INCITE.**

**in-clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, cry out.**

**in-clūdō, -ere, -si, -sus, [claudō, shut], shut up, INCLOSE.**

**in-cola, -ae, m. and f., [colō], inhabitant, inmate.**

**in-colō, -ere, -lui, —, dwell in, inhabit. Cf. habitō.**

**in-columis, -e, adj., safe. Cf. intactus, tūtus.**

**in-crēdibilis, -e, adj., [crēdō], wonderful, INCREDIBLE.**

**in-crepō, -āre, -ui, -itus, [crepō, rattle], upbraid, chide, rebuke.**

**in-cumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitus, [-cumbō, lie], lay one's self to, bend to. (Incumbent.)**

**inde, adv., [is], thence, then, thereupon.**

**in-dignitās, -ātis, f., [dignus, worthy], insult, INDIGNITY.**

**indulgēō, -ēre, -ulsi, -ultus, INDULGE.**

**in-duō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, [in(d) + uō, put], put on, dress one's self in; pass., dress.**

**in-fāns, -fantis, m. and f., [fāri, speak], (not speaking), child, infant, babe.**

**in-fectus, -a, -um, adj., [faciō], not done, unaccomplished; rē infectā, without success.**

**in-fēlix, -icis, adj., unfortunate, unhappy. (Infelicity.)**

**in-ferus, -a, -um, adj., lower.**

**in-festus, -a, -um, adj., [-fendō, de-FEND], made unsafe, INFESTED.**

**in-fluō, -ere, -fluxi, -fluxus, flow in. (Influx.)**

**infrā, prep. with acc., below.**

**in-genium, -i, n., character, ability, talents, GENIUS.**

**in-gēns, -gentis, adj., vast, huge. Cf. magnus, vāstus.**

**in-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], put in or on, throw in, inspire, infuse, INJECT.**

**in-iūstō, adv., [iūs], UNJUSTLY.**

**in-iūstus, -a, -um, adj., [iūs], UNJUST.**

**in-numerābilis, -e, adj., [numerus], countless, INNUMERABLE.**

**in-opia, -ae, f., [ops], want, scarcity.**

**inquam, def. verb, say: inquit, says he or said he.**

**in-rideō, -ēre, -risi, -risus, laugh at, RIDICULE.**

**in-scius, -a, -um, adj., [sciō], not knowing, ignorant of.**

**in-scribō, -ere, -scripāi, -scrip-tus, write upon, INSCRIBE.**

**in-sectum, -ī, n., [secō, cut], IN-SECT.**

**in-sequor, -ī, -secūtus, pursue, press upon. Cf. Instō.**

**in-signis, -e, adj., [signum], distinguished, remarkable, striking. Cf. clārus, ēgregius.**

**in-solitus, -a, -um, adj., [sōlēō], unaccustomed, unused.**

**in-somnis, -e, adj., [somnia], sleepless. (Insomnia.)**

**in-spiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, [speciō, look], look into, INSPECT.**

**in-stō, -āre, -stiti, -statūrus, press upon, pursue. Cf. Insequor.**

**insula, -ae, f., island. (Insular.)**

**in-tāctus, -a, -um, adj., [tangō], untouched, uninjured, INTACT. Cf. incolumis, tūtus.**

**intel-legō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [inter], perceive, understand, comprehend. (Intelligent.)**

**inter, prep. with acc., between, among; inter sē, with each other.**

**inter-dum, adv., sometimes.**

**inter-eā, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.**

**inter-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, [faciō], (put out of the way), kill. Cf. caedō, necō.**

**inter-im, adv., [is], meanwhile, in the meantime.**

**inter-imō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptus, [emō], (take away from among), kill. Cf. interficiō.**

**interior, -ius, adj., [comp. of inter], INTERIOR of.**

**inter-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, leave off, INTERMIT, interrupt.**

**in-territus, -a, -um, adj., [ter-reō], undaunted, UNTERRIFIED.**

**inter-scindō, -ere, -scidi, -scis-sus, [scindō, cut], cut down. (Scissors.)**

**inter-vallum, -ī, n., space between, distance apart, INTERVAL.**

**in-tolerandus, -a, -um, adj., [tolerō], INTOLERABLE, unendurable.**

**intrā, prep. with acc., within, inside. Cf. extrā.**

**intrat, (he) ENTERS.**

**in-trepidus, -a, -um, adj., [trepidus, alarmed], undaunted, INTREPID.**

**intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ENTER.**

**intro-itus, -ūs, m., [intrō, with-in + eō], ENTRANCE.**

**in-undō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [unda], overflow, INUNDATE.**

**in-ūtilis, -e, adj., useless.**

**in-vādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus, advance upon, rush upon, attack. Cf. aggredior.**

**in-vehō, -ere, -vēxi, -vēctus, carry in; pass., sail in.**

**in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, come upon, find, INVENT.**

**in-videō, -ēre, -vidī, -visus, (look askance at), ENVY.**

**in-vīsus, -a, -um, adj., [invidēō], hated, hateful.**

**in-vitat, (he) INVITES.**

**in-vitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, INVITE.**

**Iōlcus, -ī, m., town and harbor of Thessaly, whence the Argonauts sailed.**

**Iovis, see Iuppiter.**

**ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., self; very.**

**ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath, rage. (Ire.) irācundus, -a, -um, adj., [īra], passionate.**

**irātus, -a, -um, adj., [īra], angered, enraged.**

**ire, see eō.**

**is, ea, id, dem. pron., this, that; pers. pron., he, she, it.**

**iste, -a, -ud, dem. pron., that (of yours), that (near you).**

**Isthmus, -ī, m., the ISTHMUS of Corinth.**

ita, adv., *so, thus*. Cf. sic.

Italia, -ae, f., ITALY.

ita-que, conj., *and so, therefore*. Cf. igitur.

iter, itineris, n., [eō], *journey, road, march*. (Itinerant.)

iterum, adv., *again, a second time*. (Iterative.)

itineris, see iter.

iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussus, *order, bid, command*. Cf. imperō.

iūdex, -icis, m. and f., [iūs + dīcō], JUDGE.

Iūlia, -ae, f., JULIA.

Iūlius, -i, m., JULIUS.

iuncus, -i, m., *rush*.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, JOIN, *yoke, span*.

Iūnius, -i, m., JUNIUS, see Brūtus.

Iūnō, -ōnis, f., JUNO, *queen of heaven, sister and wife of Jupiter*.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., JUPITER or JOVE, *chief god among the Romans*.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, law*, JUSTICE. Cf. lēx.

iussi, see iubeō.

iūssum, -i, n., [iubeō], *command*.

iūstus, -a, -um, adj., [iūs], JUST.

iuvenis, -is, m. and f., *youth, young man or woman*. (Juvenile.) Cf. adulēscēns.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, assist*. (Ad-jutant.)

iūxtā, adv., and prep. with acc., *near to, close to*.

ivi, see eō.

## L

L., abbreviation for Lūcius.

labor, -ōris, m., LABOR, *toil*. Cf. opus.

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [labor], LABOR, *be in trouble, be in difficulty*.

labyrinthus, -i, m., LABYRINTH.

lāc, lactis, n., *milk*. (Lacteal.)

lacrima, -ae, f., *tear*. (Lachrymose.)

lacus, -ūs, m., LAKE, *pond*. Cf. stāgnum.

laedō, -ere, laesi, laesus, *hurt, offend*.

laetitia, -ae, f., [laetus], *joy, gladness*. Cf. gaudium.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, glad*.

laevus, -a, -um, adj., *left*. Cf. sinister.

lanista, -ae, m., *trainer* (of gladiators).

lapis, -idis, m., *stone*. (Lapidary.) Cf. saxum.

laqueāria, -ium, plur. n., *panelled ceiling, fretted roof*.

Larēs, -um, plur. m., *deified spirits of ancestors protecting the home, household gods*.

Lars, Lartīs, m., see Porsena.

Lartius, -i, m., Spurius Lartius, *one of the companions of Horātius Coclēus*.

lātē, adv., [lātus], *widely*.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lurk, lie concealed*. (Latent.)

Latīnē, adv., [Latinus], *in LATIN*.

Latinus, -a, -um, adj., [Latium], *of Latium, LATIN*.

Latium, -i, n., *country of Italy between the Tiber and Campania*.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *robber*.

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*. (Latitude.)

latus, -eris, n., *side*. (Lateral.)

laudat, (he) *praises*.

laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [laus], *praise*, LAUD.

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory*.

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautus or lōtus, *wash, bathe*, LAVE. Cf. ēlūō.

lectus, -i, m., *couch, bed*.

lēgātus, -i, m., [lēgō, appoint], *ambassador, legate, messenger*.

legiō, -ōnis, f., [legō], (a gathering), LEGION, *containing about 5,000 soldiers*.



**legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus, gather,**  
*col-LECT, se-LECT; read.*

**Lēmnos, -ī, f., island in the Aegean Sea.**

**leō, -ōnis, m., LION.**

**Lesbius, -a, -um, adj., of LESBOS,**  
an island in the Aegean Sea,  
LESBIAN.

**levis, -e, adj., light, slight. (Levity.)**

**lēx, lēgis, f., law. (Legal.) Cf.**  
**lūs.**

**libenter, adv., willingly.**

**liber, -bri, m., book.**

**liber, -era, -erum, adj., free. (Lib-**  
**eral.)**

**Liber, -eri, m., Italian god of plant-**  
ing, identified with Bacchus.

**liberat, (he) frees, releases.**

**liberi, -ōrum, plur. m., [liber],**  
**children.**

**liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [liber],**  
**free, release, LIBERATE.**

**libertus, -i, m., freedman. (Liberty.)**

**Libya, -ae, f., North Africa west of**  
**Egypt.**

**Libycus, -a, -um, adj., of LIBYA,**  
**LIBYAN.**

**ligneus, -a, -um, adj., [lignum],**  
**of wood, wooden.**

**lignum, -i, n., stick of wood, fire-**  
**wood, wood.**

**limen, -inis, n., threshold.**

**linea, -ae, f., [linum], string,**  
**LINE; alba linea, white line**  
(drawn across the arena, mark-  
ing the end of the race course).

**linum, -i, n., (flax), thread, LINE.**

**litus, -oris, n., shore. Cf. ora.**

**locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [locus],**  
**place. (Locate.)**

**locus, -i, m., (plur., loci, single**  
**places; loca, places connected, a**  
**region), place, position, situation.**  
**(Local.)**

**longō, adv., [longus], afar, far off.**

**longitūdō, -inis, f., [longus],**  
**length. (Longitude.)**

**longus, -a, -um, adj., LONG.**

**lucerna, -ae, f., [lūceō, shine],**  
**lamp.**

**Lūcius, see L. Iūlius Brūtus.**

**lūctāmen, -inis, n., [lūctor,**  
**wrestle], wrestling match.**

**lūctātiō, -ōnis, f., [lūctor,**  
**wrestle], wrestling.**

**lūctus, -ūs, m., grief, mourning.**

**lūcus, -i, m., sacred grove.**

**lūdicer, -cra, -crum, adj., [lū-**  
**cus], sportive.**

**lūdō, -ere, lūsi, lūsus, play.**  
**(Pre-lude.)**

**lūdus, -i, m., [lūdō], play, game;**  
**school.**

**lūmen, -inis, n., [lūceō, shine],**  
**light, source of light. Cf. lūx.**  
**(Luminous.)**

**lūna, -ae, f., [lūceō, shine], moon.**  
**(Lunar.)**

**lūstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [lūceō,**  
**shine], (light up), survey, trav-**  
**erse. (Il-lustrate.)**

**lūteus, -a, -um, adj., orange col-**  
**ored, yellow.**

**lūx, lūcis, f., [lūceō, shine], light,**  
**brightness; primā lūce, at day-**  
**break.**

**lyra, -ae, f., LYRE.**

## M

**M., abbreviation for Mārcus.**

**maestus, -a, -um, adj., sad, sor-**  
**rowful.**

**magis, adv., [comp. of multō],**  
**more, rather.**

**magister, -tri, m., [māgnus], MAS-**  
**TER, teacher.**

**magistrātus, -ūs, m., [magister],**  
**MAGISTRATE.**

**māgn-animus, -a, -um, adj.,**  
**[māgnus], great-souled, MAG-**  
**NANIMOUS.**

**māgni-ficō, adv., [māgnificus],**  
**MAGNIFICENTLY.**

**māgni-ficus, -a, -um, adj., [māg-**  
**nus + faciō], MAGNIFICENT.**

māgnitūdō, -inis, f., [māgnus], *greatness, size*, MAGNITUDE.  
 māgn-operē, adv., [māgnus + opus], *greatly*.  
 māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large*.  
*Cf. ingēns, vāstus.*  
 māior, -ius, adj., [comp. of māgnus], *greater, older, elder*.  
*(Major.)*  
 male, adv., [malus], *badly, ill*.  
 male-dicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictus, *speaking ill of, slandering*.  
 mālō, mälle, mālui, [magis + volō], (choose rather), *prefer*.  
 mālum, -i, n., *apple*. *Cf. pōmum.*  
 malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, wicked*.  
 Mamilius, -i, m., Octāvius Mamilius, son of Tarquinius Superbus.  
 māne, adv., *early in the morning*.  
 maneō, -ēre, mānāi, mānsus, *stay, re-MAIN*.  
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band of men*; manū, *artificially*.  
 mappa, -ae, f., *napkin*.  
 Mārcus, -i, m., MARCUS.  
 mare, -is, n., *sea*.  
 maritus, -i, m., *married man*; novus maritus, *bridegroom*; novī maritī, *bridal couple*.  
 marmor, -oris, n., MARBLE.  
 marmoreus, -a, -um, adj., *made of MARBLE, MARBLE*.  
 Mārs, Mārtis, m., god of war.  
 Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., [Mārs], *of MARS*; see campus.  
 māter, -tris, f., MOTHER. *(Maternal.)*  
 mātrimōnium, -i, n., [māter], *marriage, MATRIMONY*.  
 mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, MATURE*.  
 māximē, adv., [māximus], *very greatly, especially, most*.  
 māximus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of māgnus], *greatest, very great, largest*.

Mēdēa, -ae, f., daughter of Aeēta, king of Colchis, and wife of Jason.  
 medicāmentum, -i, n., [medicō], *drug, MEDICINE*.  
 medicātus, -a, -um, adj., [medicō], *magic*.  
 medicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [medicus], *drug*.  
 medicus, -i, m., [medeor, heal], *doctor, physician*.  
 medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle of*.  
*(Medium.)*  
 Mēdūsa, -ae, f., chief of the Gorgons, whose look turned objects into stone.  
 Megara, -ae, f., a town in Megaris, a country of Greece.  
 mel, mellis, n., *honey*. *(Mellifluous.)*  
 Meleager, -gri, m., a Calydonian hero, one of the Argonauts.  
 melius, comp. of bene.  
 membrum, -i, n., *limb, MEMBER*.  
 memoria, -ae, f., [memor, mind-ful], MEMORY, *remembrance*.  
 mendācium, -i, n., *falsehood, lie*.  
*(Mendacious.)*  
 mēns, mentis, f., *mind*. *(Mental.)*  
*Cf. animus.*  
 mēnsa, -ae, f., *table*.  
 mēnsis, -is, m., *month*.  
 Mercurius, -i, m., MERCURY, messenger of the gods.  
 mereor, -ēri, -itus, *deserve, MERIT*.  
 mergō, -ere, mersi, mersus, *dip, sink, IM-MERSE*.  
 meritō, adv., *deservedly, justly*.  
 messis, -is, f., [metō], *harvest*.  
 mēta, -ae, f., *goal*.  
 metō, -ere, messui, messus, *reap*.  
 Mettius, -i, m., see Curtius.  
 metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread, anxiety*.  
*Cf. timor.*  
 meus, -a, -um, adj., *my, mine*.  
 mī, voc. m., of meus.  
 Midās, -ae, m., king of Phrygia.  
 miles, -itis, m., [mille], *soldier*.

**militia**, -ae, f., [miles], **MILITARY service, warfare.**  
**mille**, indecl. num. adj., *thousand*; plur. **millia**, -ium, n., *thousands.*  
**minae**, -arum, plur. f., *threats.*  
**Minerva**, -ae, f., goddess of wisdom.  
**minimō**, adv., [minimus], *by no means, not at all, no, no indeed.*  
**minimus**, -a, -um, [sup. of parvus], *very little, smallest.*  
**minister**, -tri, m., *attendant.* (Minister.)  
**minor**, -ari, -atus, [minae], *threaten, MENACE.*  
**minor**, -us, adj., [comp. of parvus], *smaller, less.*  
**Minōs**, -ōis, m., king of Crete.  
**Minō-aurus**, -i, m., **MINOTAUR**, a monster with a bull's head on a man's body.  
**minus**, see parum.  
**mirabilis**, -e, adj., [miror], *wonderful, ad-MIRABLE.*  
**mirāculum**, -i, n., [miror], *wonder, MIRACLE.*  
**miror**, -ari, -atus, *wonder at, admire.*  
**mirus**, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, strange.*  
**misceō**, -ere, miscui, mixtus, *MIX, mingle.*  
**miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, MISERABLE.* Cf. pauper.  
**miseri-cordia**, -ae, f., [cor, heart], *pity, compassion, mercy.*  
**mittō**, -ere, misi, missus, *send, throw.* (Missile.)  
**mōbilis**, -e, adj., [moveō], *changeable.* (Mobile.)  
**modo**, adv., [modus], *only, just.*  
**modus**, -i, m., *manner, MODE, way.*  
**moenia**, -ium, plur. n., [mūniō], *walls, ramparts, fortifications.*  
**mōlior**, -iri, -itus, (exert one's self), *contrive.*  
**molliō**, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [mollis, soft], *soften.* (Mollify.)

**moneō**, -ere, -ui, -itus, *advise, warn, ad-MONISH.*  
**mōns**, montis, m., **MOUNTAIN, hill.**  
*Cf. collis.*  
**mōnstrat**, (he) *shows, points out.*  
**mōnstrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [moneō], *show, point out.* (De-monstrate.)  
**mōnstrum**, -i, n., [moneō], **MONSTER.**  
**monumentum**, -i, n., *remembrance, relic, memorial.* (Monument.)  
**mora**, -ae, f., *delay.*  
**morior**, -i, mortuus, *die.* Cf. exspirō.  
**moror**, -ari, -atus, [mora], *delay.*  
**mors**, mortis, f., *death.*  
**mortālis**, -is, m. and f., [mors], **MORTAL, human being.**  
**moveō**, -ere, mōvi, mōtus, **MOVE.**  
**mox**, adv., *soon, presently.*  
**Mūcius**, -i, m., see Scaevola.  
**mūgitus**, -ūs, m., [mūgiō], *bellow, bellowing.*  
**mulceō**, -ere, -si, -sus, *soothe.* (E-mulsion.)  
**mulier**, -eris, f., *woman.*  
**multitūdō**, -inis, f., [multus], **MULTITUDE.**  
**multō**, adv., [multus], (by) *much.*  
**multum**, adv., [multus], *much.*  
**multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much*; plur., *many.* (Multi-ply.)  
**mūniō**, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [moenia], *fortify.*  
**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, f., [mūniō], *fortification.* (Munition.)  
**mūnus**, -eris, n., *gift, office; spectacle, exhibition.* (Re-munerate.)  
*Cf. dōnum.*  
**mūrus**, -i, m., *wall.* (Mural.) Cf. paries.  
**mūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *change, exchange.* (Mutual.)  
**Myrmillō**, -ōnis, m., *gladiator with Gallic arms.*  
**Mysia**, -ae, f., district of Asia Minor on the Hellespont.

N

**nactus**, see **nanciscor**.  
**nam**, conj., *for*. Cf. **enim**.  
**nanciscor**, -i, **nactus** or **nanctus**,  
*obtain*.  
**nāris**, -is, f., *nostril*.  
**nārrat**, (he) *tells*, **NARRATES**.  
**nārrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *tell*, **NAR-**  
**RATE**.  
**natābant**, (they) *used to swim*.  
**natant**, (they) *swim*.  
**natō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nō], *swim*,  
*float*. (**Natatorium**.)  
**nātūra**, -ae, f., [nāscor, *be born*],  
**NATURE**.  
**nātūrālis**, -e, adj., [nātūra], **NAT-**  
**URAL**.  
**nātus**, -ūs, m., [nāscor, *be born*],  
*birth*. (**Natal**.)  
**nauta**, -ae, m., [for nāvita, from  
nāvis], *sailor*.  
**nauticus**, -a, -um, adj., [nauta],  
*of ships, naval*, **NAUTICAL**.  
**nāvigābant**, (they) *used to sail*.  
**nāvigat**, (he) *sails*.  
**nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nāvis  
+ agō], *sail*, **NAVIGATE**.  
**nāvis**, -is, f., [nō], *ship*; **nāvis**  
*longa*, *ship of war, galley*.  
(**Naval**.)  
**Naxos**, -i, f., *island in the Aegean*  
*Sea*.  
**nē**, conj., *that . . . not, lest, not*; as  
adv., **nē** . . . **quidem**, *not even*.  
**-ne**, inter. enclitic particle, used in  
asking questions simply for in-  
formation. Cf. **nōnne**, **num**.  
**nec**, see **neque**.  
**necat**, (he) *slays*.  
**necessārius**, -a, -um, adj., [ne-  
cesse], *unavoidable*, **NECESSARY**.  
**necesse**, neuter indecl. adj., **NECES-**  
**SARY**.  
**necessitās**, -ātis, f., [necesse],  
**NECESSITY**.  
**necō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *kill* (usually  
without a weapon), *slay*. Cf.  
**caedō**, **interficiō**.

**nectar**, -aris, n., **NECTAR**, *drink of*  
*the gods*.  
**nectō**, -ere, **nexui**, **nexus**, *tie*,  
*bind*. (**Con-nect**.)  
**negō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nē + aiō,  
*say*], *say no, deny, refuse*. (**Neg-**  
**ative**.)  
**neg-ōtium**, -i, n., [nec + ōtium,  
*ease*], *business, matter, task*. (**Ne-**  
**gotiate**.)  
**nē-mō**, -inis, m. and f., [homō],  
*no one, nobody*. Cf. **nūllus**.  
**Neptūnus**, -i, m., **NEPTUNE**, *god*  
*of the sea, brother of Jupiter*.  
**neque** or **nec**, conj. and adv., *and*  
*not, not*; **neque** . . . **neque**,  
*neither . . . nor*.  
**nē-ququam**, adv., *in vain, to no*  
*purpose*. Cf. **frustrā**.  
**nē-sciō**, -ire, -ivi, —, *not know*,  
*be ignorant*; **nēsciō quis**, *some-*  
*body, some*. Cf. **ignōrō**.  
**neuter**, -tra, -trum, (gen., **neu-**  
**trius**, dat., **neutri**), adj., *neither*.  
(**Neuter**.)  
**nidus**, -i, m., **NEST**.  
**nihil**, n., indecl., *nothing*. (**Nihilist**.)  
**nihilō-minus**, adv., *none the less*,  
*nevertheless, notwithstanding*.  
**nimbus**, -i, m., (black) *rain-cloud*.  
Cf. **imber**, **nūbēs**.  
**ni-si**, conj., [nē + si], *if not, unless*,  
*except*.  
**nitidus**, -a, -um, adj., [niteō,  
*shine*], *shining*.  
**nitor**, -i, **nixus** and **nisus**, *strive*,  
*struggle*.  
**nix**, **nivis**, f., *snow*.  
**nō**, **nāre**, **nāvi**, —, *swim, float*.  
**nōbilis**, -e, adj., [nōscō, *know*],  
*well-born, of high birth*, **NOBLE**.  
**noceō**, -ēre, -cui, -citūrus, *do*  
*harm to, harm, hurt*. (**In-nocent**.)  
**noctū**, adv., [nox], *by night*.  
**nocturnus**, -a, -um, adj., [nox], *of*  
*or for the night*, **NOCTURNAL**.  
**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, [nē +  
volō], *be unwilling, not wish*.

**nömen**, -inis, n., [nōcō, *know*],  
(means of knowing), NAME.  
(Nominats.)

**nōn**, adv., [nē + ūnum], *not*. Cf.  
haud.

**nōn-dum**, adv., *not yet*.

**nōn-ne**, inter. adv., (expects the  
answer *Yes*), *not!* Cf. -ne, num.

**noster**, -tra, -trum, pronom. adj.,  
[nōs], *our, ours*.

**Notus**, -i, m., the south wind.

**novem**, indecl. num. adj., *nine*.

**noverca**, -ae, f., *step-mother*.

**novus**, -a, -um, adj., *new, strange*.  
(Novel.)

**nox**, noctis, f., *night*.

**nūbēs**, -entis, f., [nūbō], *bride*.

**nūbēs**, -is, f., *cloud*. Cf. nimbus.

**nūbō**, -ere, nūpī, nūptus, (veil  
one's self), *marry*. Cf. dūcō.

**n-ūllus**, -a, -um, (gen., nūllius,  
dat., nūllī), adj., [nē + ūllus],  
*not any, none, no*. (Null.) Cf. nēmō.

**num**, inter. adv., (expects the an-  
swer *No*); in indirect question,  
*whether*. Cf. -ne, nōnne.

**numerus**, -i, m., NUMBER.

**n-umquam**, adv., [nē], *never*.

**nunc**, adv., *now, at present*. Cf. iam.

**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nūn-  
tius], an-NOUNCE, *report*.

**nūntius**, -i, m., *messenger*. (E-nun-  
ciate.)

**nūper**, adv., [novus + -per], *re-  
cently, lately*.

**nūpta**, -ae, f., [nūbō], *bride*.

**nūptiae**, -ārum, plur. f., [nūbō],  
*wedding*, NUPTIALS.

**n-usquam**, adv., [nē], *nowhere, in  
no place*.

**nux**, nucis, f., *nut*.

**nympha**, -ae, f., NYMPH.

## O

**ō**, interj., *O! oh!*

**ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of,  
for*; in composition, (1) *towards*;  
(2) *down*.

**ob-iciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [ia-  
ciō], *throw before, throw to, offer*.  
(Object.)

**ob-ruō**, -ere, -rui, -rutus, *over-  
whelm*.

**ob-ses**, -sidis, m. and f., [sedeō],  
*hostage*.

**ob-sideō**, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessus,  
[sedeō], (sit down before), *be-  
siege*. Cf. oppugnō.

**ob-sidiō**, -ōnis, f., [sedeō], *siege*.

**ob-stō**, -āre, -stiti, —, *be in the  
way, hinder*.

**ob-stupescō**, -ere, -stupui, —,  
[stupeō], *be STUPE-fied*.

**ob-tineō**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus,  
[teneō], *hold, possess, gain, OB-  
TAIN*.

**ob-truncō**, -āre, —, -ātus, [trun-  
cō, *maim, kill, slay, slaughter*.

**ob-viam**, adv., *in the way (to), to-  
wards, to meet*; obviam veniō,  
*meet*.

**oc-cāsiō**, -ōnis, f., [ob + cadō],  
*opportunity, OCCASION*.

**oc-cāsus**, -ūs, m., [ob + cadō],  
*going down, setting, sunset*.

**oc-cidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cāsus, [ob +  
cadō], *fall down, perish; go  
down, set*.

**oc-cidō**, -ere, -cidi, -cāsus, [ob +  
caedō], *cut down, kill, slay*. Cf.  
neō.

**oc-cultus**, -a, -um, adj., [occulō,  
*conceal, concealed, hidden, se-  
cret*. (Occult.)

**oc-cupō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ob +  
capiō], *take possession of, seize,  
hold, OCCUPY*. Cf. potior.

**oc-currō**, -ere, -curri, -cursus,  
[ob + currō], *run towards, meet*,  
OCCUR.

**Octāvius**, -i, m., see Mamilius.

**oculus**, -i, m., *eye, sight*. (Oculist.)

**odium**, -i, n., [ōdi, *hate*], *hatred*.  
(Odious.)

**offa**, -ae, f., (little ball of flour),  
*cake*.

oleum, -i, n., OIL. (*Oleaginous.*)  
 ōlim, adv., *once, once upon a time, formerly.* Cf. aliquandō, quondam.  
 Olympus, -i, m., high mountain on the borders of Macedonia and Thessaly, the seat of the gods.  
 ōmen, ōminis, n., *sign, OMEN.*  
 omninō, adv., [omnis], *altogether, wholly, completely.*  
 omnis, -e, adj., *every, all, the whole.* (Omni-potent.) Cf. cunctus, tōtus.  
 onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [onus], *load, burden.*  
 onus, oneris, n., *load, burden.* (*Onerous.*)  
 onustus, -a, -um, adj., [onus], *laden.*  
 oppidānus, -i, m., [oppidum], *townsman.*  
 oppidum, -i, n., *town, city.* Cf. urbs.  
 op-primō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus, [ob + premō], *OPPRESS, crush.*  
 op-pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ob], *attack, storm.* Cf. expūgnō, ob-side.  
 (ops), opis, f., *means, wealth, riches.*  
 optātus, -a, -um, adj., [optō, wish for], *wished for, longed for.* (*Optative.*)  
 optimō, see bene.  
 opus, operis, n., *work, labor, building, fortification.* Cf. labor.  
 ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast.* Cf. litus.  
 ōrāculum, -i, n., [ōrō], ORACLE.  
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., [ōrō], ORATION.  
 ōrātor, -ōris, m., [ōrō], ORATOR.  
 Orbilius, -i, m., teacher of the poet Horace.  
 orbis, -is, m., *ring, fold, coil; orbis mēnsa, round table.*  
 ōrdō, -inis, m., *row, ORDER, rank.*  
 oriōns, -entis, m., [orior], *rising, east.* (*Orient.*)  
 orior, -iri, ortus, *rise.*

ōrnāmentum, -i, n., [ōrnō], *ad-ORNMENT, ORNAMENT.*  
 ōrnātus, -a, -um, adj., [ōrnō], *fitted out, equipped, accoutred, ad-ORNED.*  
 ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *fit out, ad-ORN.* Cf. decorō.  
 ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ōs], *pray, beg, beseech, ask.* Cf. quaerō, rogō.  
 Orpheus, -eī, m., a Thracian bard.  
 ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, feature, face.* (*Oral.*)  
 os, ossis, n., *bone.* (*Ossif-.*)  
 ōs-culum, -i, n., [ōs], (*little mouth*), *kiss.*  
 Ossa, -ae, f., mountain of Thessaly.  
 os-tendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentus, [ob], (*stretch before*), *show.* (*Ostensible.*) Cf. dēmōnstrō.  
 ōs-tium, -i, n., *door, door-way, mouth, entrance.* Cf. iānuā.  
 ovis, -is, f., *sheep.*

## P

pābulum, i, n., [pāscō, feed], *food.*  
 Pactōlus, -i, m., river of Lydia with golden sands.  
 paene, adv., *nearly, almost.*  
 palam, adv., *openly; prep. with abl., before.*  
 Palātium, -i, n., the PALATINE hill.  
 Pallās, -antis, m., brother of Aegeus.  
 pandō, -ere, pandi, passus, *spread out, open, ex-PAND.*  
 papāver, -eris, n., *poppy.*  
 parābant, (they) *used to prepare.*  
 Parca, -ae, f., goddess of Fate; plur., *the (three) Fates.*  
 parcō, -ere, peperci, parsus, *use sparingly, spare.* (*Parsimony.*)  
 parcus, -a, -um, adj., [parcō], *thrifty, frugal.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f., [pariō, *bring forth*], PARENT.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —, obey.

pariēs, -etis, m., wall (in a house).  
Cf. mūrus.

pariter, adv., [pār, equal], equally,  
side by side. (Parity.)

Parnāsus, -ī, m., mountain of  
Greece sacred to Apollō and the  
Muses.

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make ready,  
pre-PARE.

pars, partis, f., PART, share, direc-  
tion, side, end, place.

parum, adv., too little, not enough.

parum-per, adv., for a short time,  
for a moment.

parvolus, -a, -um, adj., [parvus],  
very small, little, or young.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, little.  
Cf. exiguus.

passim, adv., [pandō], (outspread),  
everywhere.

passus, -ūs, m., [pateō, extend],  
step, pace; mille passuum, a  
MILE.

pāstor, -ōris, m., [pāscō, feed],  
shepherd. (Pastor.)

pater, -tris, m., FATHER.

patior, -ī, passus, suffer, allow.  
(Patient.) Cf. tolerō.

patria, -ae, f., [pater], FATHER-  
land, country. (Patriot.)

pauci, -ae, -a, adj., few. (Paucity.)

paulō, adv., [paulus, little], a little.

pauper, -eris, adj., POOR. (Pauper.)  
Cf. miser.

pavimentum, -ī, n., PAVEMENT.

pāx, pācis, f., PEACE. (Paci-fy.)

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make a  
mistake, commit a fault, sin.

pecūnia, -ae, f., [pecus, cattle],  
(wealth in cattle), money. (Pecu-  
nary.)

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., [pēs],  
PEDESTRIAN.

pēius, see male.

Peliās, -ae, m., king of Thessaly.

Pēlion, -ī, n., mountain of The-  
saly.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, drive,  
danish, ex-PEL.

Penātēs, -ium, m., guardian gods  
of the family, household gods.

pendēns, -entis, adj., [pendeō,  
hang], hanging, PENDENT.

pendō, -ere, pependi, pēnsus,  
weigh, weigh out, pay.

penetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, enter,  
PENETRATE.

penna, -ae, f., feather. (Pen.) Cf.  
ala.

pennātus, -a, -um, adj., [penna],  
winged.

per, prep. with acc., through, over,  
by means of.

per-agō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctus, carry  
through, go through with, fin-  
ish.

per-agrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ager],  
roam through.

per-curro, -ere, -cucurri or  
-curri, -cursus, run through,  
pass through.

per-ditus, -a, -um, adj., [dō], lost,  
desperate.

Perdix, -icis, m., nephew of Dae-  
dalus.

per-domō, -āre, -uī, -itus, [domō,  
TAME], thoroughly subdue.

per-eō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, PERISH.

per-errant, (they) wander through.

per-errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, wander  
through.

per-facilis, -e, adj., very easy.

per-fectus, -a, -um, adj., [faciō],  
finished, wrought. (Perfect.)

per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,  
(bear to the end), endure.

per-fidus, -a, -um, adj., [fidēs],  
faithless, treacherous, PERFIDI-  
OUS.

per-gō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēctus,  
[regō], go on, proceed.

Periander, -dri, m., tyrant of Cor-  
inth.

periculōsus, -a, -um, adj., [periculum], *dangerous*.

periculum, -i, n., [-perior, *try*], *trial, risk, danger*.

Periphētēs, -ae, m., robber who lurked near Epidaurus in Argolis.

peristylum, -i, n., PERISTYLE, open court surrounded by a colonnade.

Persēs, -ae, m., brother of Aeēta.

Perseus, -ei, (acc., Persea), m., slayer of Medūsa and deliverer of Andromeda.

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, PERSUADE.

per-terreō, -ēre, —, -itus, *frighten thoroughly*.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [turba], *confuse, dis-TURB*.

per-veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus, (come through), *reach, arrive*.

pēs, pedis, m., *foot, leg* (of a table, chair, etc.); *cursus pedum, foot-race*.

pessimē, see male.

petō, -ere, -ivi and ii, -itus, *seek, look for, make for, aim at, attack*. (Petition.)

Phāsīs, -idos, (acc., Phāsīm), river of Colchis.

Phineus, -ei, (acc. Phinea), m., king of Salmydessus in Thrace.

Phrixus, -i, m., son of Athamās and brother of Hellē.

Phrygia, -ae, f., country in Asia Minor.

pictūra, -ae, [pingō], f., *painting, picture*.

pictus, -a, -um, adj., [pingō], *decorated, embroidered*. (De-pict.)

piger, -gra, -grum, adj., *slow, lazy*.

pingō, -ere, pinxi, pictus, PAINT, de-PICT.

pinus, -ūs, f., PINE-tree, PINE.

pirum, -i, n., PEAR.

piscis, -is, m., *fish*. (Piscatorial.)

pius, -a, -um, adj., *dutiful, pious*.

placeō, -ēre, -cui, -citus, PLEASE. plānitēs, -ēi, f., PLAIN.

plausus, -ūs, m., *ap-PLAUSE*.

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people, populace*. (Plebēlan.)

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., [pleō, *full*], *filled, full*. (Plenty.)

plērum-que, adv., *for the most part, generally*. Cf. saepe.

Plinius, -i, m., Plinius māior, PLINY the elder, a Roman writer.

plūrimum, see multum.

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of multus], *most*.

plūs, plūris, adj., [comp. of multus], *more*. (Plural.)

plūs, adv., [plūs, adj.], *more*.

Plūtōn, -ōnis, m., PLUTO, brother of Jupiter and king of the Lower World.

pluvia, -ae, f., *rain, shower*. Cf. imber.

pōculum, -i, n., *drinking vessel, cup*.

poena, -ae, f., [pūniō], PENALTY, *punishment*.

pollex, -icis, m., *thumb*.

pol-liceor, -ēri, -itus, [prō + liceor, *bid*], (hold forth), *promise*. Cf. prōmittō.

Pollūx, -ūcis, m., twin-brother of Castor.

Polydectēs, -ae, m., king of Seriphus.

pōm-ārium, -i, n., [pōmum], *fruit-garden, orchard*.

pompa, -ae, f., *procession, parade*. (Pomp.)

Pompēius, -i, m., POMPEY, the great Roman general.

pōmum, -i, n., *fruit; apple*. Cf. mālum.

pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, *place*. (Position.) Cf. conlocō.

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.

pontus, -i, m., *sea; Pontus Euxinus, the Black Sea*.

populus, -i, m., PEOPLE.



por-rigō, -ere, -rēxi, rēctus,  
[prō + regō], *stretch forth, ex-*  
*tend.*

Porsena, -ae, m., Lars Porsena,  
king of Etruria.

porta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance, door.*  
(Portal.) Cf. iāna, ōstium.

portat, (he) *carries.*

portentum, -ī, n., [prō + tendō],  
*omen, PORTENT.*

portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *bear,*  
*carry.* (Porter.) Cf. ferō, vehō.

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, PORT.*

poscō, -ere, poposci, —, *ask, beg*  
*for, demand.* Cf. postulō.

pos-sum, posse, potui, —, [po-  
tis, *able + sum*], *be able, can.*  
(Possible.)

post, adv., *after, behind, afterwards;*  
prep. with acc., *after.*

post-eā, adv., *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, adj., [post],  
*next, following.* (Posteriority.)

postis, -is, m., *door-post.*

post-quam, conj., *after.*

postrēmus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of  
posterus], *last.*

postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [poscō],  
*ask, demand, claim.* (Postu-  
late.)

Postumius, -ī, m., Aulus Postu-  
mius, dictator who commanded  
the Roman forces at the battle of  
Lake Regillus.

potēns, -entis, adj., [possum],  
*mighty, powerful, POTENT.*

potestās, -ātis, f., [potis, *able*],  
*power, ability, opportunity.*

potior, -iri, -itus, [potis, *able*], *get*  
*possession of, obtain.* Cf. occupō.

prae, prep. with abl., *before; on*  
*account of.*

prae-beō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, [habeō],  
*hold forth, give, furnish; show.*

prae-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus,  
PRECEDE, *excel.*

prae-ceps, -cipitis, adj., [caput],  
*headlong; PRECIPITOUS.*

prae-ceptor, -ōris, m., [capiō],  
*teacher, instructor, PRECEP-*  
*TOR.*

prae-cidō, -ere, -cidi, -cīsus,  
[caedō], (cut off in front), *cut*  
*off.*

prae-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus,  
[capiō], (take in advance), *warn,*  
*direct.* (Precept.)

prae-cipuus, -a, -um, adj., [ca-  
piō], *particular, special.*

prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj., *mag-*  
*nificent, splendid, glorious.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, plunder.*

prae-dicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictus,  
*foretell, PREDICT.*

prae-fectus, -ī, m., [faciō], *com-*  
*mander, governor.* (Prefect.)

prae-mium, -ī, n., [emō], *reward,*  
*prize.* (Premium.)

prae-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *fore-*  
*warn.* (Premonition.)

prae-sēns, -entis, adj., [sum],  
PRESENT; *immediate.*

prae-sidium, -ī, n., [sedeō], *guard,*  
*garrison, watch.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *beyond, be-*  
*sides, except.*

praeter-eā, adv., (beyond this), *fur-*  
*ther, besides.*

praeter-vehor, -ī, -vēctus, (be  
borne past), *sail by.*

praetor, -ōris, m., (a Roman ma-  
gistrate charged with the admin-  
istration of justice), *judge.*

prae-validus, -a, -um, adj., *very*  
*strong.*

prandium, -ī, n., *luncheon, midday*  
*meal.*

prātum, -ī, n., *meadow.*

precēs, see *prex.*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus,  
PRESS *down, turn down.*

pretiosus, -a, -um, adj., [pre-  
tium], *costly, valuable, PRE-*  
*CIOUS.*

pretium, -ī, n., PRICE, *value.*

prex, precis, f., *prayer, entreaty.*

**primō**, adv., [primus], *at first*. Cf. *primum*.

**primum**, adv., [primus], *at first*, *first*; usually beginning an enumeration, as, *primum . . . deinde*. Cf. *primō*.

**primus**, -a, -um, adj., [prae, prō], *first*. (*Prime*.)

**prin-ceps**, -ipis, adj., [primus + capiō], *first, foremost*; noun, *PRINCE, chief*.

**prior**, prius, adj., [comp. from prae, prō], *former, first*, *PRIOR*.

**prius-quam**, conj., *before*; sometimes separated by words, thus: *prius . . . quam*.

**privō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *de-PRIVE, rob.*

**prō**, prep. with abl., *for, on behalf of, in return for, instead of; before, in front of*.

**probō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [probus, *honest*], *ap-PROVE, PROVE, test*.

**prō-cēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, *advance, PROCEED*. Cf. *incēdō*.

**prō-cērus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall*. Cf. *altus, celsus*.

**Procrūstēs**, -ae, (acc. -ēn), m., *robber in Attica*.

**pro-cul**, adv., *afar, far off*.

**pro-cumbō**, -ere, -cubui, -cubitus, [-cumbō, *lie*], *lean forward, bend to*.

**procus**, -i, m., [prex], *suitor*.

**prōd-igium**, -i, n., [prō + agō], *miracle, PRODIGY*.

**prō-dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus, (give forth), *betray*.

**proelium**, -i, n., *battle*. Cf. *dimicatio, pugna*.

**pro-fectō**, adv., [factum], *really, assuredly, certainly*.

**prō-ficiō**, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, [faciō], (make progress), *accomplish*.

**pro-ficiscor**, -i, -fectus, [prōficio], *set out, start, go, depart*.

**pro-fundus**, -a, -um, adj., *deep, PROFOUND, fathomless*.

**prō-gredior**, -i, -gressus, [-gradiōr, *step*], *advance, proceed*. (*Progress*.) Cf. *incēdō*.

**pro-hibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itus, [habēō], *keep from, forbid, PROHIBIT*.

**prō-missum**, -i, n., [prōmittō], *PROMISE*.

**prō-mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, *PROMISE*. Cf. *polliceor*.

**prō-nuba**, -ae, f., [nūbō], *bridesmaid*.

**prō-nus**, -a, -um, adj., *bending or leaning forward*. (*Prone*.)

**prope**, adv., and prep. with acc., *near, nigh*. Cf. *iuxtā*.

**properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *hasten*. Cf. *festinō*.

**Pro-pontis**, -idis, (acc., *Propon-tida*), f., the *PROPONTIS* or *Sea of Marmora*.

**propter**, prep. with acc., *near; on account of*.

**Proserpina**, -ae, f., daughter of *Cerēs* and wife of *Plūtō*.

**prō-siliō**, -ire, -ui, —, [saliō, *leap*], *leap forward*.

**prō-sper**, -era, -erum, adj., [spēs], *PROSPEROUS*.

**prō-sperē**, adv., [prōsper], *PROSPEROUSLY*.

**prō-sum**, prōd-esse, prō-fui, *be useful to, benefit, profit*.

**prō-tinus**, adv., [tenus], *forthwith, immediately*. Cf. *statim*.

**prō-vehō**, -ere, -vēxi, -vēctus, *carry forward; pass., sail on*.

**proximus**, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of *prope*], *nearest, next, last*. (*Proximity*.)

**prūdēns**, -entis, adj., [prō + vidēns], *PRUDENT*.

**prūdenter**, adv., [prūdēns], *PRUDENTLY*.

**prūdēntia**, -ae, f., [prūdēns], *PRUDENCE*.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj., [populus],  
PUBLIC.

**puella**, -ae, f., [dim. of puer], *girl*.  
Cf. *virgō*.

**puer**, -i, m., *child, boy*.

**pugillātiō**, -ōnis, f., *boxing* (with  
the cestus).

**pūgna**, -ae, f., *fight, battle*. (*Pugna-*  
*clous*.) Cf. *dīmicātiō*, *proelium*.

**pūgnat**, (he) *fight*s.

**pūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pūgna],  
*fight*. Cf. *dīmicō*.

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beau-*  
*tiful, fair, noble, glorious*.

**pulcherrimus**, -a, -um, adj., [sup.  
of pulcher], *very beautiful, fair-*  
*est*.

**pulchrē**, adv., [pulcher], *beauti-*  
*fully*.

**pulsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pellō],  
*bent, paw*. (*Pulse*.)

**Pūniceus**, -a, -um, adj., PUNIC,  
*reddish*; **pōmum Pūniceum**,  
*pomegranate*.

**pūniō**, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [poena],  
PUNISH.

**puppis**, -is, f., (hinder part of a  
ship), *stern*.

**putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *think*. Cf.  
*arbitror*, *sentio*.

**Pyrrha**, -ae, f., wife of Deucalion.

**Pŷthia**, -ae, f., the priestess who  
uttered the responses of the Del-  
phic Apollo.

## Q

**quā**, (1) abl. fem. of *quī*, *by which*;  
(2) abl. fem. of *quis*, *by which* or  
*what*?

**quadra**, -ae, f., [quattuor], *square*  
*table*.

**quadrigae**, -ārum, f., [quattuor +  
*iugum*, *team*], *four-horse chariot*.

**quae**, (1) nom. fem. sing. and neut.  
plur. of *quī*, *which*; (2) fem. of  
*quis*, *who*? *which*? *what*?

**quaerō**, -ere, -avi, -ātus, *seek*,  
*ask*, *in-QUIRE*. (*Question*.)

**quālis**, -e, adj., [quī], *of what sort*.  
(*Quality*.)

**quam**, adv. and conj., [quī], *how*,  
*as*; with comp., *than*; with sup.,  
*as possible*; **quam diū**, *as long*  
*as*.

**quam ob rem**, (1) inter., *on what ac-*  
*count*? *why*? (2) rel., *on account*  
*of which, why*.

**quandō**, (1) inter. adv., *at what time*?  
*when*? (2) indef. adv., *at any time*,  
*ever*.

**quantus**, -a, -um, adj., [quam],  
*how great, as*. (*Quantity*.)

**quattuor**, indecl. num. adj., *four*.

**-que**, enclitic conj., and (joins two  
words into one conception). Cf.  
*atque*, *et*.

**quem**, acc. masc. of *quis*, *whom*?  
*what*?

**queror**, -i, *questus*, *complain*.  
(*Querulous*.)

**quī**, inter. pron., *who*? see *quis*.

**quī**, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron., *who*,  
*which, what, that*.

**quia**, conj., *because*. Cf. *quod*.

**quibus**, abl. pl. of *quis*, *from*  
*whom*?

**quī-cumque**, *quae-cumque*,  
*quod-cumque*, indef. rel. pron.,  
*whoever, whatever*.

**quid**, inter. pron., *what*? see  
*quis*.

**quidam**, *quasedam*, *quoddam* and  
*quiddam*, indef. pron., *certain*,  
*certain one*.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed*; **nē** . . . *qui-*  
*dem*, *not even*.

**quiescō**, -ere, -āvī, -ētus, [quies,  
QUIET], *rest, repose, be QUIET*.

**quīn**, conj., [quī + *nē*], *but, indeed*,  
*nay, in fact*; *but that, that*.

**quīnque**, indecl. num. adj., *five*.

**quis** (*quī*), *quae*, *quid* (*quod*),  
(1) inter. pron., *who*? *which*?  
*what*? (2) indef. pron., *some*; fol-  
lowing *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, or *num*,  
*any, as sī quid, if anything*.

quis-quam, —, quic-quam, (no fem. or plur.), indef. pron., *any one, any thing*.

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que and quod-que, indef. pron., *each, every*.

quis-quis, —, quic-quid, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

quō, inter. adv., *whither? where?*

quō, abl. masc. of quis, *ā quō, by whom?*

quo-ad, adv., *as long as, while; until*.

quod, nom. and acc. neut. of quī, *which*.

quod, inter. pronom. adj., *what?*

quod, conj., [quī], *because*. Cf. quia.

quō modo, inter. adv., *in what manner? in what way? how?*

quondam, adv., *once upon a time, once, formerly*. Cf. aliquandō, olim.

quoque, conj., *also, too*. Cf. etiam.

quōrum, gen. masc. plur. of quis, *of whom? whose?*

quot, indecl. adj., (1) inter., *how many?* (2) rel., *as many as, as*.

quot-annis, adv., *every year, annually*.

quot-iēs, adv., *how often? how many times?*

## R

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch*. (Ramī-fy.)

rāna, -ae, f., *frog*.

rapidus, -a, -um, adj., [rapiō], *swift*, RAPID. Cf. celer.

rapiō, -ere, -ui, -tus, *seize, snatch, carry off*. (Rapine.) Cf. capiō.

ratis, -is, f., *raft, vessel, boat*.

re-, inseparable particle meaning *again, back*.

re-cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, *go back*, RECEDE.

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [capiō], *recover, RECEIVE; sē recipiō, withdraw, retreat*.

rēctiō, -ōnis, f., [regō], *guiding, di-RECTION, government*.

rēctor, -ōris, m., [regō], *guide, ruler*. (Rector.)

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., [regō], *di-RECT, straight*.

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [causa], *object, decline, refuse*.

red-dō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, [re-], *give back, restore, return*, RENDER, *give, administer*. Cf. restitūō.

red-eō, -ire, -ii, -itus, [re-], *go back, return*. Cf. revertor.

red-igō, -ere, -ēgi, -āctus, [re- + agō], *reduce*.

red-itus, -ūs, m., [redeō], *return*.

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *draw back, lead back*; REDUCE. Cf. redigō.

re-ferō, -ferre, rettuli, -lātus, *bring back*; RELATE; REFER; grātiam referō, *return thanks*.

re-fugiō, -ere, -fūgi, —, *shrink from, shun*. (Refugee.)

refulgeō, -ēre, -fulsi, —, *flash back, reflect light, glitter, gleam*. (Refulgent.)

rēgia, -ae, f., [rēgius], *royal palace, castle*.

Rēgillus, -ī, m., *small lake in Latium*.

rēgina, -ae, f., [rēx], *queen*.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *direction, REGION, district*.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj., [rēx], *of a king, royal, REGAL*.

rēgnātor, -ōris, m., [rēgnō], *ruler*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [rēgnum], REIGN. Cf. regō.

rēgnum, -ī, n., [rēx], *kingdom, throne*.

regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, *di-RECT, rule*. Cf. rēgnō.

rē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, [iaciō], *throw back, drive back*, REJECT.

**re-linquo**, -ere, -liqui, -lictus, [linquo, leave], leave behind, abandon, RELINQUISH. Cf. dāserō.

**re-liquus**, -a, -um, adj., [relinquo], remaining, the rest of. Cf. cōterus.

**rēmus**, -i, m., oar.

**re-novō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [novus], renew. (Renovate.)

**re-nūtiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, report, announce. (Renounce.)

**re-periō**, -ire, repperi, repertus, [pariō, bring forth], find out, find, discover. Cf. inveniō.

**re-petō**, -ere, -ivi, -itus, seek again, return to, revisit, retrace. (Repetition.)

**re-pōtis**, -ōrum, plur. n., [pōtō, drink], return banquet, (feast on the day after a wedding).

**rēs**, rei, f., thing, affair, circumstance, business, campaign.

**re-sistō**, -ere, -stīti, —, RESIST.

**re-spiciō**, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, [-speciō, look], look back. (Respect.)

**re-spondeō**, -ēre, -di, -spōnsus, answer, RESPOND.

**re-spōnsum**, -i, n., [respondeō], answer, RESPONSE.

**rēs publica**, rei publicae, f., state, commonwealth, REPUBLIC.

**re-stinguō**, -ere, -nxi, -nctus, [stinguō, put out], put out, EXTINGUISH.

**re-stituō**, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, [statuō], put back, restore. (Restitution.) Cf. reddō.

**rēte**, -is, n., net.

**rētiārius**, -i, m., [rēte], gladiator who carried a net to entangle his adversary.

**re-trahō**, -ere, -trāxi, -tractus, draw back, drag back. (Retract.)

**re-vertō**, -ere, -tī, —, (used only in perf. stem, see revertor), return.

**re-vertor**, -i, -versus, (used instead of revertō in pres. imp., and fut.), return. (Revert.) Cf. redeō.

**re-vinciō**, -ire, -vinxi, -vinctus, bind back, tie behind, bind.

**re-vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, call back, RECALL.

**rēx**, rēgis, m., [regō], king. (Regal.)

**Rhēnus**, -i, m., river RHINE.

**rideō**, -ēre, risi, risus, laugh, laugh at, RIDICULE.

**rima**, -ae, f., crack, fissure, opening.

**ripa**, -ae, f., bank (of a river). Cf. litus.

**rītus**, -ūs, m., religious observance, ceremony, RITE.

**rogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, ask. Cf. ōrō, quaerō.

**rogus**, -i, m., funeral pile, pyre.

**Rōma**, -ae, f., ROME.

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj., [Rōma], ROMAN.

**Rōmulus**, -i, m., first king of Rome.

**rosa**, -ae, f., ROSE.

**rōstrum**, -i, n., beak, ship's beak; plur., the ROSTRA, a platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships.

**rota**, -ae, f., wheel. (Rotate.)

**ruber**, -bra, -brum, adj., red.

**rubor**, -ōris, m., [ruber], redness.

**ruina**, -ae, f., [ruō], RUIN.

**rūmor**, -ōris, m., report, RUMOR.

**ruō**, -ere, ruī, rūtus, rush. (Ruin.)

**rūpēs**, -is, f., rock, cliff. Cf. saxum.

**rūs**, rūris, n., the country, lands, fields. (Rural.)

**rūsticus**, -i, m., [rūs], countryman.

## S

**Sabinus**, -a, -um, adj., SABINE.

**sacer**, -cra, -crum, adj., SACRED;

Via Sacra, street in the Forum.

**sacri-ficō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sacrū + faciō], SACRIFICE.

**saepe**, adv., *often, frequently*. Cf. *plērumque*.  
**saepe numerō**, *again and again, repeatedly*.  
**saeviō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, [saevus], *be furious, rage*.  
**saevitia**, -ae, f., [saevus], *fury, fierceness, harshness, severity*.  
**saevus**, -a, -um, adj., *fierce, cruel, savage*. Cf. *ferōx*, *ferus*.  
**sagitta**, -ae, f., *arrow*.  
**saltem**, adv., *at least, at any rate*.  
**salus**, -ūs, m., *woodland, glade, wood*. Cf. *silva*.  
**salus**, -ūtis, f., *health, safety*. (*Salutary*).  
**"Salvē"** [imperative of *salveō*, *be well*], *"Welcome"*.  
**sanguineus**, -a, -um, adj., [san-guis], *bloody*. (*Sanguinary*).  
**sanguis**, -inis, m., *blood*. (*Sanguine*).  
**sapiēns**, -entis, adj., [sapiō, *be wise*], *wise*.  
**sapienter**, adv., [sapiēns], *wisely*.  
**satelles**, -itis, m. and f., *attendant, courtier*. (*Satellite*).  
**satis**, adv. and indecl. adj., *enough, sufficiently*.  
**saxeus**, -a, -um, adj., [saxum], *of rock, of stone*.  
**saxum**, -ī, n., *rock, stone*. Cf. *lapis*, *rūpēs*.  
**Scaevola**, -ae, m., [scaevus, *left*], C. Mucius Scaevola, who showed Porsena the invincible spirit of the Romans by holding his *right hand* in the fire.  
**scamnum**, -ī, n., *stool, step*.  
**scelus**, -eris, n., *crime, wickedness*. Cf. *crimen*.  
**scēptrum**, -ī, n., SCEPTRE.  
**Schoeneus**, -ei, m., father of Atalanta.  
**scientia**, -ae, f., [sciō], *knowledge, science, skill*.  
**sciō**, -īre, -ivī, -itus, *know*. Cf. *cōgnoscō*.

**Scīrōn**, -ōnis, m., robber, who lived near Megara.  
**scopulus**, -ī, m., *rock, crag*. Cf. *rūpēs*, *saxum*.  
**scriba**, -ae, m., *clerk, official*. SCRIBE, *secretary*.  
**scribō**, -ere, -psi, -ptus, *write*. (*Scribble*).  
**scriptor**, -ōris, m., [scribō], *writer, author*. (*Script*).  
**scūtum**, -ī, n., (long wooden) *shield*. Cf. *clipeus*.  
**sē**, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*.  
**sē**, inseparable particle meaning *apart*.  
**sē-clūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, [claudō], *shut apart, exclude*.  
**secundus**, -a, -um, adj., [sequor], (following), SECOND, *favorable, favoring*.  
**secūris**, -is, f., [seco, *cut*], *axe*.  
**secūtus**, see *sequor*.  
**sed**, conj., *but*. Cf. *at, autem*.  
**sedeō**, -ēre, -sēdi, *sessus, sit*. (*Session*).  
**sēdēs**, -is, f., [sedeō], *seat, abode*.  
**sedile**, -is, n., [sedeō], *chair, seat*.  
**seges**, -etis, f., *corn-field, crop*.  
**sella**, -ae, f., [sedeō], *seat, chair*.  
**sēmita**, -ae, f., *narrow way, foot-path*.  
**semper**, adv., *ever, always*.  
**senātor**, -ōris, m., [senex, *old man*], SENATOR.  
**sentīō**, -īre, sēnsi, sēnsus, *feel, perceive*. (*Sensation*).  
**sepeliō**, -īre, -ivī, -pultus, *bury*. (*Sepulchre*).  
**septem**, indecl. num. adj., *seven*.  
**septiēs**, num. adv., *seven times*.  
**sequor**, -ī, secūtus, *follow, pursue*. (*Sequence*).  
**Seriphos**, -ī, (acc., Seriphon), f., SERIPHUS, a small island in the Aegean Sea.  
**sermō**, -ōnis, m., *conversation*.  
**serō**, -ere, sēvi, satus, *sow, plant*.

**serpens**, -entis, m. or f., [serpō, *crawl*], SERPENT, *snake*. Cf. anguis.

**serviō**, -ire, -īvi, -itus, [servus], SERVE.

**servō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *save, keep, pre-SERVE*.

**servus**, -ī, m., *slave*, SERVANT.

**sēstertius**, -ī, m., (gen. plur., sēs-tertium), SESTERCE, a small silver coin, worth about four cents.

**severus**, -a, -um, adj., *stern, SEVERE*.

**sex**, indecl. num. adj., SIX.

**Sextus**, -ī, m., son of Tarquinius Superbus.

**sī**, conj., *if*.

**sibila**, -ōrum, plur. n., *hissings*. (*Sibilant*.)

**sic**, adv., *so, thus*. Cf. ita.

**sica**, -ae, f., (curved) *dagger*.

**Sicilia**, -ae, f., SICILY.

**Siciliēnsis**, -e, adj., [Sicilia], SICILIAN.

**significō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [signum + faciō], SIGNIFY.

**signum**, -ī, n., SIGNAL, SIGN, *token*.

**silva**, -ae, f., *wood, forest*. (*Silvan*.) Cf. saltus.

**similis**, -e, adj., *like, resembling*, SIMILAR.

**simul**, adv., [similis], *at the same time*; simul ac or atque, *as soon as*.

**simulacrum**, -ī, n., [simulō, *imitate*], *likeness, image, statue*. Cf. statua.

**sīn**, conj., [sī + nē], *but if*.

**sī-ne**, prep. with abl., *without*.

**singulī**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *one to each, one by one*. (*Singular*.)

**Sinis**, -is, m., robber living near the Isthmus of Corinth, who was slain by Thēseus.

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left hand*. (*Sinister*.) Cf. laevus.

**sistō**, -ere, stitī, status, [stō], *stop*.

**sitis**, -is, f., no plur., *thirst*.

**socer**, -eri, m., *father-in-law*.

**socius**, -ī, m., *companion, as-SOCIATE*. Cf. comes.

**sōl**, sōlis, (no gen. plur.), m., *sun*. (*Solar*.)

**solea**, -ae, f., *sandal*. (*Sole*.) Cf. calceus.

**sōlēō**, -ēre, -itus, semi-deponent, *be accustomed*.

**soll-ennis**, -e, adj., [sollus, *whole*, + annus], *appointed*; SOLEMN.

**sollī-citus**, -a, -um, adj., [sollus, *whole*, + cieō, *rouse*], *anxious, troubled*, SOLICITOUS.

**sōlus**, -a, -um, (gen., sōlius, dat., sōli), adj., *alone, only*, SOLE.

**solvō**, -ere, solvi, solūtus, *loose, loosen*; nāvem solvō, *set sail*; *pay*. (*Solve*.)

**somnium**, -ī, n., [somnus], *dream*.

**somnus**, -ī, m., *sleep*. (*Somn-ambullism*.)

**sonitus**, -ūs, m., [sonō], SOUND.

**sonō**, -āre, -ui, -itus, [sonus], SOUND, *re-SOUND*.

**sonus**, -ī, m., SOUND, noise. Cf. fragor.

**sopōrātus**, -a, -um, adj., [sopor, *slumber*], *buried in sleep*. (*Soporific*.)

**soror**, -ōris, f., *sister*.

**sors**, sortis, f., *lot*. (*Sort*.)

**Sp.**, abbreviation for Spurius.

**spargō**, -ere, sparsi, sparsus, *scatter, sprinkle*. (*Sparse*.)

**spatium**, -ī, n., SPACE, *distance, interval*.

**speciēs**, (-ēi), f., *appearance, show*. (*Species*.)

**spectāculum**, -ī, n., [spectō], *show, SPECTACLE, exhibition, amusement, entertainment*.

**spectant**, (they) *look at, gaze at*.

**spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [-speciō, *look*], *look at, gaze at*.

**specus**, -ūs, m., *cave, cavern*.  
**spēs**, -ei, f., *hope*.  
**spīna**, -ae, f., low wall in the middle of the Circus, around which the races were run.  
**splendidus**, -a, -um, adj., [splendēō, *shine*], **SPLENDID**, *magnificent, glittering*.  
**spoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *rob, plunder, de-SPOIL*.  
**sponda**, -ae, f., *bed or couch frame*.  
**spondeō**, -ēre, sponōdī, spōnsus, *promise sacredly*. (*Sponsor*.)  
**stabulum**, -i, n., [stō], *stall*, **STABLE**.  
**stadium**, -i, n., **STADE**, a distance of 625 Roman feet, or 606½ English feet.  
**stāgnūm**, -i, n., [stō], (standing water), *pond, lake*. (*Stagnant*.) *Cf. lacus*.  
**statim**, adv., [stō], *immediately, at once*. *Cf. prōtinus*.  
**statua**, -ae, f., [stō], **STATUE** (mostly of men). *Cf. simulacrum*.  
**statuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, [stō], *fix, decide, determine*. (*Statute*.)  
**statūra**, -ae, f., [stō], *height, size*, **STATURE**.  
**status**, -ūs, m., [stō], *standing, condition*, **STATE**.  
**stella**, -ae, f., *star*. (*Stellar*.)  
**stipendium**, -i, n., [stips, *gift*, + pendō], *pay*, **STIPEND**.  
**stō**, *stāre*, steti, **status**, **STAND**.  
**strāgulus**, -a, -um, adj., *for covering*; **strāgula vestis**, *covering, spread, blanket*.  
**stridulus**, -a, -um, adj., *shrill*.  
**stringō**, -ere, strinxī, **strictus**, (draw tight), *touch lightly, graze*. (*Stringent*.)  
**struō**, -ere, struxī, **strūctus**, *build, con-STRUCT*; *devise, contrive, plot*.  
**stultus**, -a, -um, adj., *foolish*. (*Stultif-ty*.)

**stupeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *be amazed, be STUPE-fied, be terror-stricken*.  
**sub**, prep. with acc. (to denote motion toward), and abl. (to denote place where), *under, below, at the foot of*; in composition, (1) *under, beneath*; (2) *from beneath, up*; (3) *secretly*; (4) *slightly*.  
**sub-dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *put under, plunge into*.  
**sub-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itus, *go under, enter*; *undergo*.  
**sub-eundus**, gerundive of subeō.  
**subitō**, adv., [subitus], *suddenly*.  
**sub-itus**, -a, -um, adj., [subeō], *sudden*.  
**sub-levō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [levō, *lift*], *raise up*.  
**sublicius**, -a, -um, adj., [sublica, *pile*], *resting upon piles*; **Pōns Sublicius**, the pile-bridge across the Tiber.  
**sub-mergō**, -ere, -mersi, -mersus, *dip under*, **SUBMERGE**.  
**sub-rideō**, -ēre, -risi, —, (laugh slightly), *smile*.  
**sub-ripiō**, -ere, -uī, -reptus, [rapiō], *snatch away, fitch, steal*. (*Surreptitious*.)  
**sub-sequor**, -i, -secūtus, *follow closely*.  
**sub-sistō**, -ere, -stiti, —, *stop for a moment, pause, halt*.  
**subter**, prep. with acc. (to denote motion toward), or abl. (to denote place where), *underneath*.  
**suc-cēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, [sub], *come up, draw near, approach*. (*Succeed*.)  
**Suessiōnēs**, -um, plur. m., a people of Gaul.  
**sui**, *of himself, herself, itself, themselves*.  
**sulcus**, -i, m., *furrow*.  
**sum**, *esse*, fui, **futūrus**, *be*.  
**summus**, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of *superus*], *highest, top of*. (*Summit*.)



sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, *take, take up, as-SUME. Cf. capiō.*

sunt, (they) are.

supellex, -lectilis, f., *furniture.*

super, prep. with acc. (to denote motion toward), and abl. (to denote place where), *over, above, upon.*

superbia, -ae, f., [superbus], *pride, haughtiness, arrogance.*

superbus, -a, -um, adj., [super], *proud, haughty, arrogant. (Superb.)*

Superbus, see Tarquinius.

super-ēmineō, -ēre, —, —, *over-top, tower above. (Eminent.)*

superior, -ius, adj., [comp. of superus], *higher, upper part of. (Superior.)*

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [super], *overcome, conquer. Cf. vincō.*

super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, be *over, remain.*

superus, -a, -um, adj., [super], *upper.*

sup-plex, -icis, adj., [sub + plicō, bend], *SUPPLIANT.*

sup-plicium, -ī, n., [supplex], *punishment, torture.*

sup-pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, [sub], *place under or beneath. (Suppose.)*

suprā, adv., and prep. with acc., *above.*

surgō, -ere, surrēxi, —, [sub + regō], *rise. (Surge.)*

sūs, suis, m. and f., *swine, pig, sow.*

sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [sub + capiō], *undertake, take up. (Susceptible.)*

sus-pendō, -ere, -di, -pēnsus, [sub], *hang up, SUSPEND.*

su-spīcor, -ārī, -ātus, [sub + -speciō, look], *mistrust, SUSPECT.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentus, [sub + teneō], *SUSTAIN, hold up, keep back, check.*

sus-tuli, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, adj., [sui], (his own), *his, her, its, their.*

Symplēgades, -um, (acc., -gadas), f., *the SYMPLEGADES, two small rocky islands in the Black Sea, which closed upon ships and crushed them.*

## T

T., abbreviation for Titus.

taberna, -ae, f., *shop.*

tablinum, -ī, n., [tabula], *room between the atrium and peristyle, where the tabulae or family records were kept.*

tabula, -ae, f., *TABLET, record; plur., papers, documents, archives.*

tacitus, -a, -um, adj., [taceō, be silent], *silent. (Tacit.)*

Taenarus, -ī, m., *the southernmost promontory of Greece.*

tālāria, -ium, plur. n., *winged sandals.*

Talassio! wedding salutation, perhaps the name of a god of marriage.

tālis, -e, adj., *such.*

tam, adv., *so. Cf. ita, sic.*

tamen, conj. and adv., *nevertheless, however, yet, but.*

tandem, adv., [tam], *at length, at last. Cf. denique.*

tangō, -ere, tetigi, tāctus, *touch. (Tangible.)*

tantum modo, adv., *only, merely.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great.*

tarditās, -ātis, f., [tardus], *slowness, TARDINESS.*

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow, TARDY.*

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *damsel who betrayed the citadel to the Sabines.*

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome.*

**Tartara**, -ōrum, plur. n., TARTARUS, the infernal regions.

**taurus**, -i, m., *bull*.

**tē**, acc. of tū, *you*.

**tēctum**, -i, n., [tegō], *roof; building*.

**tegō**, -ere, tēxi, tēctus, *cover, protect*.

**tēlum**, -i, n., *weapon*. Cf. hasta, iaculum.

**temerē**, adv., *rashly*.

**tempestās**, -ātis, f., [tempus], *weather; storm, TEMPEST*.

**templum**, -i, n., TEMPLE.

**temptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [tendō], *try, TEMPT, bribe*. Cf. cōnor, ex-prior.

**tempus**, -oris, n., *time, season, weather*. (Temporal.)

**tendō**, -ere, tetendī, tentus, (stretch), *hold one's course, TEND*.

**tenebrae**, -ārum, plur. f., *shadows, shades, darkness*.

**teneō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *hold, keep, reach, gain*. (Tenant.) Cf. habeo.

**tener**, -era, -erum, adj., TENDER.

**tenuis**, -e, adj., *thin, meagre*. (Attenuated.)

**tenus**, prep. with abl., *as far as*.

**tergum**, -i, n., *back, skin, hide*.

**terra**, -ae, f., *earth, land*. (Terrace.)

**terreo**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten, alarm, TERRIFY*.

**terribilis**, -e, adj., [terreo], *dreadful, fearful, TERRIBLE*. Cf. dirus.

**territus**, -a, -um, adj., [terreo], *TERRIFIED*.

**terror**, -ōris, m., [terreo], *dread, alarm, TERROR*.

**tertius**, -a, -um, adj., [ter, thrice], *third*.

**tessellātus**, -a, -um, adj., [tessella, small cube], (made of small cubes), *mosaic*.

**testis**, -is, m. and f., *witness*. (Testify.)

**testūdō**, -inis, f., *tortoise*.

**Themis**, -idis, f., goddess of justice and of prophecy.

**Thēseus**, -ei, (dat., Thēsei, acc., Thēsea), most famous hero of Athens.

**Thessalia**, -ae, f., THESSALY, a country in the north of Greece.

**Thracia**, -ae, f., THRACE, a country north-east of Greece.

**Thracius**, -a, -um, adj., [Thracia], of THRACE, THRACIAN.

**Thrāx**, -ācis, m., gladiator in THRACIAN armor.

**Tiberis**, -is, m., the river TIBER.

**tibi-cen**, -inis, m., [tibia, flute + canō], *flute-player*.

**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear*. (Timid.) Cf. vereor.

**timor**, -ōris, m., [timeō], *fear*. (Timorous.) Cf. metus.

**Tiphys**, -yos, m., pilot of the Argo.

**Titus**, -i, m., a Roman name.

**togātus**, -a, -um, adj., [toga], *wearing the TOGA*, (a gown or robe worn only by Roman citizens).

**tolerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *bear, endure, sustain, TOLERATE*. Cf. patior.

**tollō**, -ere, sus-tuli, sub-lātus, *lift, raise, pick up*. (Ex-tol.)

**torus**, -i, m., *mattress*.

**tot**, indecl. adj., *so many*.

**tot-i-dem**, indecl. num. adj., [tot + -dem], *the same number of*.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, (gen., tōtius, dat., tōtī), adj., *the whole, entire, all*. Cf. cunctus, omnis.

**trā-dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus, [trāns], *give over, hand over, deliver*. (Tradition.)

**trā-dūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, [trāns], *lead across*.

**trahō**, -ere, trāxi, tractus, *draw, drag*. (At-tract.)

**trā-nō**, -āre, -āvi, —, [trāns], *swim across*.

**trāns**, prep. with acc., *across, over, beyond*.

trāns-eō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *go across, cross over, cross.* (Transition.)  
Cf. trānsmittō.

trāns-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, *bear across, TRANSFER.* Cf. trānsportō.

trān-siliō, -ire, -ui, —, [trāns + saliō, *leap*], *leap across or over.*

trāns-mittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send across; go across, cross.* (Transmit.) Cf. trānsēō.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry across, TRANSPORT.* Cf. trānsferō.

tre-centi, -ae, -a, num. adj., [trēs + centum], *three hundred.*

tremō, -ere, -ui, —, *shake, quiver, TREMBLE.*

trēs, tria, num. adj., THREE.

tribūnal, -ālis, n., *judgment-seat, TRIBUNAL.*

tribūtum, -i, n., TRIBUTE.

tricliniāris, -e, adj., [triclinium], *of a dining-room.*

triclinium, -i, n., *dining-room.*

triumphus, -i, m., TRIUMPHAL *procession, TRIUMPH.*

Troezen, -ēnis, f., TROEZENE, an ancient city of Argolis.

tū, pers. pron., *you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

tum, adv., *then, at that time.*

tumidus, -a, -um, adj., [tumeō, *swell*], *swollen, swelling.* (Tumid.)

tumultus, -ūs, m., [tumeō, *swell*], *uproar, noise, bustle, disorder, TUMULT.*

tunica, -ae, f., *under-garment, TUNIC.*

turba, -ae, f., *crowd.* (Dis-turb.) Cf. caterva.

turpis, -e, adj., *base, disgraceful, ugly.*

turris, -is, f., TOWER; rēgia turris, *castle.*

tussis, -is, f., *cough.*

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., [tueor, *protect*], *safe.* Cf. incolumis, intactus.

tuus, -a, -um, adj., [tū], *your.*

tyrannus, -i, m., *monarch, king; despot, TYRANT.*

## U

ubi, adv., (1) rel., *where, when;* (2) inter., *where?*

ubi-que, adv., *everywhere.* (Ubiquitous.)

ūllus, -a, -um, (gen., ūllius, dat., ūlli), adj., [for ūnulus, dim. of ūnus], (with a negation expressed or implied), *any.* Cf. quis.

ūltior, -ius, adj., [comp. of ūltrā], *farther.* (Uterior.)

ūltimus, -a, -um, adj., [sup. of ūltrā], *farthest, last.* (Ultimate.)

ūltrā, adv., and prep. with acc., *beyond, further.*

ūltrō, adv., *of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

umerus, -i, m., *shoulder.*

ūnā, adv., [ūnus], (in one with), *together with.*

unda, -ae, f., *wave.*

unde, adv., (1) rel., *whence;* (2) inter., *whence?*

undi-que, adv., [unde], *from all sides, on all sides.*

unguentum, -i, n., [unguō, *ointment*], UNGUENT.

unguō, -ere, unxi, ūnctus, *smear, an-OINT.* (Uction.)

unguis, -is, m., *nail, claw, talon.*

ūnus, -a, -um, (gen., ūnius, dat., ūnī), num. adj., *one, alone; ad ūnum, to a man.*

urbānus, -a, -um, adj., [urbs], *of or belonging to the city, city.* (Urbane.)

urbs, urbis, f., *city.* (Sub-urb.) Cf. oppidum.

usque, adv., *up to, until, even.*

ūsus, -ūs, m., [ūtor], USE, need; experience.

ut or uti, conj., (1) with indic., as, when; (2) with subj., that, in order that.

ut-cumque, adv., whenever.

uter, utra, utrum, (gen., utrius, dat., utri), inter. pron., which (of two)? which?

uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que, indef. pron., each (of two).

ūtīlis, -e, adj., [ūtor], USEFUL.

uti-nam, adv., would that! O that!

ūtor, -ī, ūsus, USE.

utrim-que, adv., [uterque], on both sides, on both ends.

uxor, -ōris, f., wife.

## V

vacca, -ae, f., cow. (Vaccinate.)

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., [vacō, be empty], empty, VACANT.

vādō, -ere, —, —, go, walk, proceed.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, wander, rove. (Vagrant.)

valdē, adv., [validus], (strongly), exceedingly, very.

valē, [imperative of valeō, be well], farewell, good-by.

validus, -a, -um, adj., [valeō, be well], strong, stout, powerful. Cf. fortis.

varius, -a, -um, adj., VARIOUS.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vāstus], ravage, de-VASTATE.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., immense, VAST. Cf. ingēns, māgnus.

vātēs, -is, m. and f., soothsayer, prophet; bard, singer, poet.

vēctigal, -ālis, n., tax.

vehementer, adv., violently, VEHEMENTLY.

vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, carry; pass., sail or ride. Cf. ferō, portō.

Vēiēns, -entis, adj., [Vēiī], of VEIL, VEIENTIAN.

Vēientānus, -a, -um, adj., [Vēiī], of VEIL, VEIENTIAN.

Vēiī, -ōrum, plur. m., city of Etruria.

vellus, -eris, n., fleece.

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vēlum], VEIL.

vēlum, -ī, n., sail; curtain; VEIL. vēnātiō, -ōnis, f., [vēnor], hunting.

venē-fica, -ae, f., [venēnum + faciō], poisoner, sorceress.

venēnum, -ī, n., poison, VENOM.

venia, -ae, f., indulgence, favor, pardon. (Venial.)

veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus, come.

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus, hunt.

ventus, -ī, m., wind. Cf. aura.

Venus, -eris, f., goddess of love.

vēr, vēris, n., spring. (Vernal.)

verber, -eris, n., lash, whip.

verberābat, (he) used to whip, beat.

verberat, (he) whips, beats.

verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [verber], whip, beat. (Re-verberate.) Cf. feriō.

verbum, -ī, n., word. (Verbal.)

vereor, -ērī, -itus, re-VERE; fear. Cf. timeō.

Vergilius, -ī, m., VERGIL, a Roman poet.

vērō, adv. and conj., [vērus], indeed, but, however.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn, change. (Re-verse.)

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true, real; rē vērā, in truth, in fact, really. (Verity.)

vescor, -ī, —, feed upon, live on, eat.

vesper, -erī and -eris, m., evening.

vesperī, adv., [vesper], in the evening.

Vesta, -ae, f., goddess of the hearth.

vestibulum, -ī, m., entrance court, VESTIBULE.

vestigium, -ī, n., *footstep, step, trace, remnant*, VESTIGE.

vestis, -is, f., *garment, clothing*, VESTURE.

vetus, -eris, adj., *ancient*. (Veteran.)

via, -ae, f., *WAY, road, street*.

viātor, -ōris, m., [via], *wayfarer, traveller*.

vibrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, VIBRATE; *glitter, gleam*.

vicinus, -i, m., [vīcus], *neighbor*. (Vicinity.)

vici, see vincō.

victor, -ōris, adj., [vincō], *conquering*, VICTORIOUS.

victor, -ōris, m., [vincō], *conqueror*, VICTOR.

victōria, -ae, f., [victor], *VICTORY*.

vicus, -i, m., *street, village*.

vidē-licet, adv., [vidēre licet, it is allowed to see], (one may see), *clearly, evidently*.

videō, -ēre, vidī, visus, *see; pass., seem, appear*. (Vision.)

videt, (he) *sees*.

vigilia, -ae, f., [vigil, watchful], *watch, guard, sentinels*.

viginti, indecl. num. adj., *twenty*.

villa, -ae, f., *farmhouse, country-house*, VILLA.

vinciō, -ire, vinxi, vinctus, *bind*.

vincō, -ere, vici, victus, *conquer*. Cf. superō.

vinculum, -i, n., [vinciō], *bond, fetter; plur., prison*.

vinum, -i, n., *WINE*.

vir, viri, m., *man, husband, man* (of principle), *hero*. Cf. homō.

virēs, see vis.

virga, -ae, f., *rod*.

virgō, -inis, f., *maiden*, VIRGIN. Cf. puella.

virilis, -e, adj., [vir], *manly*. (Virile.)

virtūs, -ūtis, f., [vir], *courage, bravery, valor*; VIRTUE.

vis, (vis), acc. vim, abl. vi, f., *force, violence*; plur., virēs, virium, *strength*.

vita, -ae, f., [vivō], *life*. (Vital.)

vitat, (he) *avoids*.

vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *avoid, shun, escape*. Cf. effugiō.

vitta, -ae, f., *head-band, fillet* (worn by victims led to sacrifice).

vivō, -ere, vixi, victūrus, *live*. (Victuals.)

vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely*.

vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *call, name, summon, invite*. (Vocal.) Cf. appellō.

volgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [volgus, people], *publish, spread abroad, circulate, report*. (Vulgar.)

volnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [volutus], *wound*. (Vulnerable.)

volnus, -eris, n., *wound*.

volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *fly*.

volō, velle, volui, —, *wish, will*. (Volition.)

volpēs, -is, f., *fox*.

volucer, -cris, -cre, adj., [volō], *winged, fleet, swift*.

volvō, -ere, volvi, volūtus, *roll, re-VOLVE, ponder*.

voveō, -ēre, vovi, vōtus, *vow*.

vōx, vōcis, f., [vocō], *VOICE*.

## Z

Zēnō, -ōnis, m., *a philosopher*.

Zētēs, -ae, m., *one of the Argonauts*.

## ***Gradatim***

An Easy Latin Translation Book for Beginners. By H. R. HEATLEY, and H. N. KINGDON. Revised by J. W. SCUDDER, Latin Master in the Albany Academy. 16mo, cloth, 228 pages. Price, 50 cents.

**G**RADATIM offers an excellent selection of easy reading-matter which may be used to arouse and stimulate the interest of the pupil in his early study of Latin. It may be used either for lessons to be regularly prepared by classes just beginning the subject, or for sight-reading by more advanced students. The abundance of material offered will allow the teacher to select such stories as will best serve his particular purpose. The special excellence of Gradatim lies in the intrinsic interest of the stories. In this respect it is equalled by no similar book that has been ever issued.

Twenty-five pages of Latin stories, which illustrate the use of the Accusative with the Infinitive, the Subjunctive of Indirect Question, and the Ablative Absolute, have been added to the original work. This is the only edition of the work in which these three subjects are especially treated.

In the first third of the book, all long vowels have been marked; elsewhere they are marked only in words which are likely to be mispronounced, or which occur for the first time.

The Vocabulary has been entirely rewritten, and its scope much enlarged.

**Ray Greene Huling, Principal of the English High School, Cambridge, Mass.:** In its original English form it was a delightful primer, and has relieved the drudgery of elementary work in Latin in many schools. The changes introduced by this editor are genuine additions, making the work a much better supplementary book for early translation than before.

**H. S. Cowell, Cushing Academy, Ashburnham, Mass.:** I regard it as a very valuable book for supplementary work for first-year Latin students.

**Professor John H. Grove, Ohio Wesleyan University:** It is certainly an admirable book to put into the hands of beginners in Latin as a companion to the Latin Grammar. In both matter and general appearance the work will commend itself to instructors.

**B. L. D'Ooge, Normal School, Ypsilanti, Mich.:** It is in my judgment by far the best collection of easy Latin Selections available.

## ***Selections from Viri Romæ***

With Notes, Exercises, and a Vocabulary by Professor JOHN C. ROLFE, University of Michigan. 16mo, cloth, 301 pages. Price, 75 cents.

**U**RBS ROMÆ VIRI ILLUSTRÉS is a compilation from Cicero, Livy, Valerius Maximus, and other Roman writers. It is admirably adapted to help the pupil over the difficult transition from the introductory Latin book to Cæsar or Nepos.

The advantage in its use lies in the fact that it is full of variety and interest, and that it gives the pupil a sketch of Roman history from Romulus to Augustus in an attractive form, together with many allusions to the customs of Roman life.

In the present edition the quantities of all the long vowels, including "hidden quantities," are marked; exercises for translation of English into Latin, based on the text, are given.

Thirty-nine pages of the book have been prepared for reading at sight. The other selections are annotated with grammatical and explanatory notes.

**Isaac B. Burgess**, *The Morgan Park Academy, University of Chicago*:

After considerable class-room use, I take pleasure in commending the edition of *Viri Romæ* by Professor John C. Rolfe. The notes and vocabulary show care and accuracy. The marking of all long vowels is very valuable in elementary work. The hints for translation into Latin admirably cover a good deal of ground in a little space, and the exercises for translation from English into Latin save a teacher much work.

**L. C. Hull**, *Lawrenceville School, New Jersey*: Rolfe's edition of *Viri Romæ* is an excellent book; attractive, scholarly, and able to stand the test of class-room use. I have been compelled to let the management of the class that is using the book pass into the hands of another teacher; so that I have missed most of the pleasure that has come from its adoption here. But I can vouch for its excellence.

**George H. Browne**, *Cambridge, Mass.*: Every time I have looked over Rolfe's *Viri Romæ* I have admired the aim and method of its editor more and more, and cannot commend too highly the success he seems to me to have attained. After using, I expect to make the same report.

**Professor J. H. Dillard**, *Tulane University, New Orleans, La.*: It gives in excellent form, with judicious notes and timely suggestions, correct material for easy work in reading Latin. I should like to commend also the careful marking of the long vowels.

---

## ***A Latin Grammar***

---

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 265 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THE purpose of this book is to present the essential facts of Latin Grammar in a simple and direct manner, and within the smallest compass consistent with high scholarly standards. While especially adapted to the needs of secondary schools, it has also been prepared with a view to the larger demands of the college and university. By omitting rare forms and rare syntactical usages of the ante- and post-classical Latinity, and by relegating to an Appendix for Teachers the discussion of the moot points of historical grammar, the compass of the book has been limited to 250 pages, exclusive of Indexes. The experience of teachers in the German schools has shown that books of this scope meet the exacting demands of the entire gymnasial course. It is believed that a real service may be rendered the study of Latin in America by offering such a Grammar to our teachers and students.

The Appendix for Teachers contains a discussion of the Evidences for Pronunciation, Hidden Quantity, History of Sound Changes, Origin of Inflectional Forms, Historical Syntax, Prosody, etc, and is bound up with the Grammar in a special Teachers' Edition.

**Professor John C. Rolfe, *University of Michigan*:** Our school grammars have been increasing in bulk with each new edition, until they have come to contain a great deal of matter which is of value only to advanced students. The idea of publishing a grammar which shall contain within the briefest possible compass the essential principles, and of relegating the rest to an appendix for the use of teachers and advanced students, seems to me a thoroughly good one. I have had occasion to test Professor Bennett's book, and am convinced that it contains everything necessary for the purpose for which it is intended. Brevity is not its only merit. In some respects — for instance, in the treatment of the dative case, in the recognition of the ablative of attendant circumstance, in the chapter on Latin style, and in not a few minor details — it appears to me more satisfactory than most of its predecessors. The typography and arrangement make it particularly handy as a reference book. On the whole, I am inclined to regard it as the best school grammar which has yet appeared in America.



## The Lives of Cornelius Nepos

With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary by Professor JOHN C. ROLFE, University of Michigan. 12mo, cloth, 387 pages. Price, \$1.10.

**I**N general the same plan is followed as in the Selections from Viri Romæ.

In the text, as well as elsewhere throughout the book, the quantity of all the long vowels is marked, including "hidden quantities."

The notes are designed to enable the pupil to understand the writer's meaning, and to get a clear idea of the events and personages referred to. Instruction in syntax is given mainly by the Exercises for Translation into Latin. These exercises have been prepared both for oral and for written work, and are based on the text.

The book is provided with a full vocabulary, in which special attention is given to the definition of proper names, and with maps, including all the places mentioned by Nepos.

**Charles C. Ramsay**, *Principal of High School, Fall River, Mass.*: It would be difficult to say too much in praise of Professor Rolfe's "The Lives of Cornelius Nepos." The Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary are unusually well done, and will render the study of the lives interesting and delightful. The publishers, moreover, deserve a share of the praise for the very attractive form in which the book is issued. The typography is clear, and the paper is good.

**Walter A. Edwards**, *Principal of High School, Rockford, Ill.*: I am delighted with your Rolfe's edition of Nepos, both as to its typographical appearance and as to the educational value of the work. Taking it altogether it is a most attractive text-book. I am not clear in my mind whether we are ready to drop Cæsar yet and turn to some such work as this, which would certainly have the advantage of greater interest, and perhaps a greater practical value. There are some points of value which we should be sorry to lose . . . but I am open to conviction, and Professor Rolfe's book goes a long way toward convincing me.

**Professor Leon J. Richardson**, *University of California*: As a Latin department we are encouraging the reading of Nepos in the California High Schools. For this purpose your book commends itself very highly.

**Professor F. G. Axtell**, *Chaffey College, Ontario, Calif.*: The Nepos is the best edition I have seen.

## ***Cæsar's Gallic War***

Edited, with Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Table of Idioms, and twenty full-page Illustrations, by Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY, University of Michigan. 12mo, half leather, 506 pages. Price, \$1.25.

THROUGHOUT the book every effort has been made, by way of illustration and comment, to render the study of Cæsar attractive and useful, a means of culture as well as of discipline. That the result has been to produce the best-equipped edition of the Gallic War is generally conceded.

The Introduction, besides giving a full review of Cæsar's life and character, furnishes also a concise and logical account of the Roman art of war in Cæsar's time. The Illustrations consist of six full-page colored plates, of a double-page map of Gaul, and of fourteen full-page maps and plans.

The text is clear, accurate, and uniform in its orthography, and is conveniently divided by brief English summaries.

The Notes are apt and sensible, with full references to the Grammars of Bennett, Allen and Greenough, and Harkness.

The Table of Idioms and Phrases, found in no other edition, will enable a teacher to drill his class on those constructions which are most perplexing to beginners.

The Vocabulary, like the Notes, is intended to give the pupil only such help as he needs, and such knowledge as he can digest.

**Charles S. Chapin**, *Principal High School, Fitchburg, Mass.*: I consider Kelsey's Cæsar, both for teacher and pupil, the most admirable edition in the field, combining in one volume text, notes, dictionary of antiquities, maps, and all the instruments for successful study of the Commentaries.

**O. D. Robinson**, *Principal High School, Albany, N.Y.*: As a text-book it seems to me if not absolutely perfect, to approach as near perfection as any book I have ever examined. The Introduction and colored plates are invaluable as aids to a clear understanding of the text, and are superior to anything of the kind elsewhere. The maps, notes, vocabulary, and table of idioms, are unsurpassed in any text-book of Cæsar now in use.

**Professor H. W. Johnston**, *Indiana University*: I have no hesitation in saying that it is the best and handsomest edition of the most important school author that has appeared from the American press.

## ***Selections from Ovid***

With an Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary by Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY. Illustrated. 12mo, half leather, 447 pages. Price, \$1.25.

**A**S in the editions of Cæsar and Cicero by the same editor, no pains have been spared to make the book pleasing to the eye and useful to the student. The selections, with a few exceptions, are short and complete in themselves. A considerable number of them will be found suitable for sight-reading.

The Introduction contains a sketch of the life and works of Ovid, with a short essay on Ovid as a poet, together with an outline of Greek and Roman Mythology.

The Notes are elementary, but at the same time they aim to suggest a poetic interpretation of the author.

**William C. Collar, Headmaster, Roxbury Latin School, Mass.:** I am glad to see an edition containing so good and so varied a collection from Ovid's writings. The book seems to me to be a very conscientious piece of work, and I am particularly pleased with the frequent and happy quotations, in the notes, of passages from English poets.

**Walter A. Edwards, Principal, High School, Rockford, Ill.:** I am delighted with it. The editor has made an excellent school-book, without thrusting into the background the literary charm of the text he is annotating. The abundant quotations from the English poets must materially help toward a right appreciation and enjoyment of Ovid's poetry.

**L. C. Hull, Lawrenceville School, N.J.:** Professor Kelsey has again shown how admirably he can meet the wants of good teachers. But his edition of Ovid does more than this. It must quicken the poetic sense of even the most prosaic teachers. I cannot help feeling that many a pupil will thank Professor Kelsey for having shown how the same themes that inspired Ovid still live in our own English classics. We have had given to us a manual of mythology, a scholarly edition of a Latin classic, and an abundance of poetic inspiration, all at once. Ovid did not write to exhibit the grammatical usages of his day, or to help make philologists; and Professor Kelsey has not made the mistake of supposing that his verses are best used when they are made to serve such purposes.

**Professor George H. White, Oberlin College:** The notes are made attractive, and their meaning more clear, by many quotations from a wide range of English poets. In this latter respect it is superior to every other school edition of the ancient classics. I commend the book without reserve.

---

## ***Selected Orations and Letters of Cicero***

---

With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary by Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY. 12mo, half leather, 518 pages. Illustrated. Price, \$1.25.

THE Orations given in this edition are the four against Catiline, those for the Manilian Law, Archias, Marcellus, and the fourth oration against Antony. These are edited with a view to showing their value as examples of oratory, rather than as offering mere material for grammatical drill. The student's attention is directed to the occasion and circumstances of their delivery, as well as to the motive and method of presenting the matter contained in them. Modes of legal procedure, the Constitution and form of government in Cicero's time, and the whole environment of the orator, are brought into clear view, and made a reality to the student.

The Letters are selected with reference to the light they shed on Cicero as a man rather than as a politician. They afford pleasant glimpses of his private life, and help to make real the pupil's conception of the times in which he lived. As material for short exercises for sight translation or rapid reading they will be found of special value.

A Table of Idioms and Phrases presents in form convenient for use, constructions that deserve special attention.

**Lincoln Owen**, *Principal of the Rice Training-School, Boston*: Kelsey's Cicero is a model in the art of text-book making. It cannot fail to be a success for editor, publisher, and user. I count the teachers and the pupils of the present generation fortunate in having such admirable "instruments of education" as Professor Kelsey is preparing for us.

**Professor J. W. Stearns**, *University of Wisconsin*: Kelsey's Cicero commends itself more than any words of mine can commend it. It is a teacher's book, up to modern times, both in text and annotations, and admirably printed.

**Miss Ellen F. Snow**, *High School, Keene, N.H.*: I have now used it in my classes for five weeks in connection with . . . in the hands of a part of the class. Kelsey has the preference every time. It gives a body to the ideas, and tells the scholars things that they want to know in a way suited to them. I have been waiting long enough to test it, and I like it better every week.

## **Ancient Greece**

From the earliest times down to 146 B.C. By ROBERT F. PENNELL, Principal of State Normal School, Chico, Cal. Revised Edition, with Plans and Colored Maps. 16mo, cloth, 193 pages. Price, 60 cents.

## **Ancient Rome**

From the earliest times down to 476 A.D. By ROBERT F. PENNELL. Revised Edition, with Plans and Colored Maps. 16mo, cloth, 284 pages. Price, 60 cents.

IN these books the leading facts are presented in a concise and readable form. Minor details and unimportant names are omitted. The maps and plans have been drawn and engraved especially for the books, and contain all the data, and only the data, necessary for following the story.

The Index serves also as a key to the pronunciation of proper names. Examination papers used at Harvard, Yale, and by the Regents of the University of New York, are added in an appendix.

Most teachers prefer a brief manual for a text-book in the hands of the pupils. It is easy to assign outside reading for special subjects in which it may be desired to spend extra time; and the teacher can use his own judgment in selecting the topics to fit the pupils and the time at his disposal. Pennell's histories contain enough matter, if carefully studied, to enable a student to pass the entrance examinations at any American college or university.

**W. McD. Halsey**, *Collegiate School, 34 West Fortieth Street, New York City*: Pennell's Greece and Rome are well adapted to their purpose. Having used the Greece last year, I will now add the Rome to the list of my text-books. The clear statements of the author, and the fine typographical work, commend the books at sight; and the enthusiasm of both teachers and pupils shows that Mr. Pennell has made books suited to our need.

**H. B. Knox**, *Friends' School, Providence, R.I.*: You are doing us all a service by putting the history of these nations into such an ideal form.

**Burr Lewis**, *Lincoln, Neb.*: The additions only make a more excellent compound of Roman History for use in the class-room. It was excellent before.









